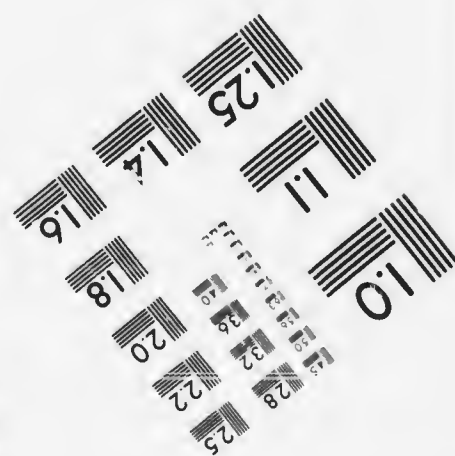
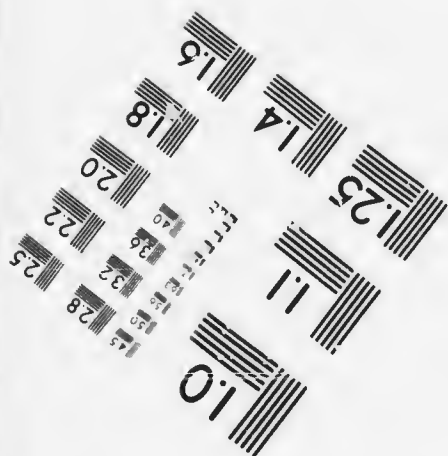
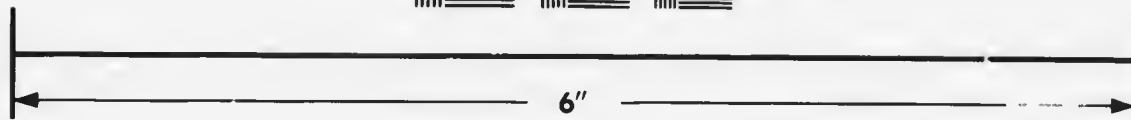
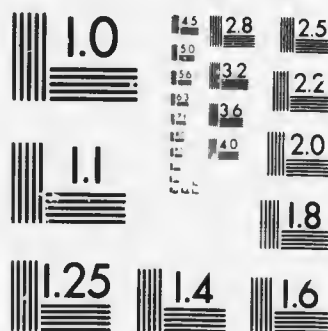


# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1987**

# Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- ☐ Additional comments:/  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- ☐ Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/  
Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				✓							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

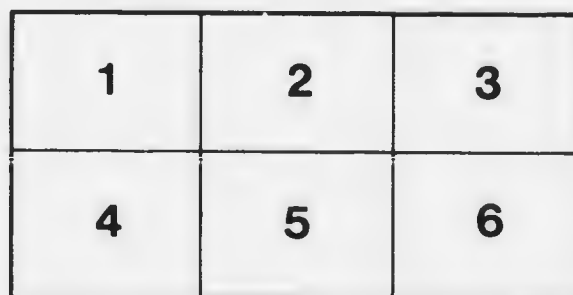
Harold Campbell Vaughan Memorial Library  
Acadia University

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

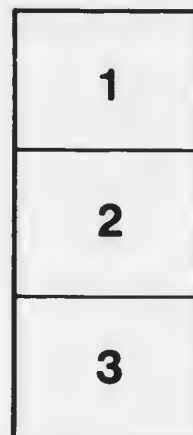
Harold Campbell Vaughan Memorial Library  
Acadia University

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.







A  
MODERN  
GRAMMAR,  
OF THE  
*ENGLISH LANGUAGE.*

A  
423-  
L93

INTENDED TO SUPPLY  
DEFICIENCIES IN MURRAY'S GRAMMAR.

CONTAINING  
COPIOUS EXERCISES,

AND  
MANY NEW ARRANGEMENTS, FOR THE  
USE OF SCHOOLS.

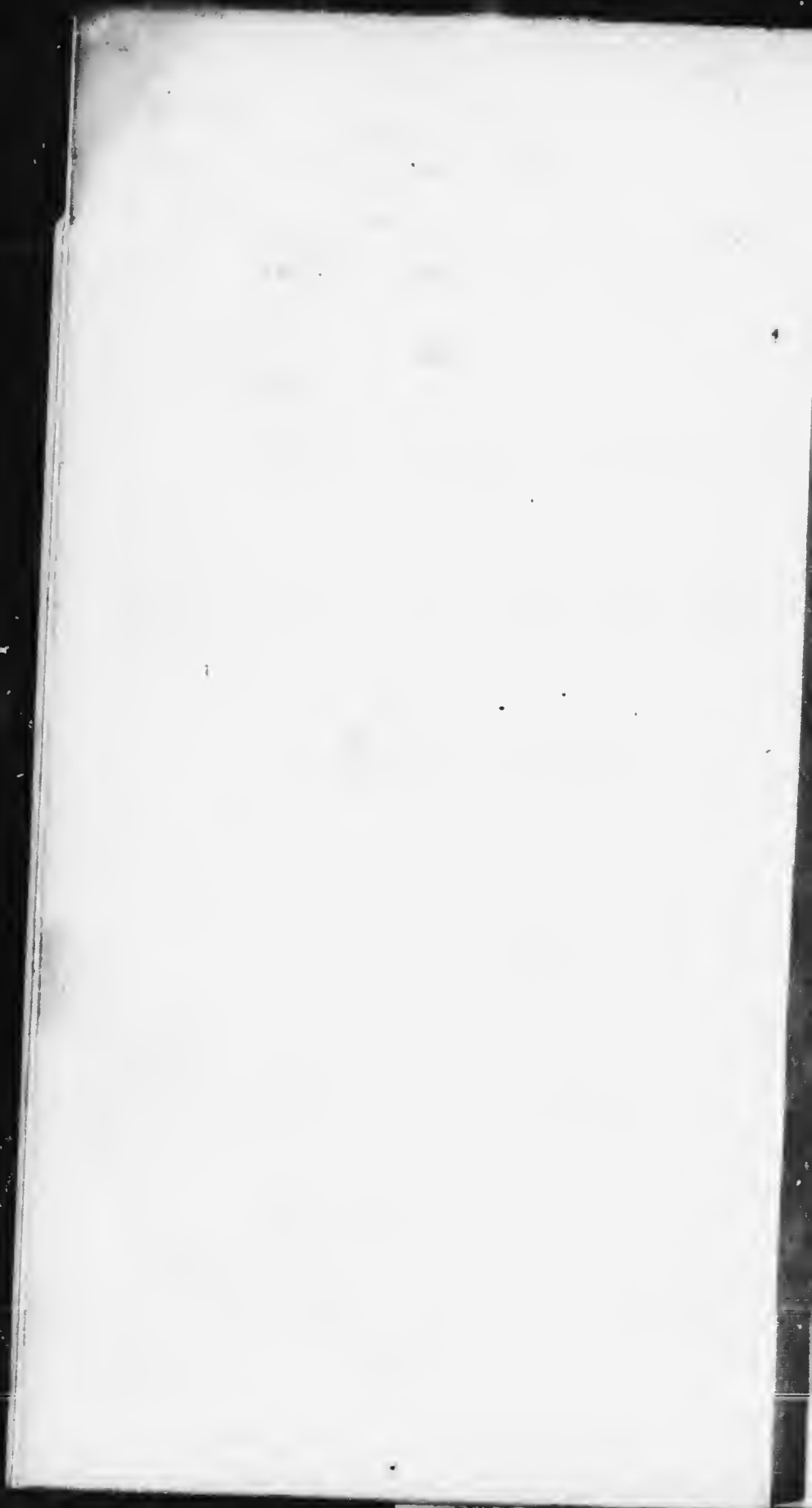
---

BY WILLIAM LOWDEN.

---

HALIFAX, N. S.  
PRINTED BY JAMES SPIKE—GRANVILLE-STREET.

1836.



## P R E F A C E.



THE variety of Grammars of the English Language, that has already appeared before the public, is great. On this account, a reason may perhaps be required by some persons, why this Grammar is published, when so many have preceded it. To this the Author replies, that though many works have been ushered into the world before this, yet none of them appears to be executed on the same plan as it. One of the chief motives to the composition of this work, was to condense into one small volume, every thing of much value in Grammar, Elocution, Punctuation and Composition, including Exercises and Key. Murray's works on these subjects comprehend six or seven volumes, and to go through them all, is both tedious and expensive : yet a student who would wish to be acquainted with the above subjects, must be under the necessity of studying all the volumes. Another motive to the production of this work was, to rectify some errors of Murray ; as with respect to the Verb *to be*—and to supply a number of things omitted by him ; and as it is now a considerable time since he wrote, another motive

was to notice any alteration of any consequence in Grammar or modes of Speech, which has been introduced since his time, such as the new name given to the Vocative of the "Nominative Independent." But the chief motive to this Publication, is to make known a new mode of arranging English Verbs. The Author had been so pestered, with the errors and ignorance of young persons committed to his care, with respect to them, that he long endeavoured to find some better method of classing them, than the usual form in Murray's and other Grammars; and he thinks he has succeeded in arranging them so, as to be easily understood and readily retained in memory. This new classification he thinks, has a decided superiority over the common ones, and will prevent the youth who study it, from being so very ignorant of what is usually termed *Irregular Verbs*, as too many of them are. Foreigners too, many of whom complain so much of the difficulties of English Verbs, may derive great benefit from it, in learning the language. In short the Author thinks, that by it much time and trouble may be saved, by every person wishing to understand thoroughly, that hitherto confused mass of English words, commonly denominated *Regular* and *Irregular Verbs*.

There are also improvements in other parts of the work, as in the Rules of Versification, in which the *Amphibrach* is restored to its proper place in scanning, from which it had been degraded by Murray and others, to only a secondary situation. The

introduction of the *Amphimacer* also is new, though it had evidently always existed in English Poetry : yet is most unaccountably omitted by Sheridan, as well as others, before this work.

The introducing of *Grammatical Figures* of Speech into this performance, which Murray had omitted, (for he has only the Rhetorical,) the Author thinks will be esteemed an excellency. Many other things different from Murray will also be found in this work,—though his Grammar has generally been followed rather than any other.

In the Key to the False Syntax, the learner will observe, that the words in the original examples are shortened as much as possible—only such parts of them being retained as were sufficient to point out where the errors in Syntax were. This has been done, both to prevent the work from swelling to too great a size, and to confine the attention of the learner to a small space, to that, which was most necessary for him to know, viz. wherein the error or impropriety lay.

It may perhaps be objected to this work, that the number of Rules of Syntax in it, are too many, when compared to the paucity of Murray. Many of these Rules, Murray had ranked as subordinate to others, but the Author thinks, that by his placing them separately, they will both be better understood and more readily remembered, than to remain as Murray had placed them. Some rules indeed are not in Murray, (as Rule XII.) which however are certainly necessary, though overlooked by him.

The Author thinks he has omitted nothing, of any importance in Modern Grammar, to render the work as complete as possible, but whatever are the merits of it, he hopes they will be fairly appreciated by a discerning Public.

nothing, of  
render this  
whatever are  
y appreci-

# C O N T E N T S.

—000—

	PAGE.		PAGE.
ENGLISH GRAMMAR	3	Conjugation of } To Love } 49	
ORTHOGRAPHY - - -	3	" To be Loved } 52	
Of Letters - - -	3	Secondary Con- } jugation } 57	
" Syllables - - -	6	Variety 1 -	57
" Words - - -	7	" 2 -	61
ETYMOLOGY - - -	8	" 3 -	62
Of the Articles - -	10	" 4 -	63
" Substantives - -	10	Redundant Verbs	66
" Gender - - -	11	Defective do.	67
" Number - - -	14	Exercises on do.	68
" Case - - -	18	Of Adverbs - -	70
" Adjectives - - -	19	" Prepositions -	74
" Pronouns - - -	21	" Conjunctions -	77
" Relative Pro- } nouns } 23		" Interjections -	80
" Adjective do. } Exercises in Par- } 24		Exercises on Ad- } verbs } 81	
sing } 27		" Prepositions	81
Of Verbs - - -	29	" Conjunctions	82
Conjugation of To } Have } 35		" Interjections	82
" To Be -	38	" Noun Adjec- } tive and Ac- } 82	
Of Auxiliary Verbs	41	" Adjectives -	83
First Conjugation	47	" Imperf. Par- } ticiple } 84	
Variety 1 -	47	" Neuter Verbs	85
" 2 -	48	" Passive do.	86
" 3 -	48	" Imperative	86
" 4 -	49	Mood }	
" 5 -	49		



	PAGE.		PAGE.
Exercises on Be, } Do, &c. }	87	Rule 25	143
" Relative What	88	" 26	150
" Words com- pounded with	89	" 27	155
Who and		" 28	157
What		" 29	159
" Nominative, &c.	89	" 30	160
" Supplying words	92	" 31	162
" In the same words being different parts of Speech }	95	" 32	165
Of Derivation		" 33	168
	97	" 34	170
		" 35	172
		" 36	174
		" 37	176
		" 38	177
		" 39	178
		" 40	179
		" 41	182
		" 42	183
		" 43	191
		" 44	192
		" 45	193
		" 46	195
		" 47	200
		" 48	203
		" 49	204
		" 50	205
		" 51	206
		Promiscuous Ex- ercises of False Syntax }	212
		Specimens of Par- sing }	
		Questions for Ex- amination }	221
		Prosody	231
		Of Accent	231
		" Quantity	235
		" Emphasis	237
		" Pauses	240
SYNTAX	102		
Rule 1	104		
" 2	104		
" 3	110		
" 4	113		
" 5	114		
" 6	115		
" 7	118		
" 8	119		
" 9	120		
" 10	121		
" 11	123		
" 12	124		
" 13	125		
" 14	127		
" 15	129		
" 16	131		
" 17	134		
" 18	135		
" 19	137		
" 20	138		
" 21	139		
" 22	141		
" 23	144		
" 24	146		

# CONTENTS.

vii.

PAGE.		PAGE.		PAGE.
148	Of Tones of Elo-	242	APPENDIX -	273
150	cution		Of Style -	275
155	" Versification	245	" Purity -	274
157			" Propriety -	274
159	PUNCTUATION -	256	" Precision -	278
160	Of the Comma -	256	" Perspicuity -	280
162	" Semicolon	260	" Unity -	280
165	" Colon -	261	" Strength -	281
168	" Period -	262	" Ambiguity -	282
170			" Tautology -	282
172	Dash, Notes of	262	" Figures of	283
174	Interrogation,		Speech	
176	and Exclamati-		" " Etymology	283
177	on, &c.		" " Syntax -	286
178	Capital Letters	266	" " Rhetoric	296
179	Exercises on	267	KEY TO EXERCISES	302
182	Punctuation		OF FALSE SYNTAX	
183				
191				
192				
193				
195				
200				
203				
204				
205				
206				
212				
215				
221				
231				
231				
235				
237				
240				



# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.



ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the English language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts, viz. ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, and PROSODY.

This division may be rendered more intelligible, by observing that Grammar treats *first* of the form and sound of the letters, the combination of letters into syllables, and syllables into words ; *secondly* of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and derivation ; *thirdly* of the union and right order of words in the formation of a sentence ; and *lastly*, of the just pronunciation, and poetical construction of sentences.

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

### OF THE LETTERS.

ORTHOGRAPHY teaches the nature and power of letters, and the just method of spelling words.

The letters of the English language, are twenty six in number.

These letters are the representatives of certain articulate sounds, the elements of the language.—An articulate sound, is the sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech.

A perfect Alphabet of the English language, or indeed of every other language, would contain a number of letters precisely equal to the number of simple articulate sounds belonging to the language. Every simple sound would have its distinct character ; and that character be the representative of no other sound. But this is far from being the state of the English Alphabet. It has more original sounds than distinct significant letters ; and consequently some of these letters are made to represent, not one sound alone, but several sounds. This will appear by reflecting that the sounds signified by the letters combined with the letter *h*, as *wh*, *th*, *sh* ; and *ng*—are elementary, and have no single appropriate Characters in our alphabet : and that the letters *a* and *u* represent the different sounds heard in *hat*, *hate*, *hale*, and in *but*, *bull*, *mule*.

Several letters marked in the English Alphabet, as Consonants, are either superfluous, or represent not simple but complex sounds. *C*, for instance is superfluous in both its sounds ; the one being expressed by *k*, and the other by *s*. *J* is unnecessary, because its sound and that of the soft *g*, are in our language the same. *Q* with its attendant *u* is either complex, and resolvable into *kw*, as in *quality* : or unnecessary, because its sound is the same with *k* as in *opaque*. *X* is compounded of *gs* in *example*, of *ks* in *expect*, and of *kshi* in *noxious*.

On investigating the number of simple Vowel sounds in our language, they will be found to be about sixteen, viz. *a* four sounds, *e* three, *i* two, *o* four, *u* three.

But besides these sounds, the Vowels have also an obscure sound, wherein they can hardly be distinguished from each other.

The long sound of *u*, is evidently a Diphthong, but the long sound of *i* seems not to be one.

The long sound of *a* and of *e* in there and where are but one sound.

The sound of *e* in *mete*, and of *i* in *magazine* are the same, and of middle *o* and *u* in *rule*, *brute*, &c. are also the same.

The sounds of the Consonants are about twenty five, viz: *b*, *d*, *f*, *g*, hard, *h*, *i*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *w*, *y*, *z*, and *ch*, *th* sharp, *th* flat, *sh*, *wh*, *zh*, and *ng*.

It has been supposed that *ch* and *wh* have sounds composed the one of *itsh*, and the other of *hw*, but when they are pronounced properly, they appear to differ a little.

For the above number of Vowel sounds, there ought to be sixteen different letters ; and for the Consonant sounds, twenty five different letters ;—so that the whole number of letters, in our alphabet ought to be Forty-one.

Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

A Vowel is an articulate sound, that can be perfectly uttered by itself ; as *a*, *e*, *o* ; which are formed without the help of any other sound.

A Consonant is an articulate sound, that cannot be perfectly uttered without the help of a vowel ; as *b*, *d*, *f*, *l*, which requires vowels to express them fully.

The Vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and sometimes *w* and *y*.

*W* and *y*, are consonants when they begin a vowel or syllable ; but in their situation they are vowels, and they are sometimes consonants at the beginning of a word, and vowels at the end.

Consonants are divided into Mutes and Semi-vowels.

The Mutes cannot be sounded *at all* without the aid of a vowel. They are *b*, *p*, *t*, *d*, *k*, and *c* and *g* hard.

The Semi-vowels have an imperfect sound of themselves. They are *f, l, m, n, r, v, s, z, x*, and *g* soft.

Four of the Semi-vowels, namely, *l, m, n, r*, are also distinguished by the name of *liquids*, from their readily uniting with other consonants, and flowing as it were into their sounds.

In pronouncing the names of the Mutes, the assistant vowels *follow* the consonants : *as, be, pe, te, le, ka*. In pronouncing the names of the Semi-vowels the vowels precede the consonants : *as, ef, el, em, en, ær, es, ee*, except *ce, ge, ve, zed*.

Those letters are called *labials*, which are formed by the lips ; *dentals*, that are formed by the teeth ; *palatals*, that are formed by the palate ; *gut-turals*, that are formed by the throat ; and *nasals*, that are formed by the nose.

A Diphthong is the union of two vowels pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, as *ea* in *beat*, *ou* in *sound*, *ow* in *now*.

A Triphthong is the union of three vowels pronounced in like manner as *eau* in *beau*, *iew* in *view*.

A proper Diphthong is that in which both the vowels are sounded ; as, *oi* in *voice*, *ou* in *ounce*, *ue* in *quell*.

An improper Diphthong has but one of the vowels sounded ; as, *ea* in *eagle*, *oa* in *boat*, *oe* in *foe*.

The Triphthongs though they have three letters, have mostly only two sounds, and are therefore nearly ocular, and have been by some Grammarians classed with the diphthongs, but in some words the three letters are sounded, as in *quoit* *buoy*.

#### OF SYLLABLES.

A Syllable is a sound either simple or compounded, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and constituting a word, or part of a word.

sound of  
x, and c

Spelling, is the art of expressing a word by its proper letters.

m, n, r,  
ds, from  
and flow-

# OF WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds used by common consent, as signs of our ideas.

the as-  
e, pe, te,  
i-vowels  
el, em,

A word of one syllable is termed a Monosyllable; a word of two syllables a Dissyllable; a word of three syllables a Trisyllable; and a word of four or more syllables a Polysyllable.

ich are  
l by the  
e; gut-  
nasals,

All words are either primitive or derivative.

onoun-  
n beat,

A primitive word is that which cannot be reduced to any simpler word in the language; as, man, good, content, nature.

els pro-  
a view.

oth the  
ounce,

vowels  
oe.

etters,  
erefore  
arians  
ds the

A derivative word is that which may be reduced to another word in English of greater simplicity; by taking from it its termination, or initial syllable; as, manifold, goodness, contentment, unnatural, Yorkshire.

ound-  
e, and

The orthography of a great number of English words is far from being uniform. Thus honour and honor, inquire and enquire, negotiate and negociate, control and controul, expense and expence, allege and alledge, surprise and surprize, complete and compleat, connexion and connection, abridgment and abridgement, valleys and vallies, attorneys and attornies, vulcano and vulcanoe, cigar and segar, and many other orthographical variations, are to be met with in the best modern Publications.

Some authority for deciding differences of this nature appears to be necessary, and there is perhaps none of equal pretensions with Dr. Johnson's Dictionary; though a few of his decisions do not appear to be warranted by the principles of Etymology and Analogy; since his Dictionary contains some Orthographical inconsistencies, which ought to be rectified: such as immovable, moveable; chastely, chastness; fertility, fertilly; sliness, slyly; fearlessly, fearlesness; needlessness, needlessly.



## ETYMOLOGY.

THE second part of Grammar is Etymology which treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

There are in English nine sorts of words, or as they are commonly called **PARTS OF SPEECH**, namely, the **ARTICLE**, the **SUBSTANTIVE** or **NOUN**, the **ADJECTIVE**, the **PRONOUN**, the **VERB**, the **ADVERB**, the **PREPOSITION**, the **CONJUNCTION**, and the **INTERJECTION**.

1. An Article is a word prefixed to substantives, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends ; as a garden, an eagle, the woman.

2. A Substantive or Noun, is the name of any thing that exists, or of which we have any notion, as London, man, virtue.

A Substantive may in general be distinguished, by its taking an article before it, or by its making sense of itself : as, a book, the sun, an apple ; Temperance, Industry, Chastity.

3. An Adjective, is a word added to a substantive to express its quality : as, " an *industrious* man, a *virtuous* woman."

An Adjective may be known by its making sense with the addition of the word thing : as, a good thing, a bad thing ; or of any particular substantive : as, a *sweet* apple, a *pleasant* prospect, a *lively* boy.

4. A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word ; as, " The man is happy ; *he* is benevolent ; *he* is useful."

5. A Verb is a word which signifies to Be, to Do, or to Suffer ; as, " I am ; I rule ; I am ruled."

A Verb expresses the doing of an action, as *to stab* ; which describes the thrusting of a sharp instrument into a body.

A verb may generally be distinguished, by its making sense with any of the personal Pronouns, or the word *to* before it : as, I walk, he plays, they write ; or, to walk, to play, to write.

6. An Adverb is a part of speech, joined to a verb, an adjective, and sometimes to another adverb, to express some quality, or circumstance respecting it : as, " He reads *well* ; a *truly* good man ; he writes *very* correctly."

An Adverb may be generally known, by its answering to the question, How ? How much ? When ? or Where ? as in the phrase, " He reads *correctly*," the answer to the question, How does he read ? is, *correctly*.

7. Prepositions serve to connect words with one another, and to shew the relation between them ; as, " He went *from* London *to* York ;" " She is *above* disguise ;" " They are supported *by* industry."

A Preposition may be known, by its admitting after it, a personal pronoun in the objective case : as, with, for, to, &c. will allow the objective case after them, with *him*, for *her*, to *them*, &c.

8. A Conjunction is a part of speech that is chiefly used to connect sentences ; so as, out of two or more sentences, to make but one : it sometimes connects only words : as, " Thou *and* he are happy, *because* you are good." " Two *and* three are five."

9. Interjections are words thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express the passions or emotions of the speaker : as, " O ! virtue, how amiable thou art !" " Ah me ! I am undone !"

In the following passage, all the parts of speech are exemplified :

1	2	7	2	5	1	2	3	7	2	8
The Power of speech is a Faculty peculiar to man, and										
5	5	7	4	7	4	3	2	7	1	3
was bestowed on him by his beneficent Creator, for the greatest										
8	6	3	2	8	9	6	6	5	4	5
and most excellent uses ; but alas ! how often do we pervert										
4	7	1	3	7	2					
it to the worst of purposes !										

In the foregoing sentence the words *the, a*, are Articles ; *Power, speech, faculty, man, Creator, uses, purposes*, are Substantives ; *peculiar, beneficent, greatest, excellent, worst*, are Adjectives ; *him, his, we, it*, are Pronouns ; *is, was, bestowed, do, pervert*, are Verbs ; *most, how, often*, are Adverbs ; *of, to, on, by, for*, are Prepositions ; *and, but*, are Conjunctions ; and *alas*, is an Interjection.

### OF THE ARTICLES.

An Article is a word prefixed to substantives, to point them out, and to show how far their signification extends ; as, *a garden, an eagle, the woman*.

In English there are but two articles *a* or *an*, and *the* :

*A* or *an* is styled the indefinite article : it is used in a vague sense to point out one single thing of the kind, in other respects indeterminate : as, " Give me a book ; bring me *an* apple."

*The* is called the definite article ; because it ascertains what particular thing or things are meant : as, " Give me *the* book ;" " Bring me *the* apples ;" meaning some book, or apples, referred to.

A Substantive without any article to limit it, is generally taken in its widest sense : as, " A candid temper is proper for man ;" that is, for all mankind.

The peculiar use and importance of the articles will be seen in the following example : " The son of a King,"—" the son of the King,"—" a son of the King." Each of these three phrases has an entire different meaning, through the different application of the articles *a* and *the*.

" Thou art *a* man," is a very general and harmless position, but thou art *the* man, (as Nathan said to David,) is an assertion capable of striking terror and remorse into the heart.

### OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A Substantive or Noun is the name of any thing that exist, or of which we have any notion : as, London, man, virtue.

Substantives are either proper or common.

Proper Names or Substantives, are the names appropriated to individuals : as, George, London, Thames.

Common Nouns are the names of things in general, chiefly those of the neuter gender, and are words that stand for kinds or sorts having many individuals under them: as, animal, tree, star, man, girl, &c.

When proper names have an article annexed to them, they are sometimes used as common names ; as, "the *Cicero* of his age." But in such sentences as, "the two Buonapartes were then in Spain ;" the prefixing the article does not render the noun common.

Common names may be used to signify individuals by the addition of articles or pronouns : as, "The boy is studious ;" "that girl is discreet."

Nouns may also be divided into the following classes : *Collective* Nouns, or nouns of multitude ; as, the People, the Parliament, the Army: *Abstract* Nouns, or the names of qualities abstracted from their substances ; as, knowledge, goodness, whiteness : *Verbal* or *participial* nouns ; as, beginning, reading, writing, learning.

To Substantives belong Gender, Number and Case ; and they are all of the third person, when spoken of, and of the second, when spoken to : as, "Blessings attend us on every side ; be grateful, children of men !" that is, "ye children of men."

### OF GENDER.

Gender is the distinction of Nouns, with regard to sex. There are three Genders, the Masculine, the Feminine, and the Neuter.

The Masculine Gender denotes animals of the Male kind : as, a man, a horse, a bull.

The Feminine Gender signifies animals of the Female kind : as, a woman, a duck, a hen.

The Neuter Gender denotes objects, which are neither males nor females : as a field, a house, a garden.

Some substantives naturally neuter, are by a figure of speech, converted into the masculine or feminine gender : as when we say of the sun, *he* is sitting : and of a ship, *she* sails well.

Figuratively in the English tongue, we often give the masculine gender to nouns, which are conspicuous for imparting or communicating, and which are by nature strong and efficacious. Those, again, are made feminine, which are conspicuous for containing or bringing forth, or which are peculiarly beautiful or amiable. Upon these principles, the sun is said to be masculine ; and the moon being the receptacle of the sun's light, to be feminine. The Earth is generally feminine. A ship, a country, a city, &c. are likewise made feminine, being receivers or containers. Time is always masculine, on account of its mighty efficacy. Virtue is feminine for its beauty, and its being the object of love. Fortune and the Church are generally put in the feminine gender. The Deity and Spirits are generally masculine.

The English Language has three methods of distinguishing the sex, viz :

1. By different words : as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Bachelor.	Maid.	Earl.	Countess.
Boar.	Sow.	Father.	Mother.
Boy.	Girl.	Friar.	Nun.
Brother.	Sister.	Gander.	Goose.
Buck.	Doe.	Hart.	Roe.
Bull.	Cow.	Horse.	Mare.
Bullock or } Steer. }	Heifer.	Husband.	Wife.
Bridegroom.	Bride.	King.	Queen.
Cock.	Hen.	Lad.	Lass.
Dog.	Bitch.	Lord.	Lady.
Drake.	Duck.	Man.	Woman.
		Master.	Mistress.

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Militer.	Spawner.	Stag.	Hind.
Nephew.	Niece.	Uncle.	Aunt.
Ram.	Ewe.	Widower.	Widow.
Sloven.	Slut.	Wizard.	Witch.
Son.	Daughter.		

2. By a difference of termination : and first by the termination—*ess* : as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Abbot.	Abbess.	Marquis.	Marchioness.
Actor.	Actress.	Master.	Mistress.
Adulterer.	Adultrress.	Mayor.	Mayoress.
Ambassador.	Ambassadress.	Patron.	Patroness.
Arbiter.	Arbitress.	Peer.	Peeress.
Baron.	Baroness.	Poet.	Poetess.
Benefactor.	Benefactress.	Priest.	Priestess.
Caterer.	Cateress.	Prince.	Princess.
Chanter.	Chantress.	Prior.	Prioress.
Conductor.	Conductress.	Prophet.	Prophetess.
Count.	Countess.	Protector.	Protectress.
Deacon.	Deaconess.	Shepherd.	Shepherdess.
Duke.	Duchess.	Singer or	} Songstress.
Elector.	Electress.	Songster.	
Emperor.	Empress.	Sorcerer.	Sorceress.
Enchanter.	Enchantress.	Tailor.	Tailoress.
Governor.	Governess.	Tiger.	Tigress.
Heir.	Heiress.	Traitor.	Traitress.
Hunter.	Huntress.	Tutor.	Tutoress.
Host.	Hostess.	Viscount.	Viscountess.
Jew.	Jewess.	Votary.	Votaress.
Lion.	Lioness.		

And Secondly by the terminations, *ine*, *ix*, *a*, *et*, or *elle*, *ina*, *etta* : as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Hero.	Heroine.	Lewis, or	} Louisa.
Landgrave.	Landgravine.	Louis.	

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Prosecutor.	Prosecutrix.	Anthony,	{ Antonia, or
Administrator.	Administratrix.	or Antonio	} Antoniette.
Executor.	Executrix.	George.	Georgina.
Sultan.	{ Sultana, or	Alexander.	Alexandrina.
	{ Sultanness.	Henry.	Henrietta.
Julius, or	{ Julia, Juliet,	Czar.	Czarina.
Julio.	{ or Juliette.		

3. By a Noun, Pronoun, or Adjective, being prefixed to the Substantive : as,

A cock-sparrow.	A hen-sparrow.
A man-servant.	A maid-servant.
A he-goat.	A she-goat.
A he-bear.	A she-bear.
A male child.	A female child.
Male descendants.	Female descendants.

The same noun is sometimes either masculine or feminine. The words *parent*, *child*, *cousin*, *friend*, *neighbour*, *servant*, and several others, are used indifferently for males or females.

Nouns with variable terminations contribute to concision and perspicuity of expression. We have only a sufficient number of them to make us feel our want : for when we say of a woman, *She is a Philosopher, an Astronomer, a builder, a weaver*, we perceive an impropriety in the termination, which we cannot avoid : but we can say, that *she is a botanist, a student, a witness, a scholar, an orphan, a companion*, because these terminations have not annexed to them the notions of sex.

## OF NUMBERS.

Number is the consideration of an *object*, as one or more.

Substantives are of two numbers, the Singular and the Plural.

The Singular number, expresses but one object; as, *a chair, a table*.

The Plural number signifies more objects than one ; as, chairs, tables.

Some Nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the Singular number ; as, wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, &c. others, only in the Plural form ; as, bellows, scissors, lungs, embers, ides, &c.

According to the practice, of the generality of correct writers, the following words, are construed: as, plural nouns ; *pains, riches, also, Mathematics, metaphysics, politics, ethics, optics, pneumatics*, with other similar names of Sciences.

The word *news* is by many writers considered as belonging to the singular number ; though it is also often used as plural.

Some words are the same in both numbers : as, deer, sheep, swine.

The Nouns, *means, amends, and alms*, are used both in the singular and in the plural number.

Dozen and braces, bellows and gallows are alike in both numbers, though they are also used in the plural ; as, dozens, gallowses.

The following Nouns being in Latin both singular and plural are used in the same manner when adopted into our language: *hiatus, apparatus, series, species*.

Some words derived from the learned languages are confined to the plural number ; as, *antipodes, credenda, addenda, literati, minutiae*.

Nouns of multitude when taken collectively have a plural ; as, "query, queries, meeting, meetings."

Cheese is used when it is spoken of generally, but the plural cheeses, when number is referred to, is employed.

Pease and fish, when the species is meant, are used as "pease are cheap," "fish is scarce," but



when number is referred to, the common plural is used—peas, fishes.

Some words are used as plural that are seemingly singular, as "horse and foot," meaning cavalry and infantry : as, "His army was two thousand horse and twelve thousand foot."

The plural number of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular : as, dove, doves ; face, faces ; pen, pens.

EXCEPTION 1st. Nouns ending in *x*, *s*, *sh*, and *ch*, soft, and *o*, form the plural by the addition of *es* : as tax, taxes ; kiss, kisses ; fish, fishes ; hero, heroes.

Nouns in *ch* hard, like *k*, form the plural with *s* only, as stomach, stomachs.

Those words in which *i* precedes *o* add *s* only, as punatillio, punatillios.

Junto, grotto, canto, quarto, and tyro, form the plural with *s* only : as also proper names, as Cato, Piatto, &c.

EXCEPTION 2. Nouns ending in *y*, preceded by a consonant, form the plural by changing *y* into *ies* : as, fly, flies ; lady, ladies. But the *y* is not changed when a vowel precedes it : as, key, keys ; day, days.

Proper Names ending in *y* are not used to change the *y* into *ies* : as, "The Henrys of England." Though to preserve a proper analogy, they ought to form it in *ies*,

EXCEPTION 3. Certain nouns ending in *f* or *fe*, (but not *ff*,) form the plural by changing these ending into *ves*, viz :

Calf, Calves.	Loaf, Loaves.	Shelf, Shelves.
Self, Selves.	Life, Lives.	Thief, Thieves.
Half, Halves.	Knife, Knives.	Wife, Wives.
Elf, Elves.	Sheaf, Sheaves.	Wolf, Wolves.

Staff though ending in *ff* is sometimes made staves, (though often staffs,) and wharf, (though often wharfs,) is sometimes wharves in the plural.

EXCEPTION 4. Certain Nouns form the plural in *en*, *ice*, *ence*, and *ine*—and some by changing *oo* into *ee*, viz :

Man,	Men.	Penny,	Pence.
Woman,	Women.	Hog, or	} Swine.
Brother,	{ Brethren, or	Sow,	
	{ Brothers.		
Child,	Children.	Cow,	{ Kine, or
Ox,	Oxen.		{ Cows.
Die,	Dice.	Foot,	Fect.
Louse,	Lice.	Goose,	Geese.
Mouse,	Mice.	Tooth,	Teeth.

Die makes *dies*, when not used as a term in gaming, and penny when spoken of a silver penny makes *pennies* in the plural.

EXCEPTION 5. Certain Nouns ending in *is*, form the plural by changing *is* into *es*, and some ending in *x* form it in *ces*, viz :

Antithesis,	Antitheses.	Hypothesis,	Hypotheses.
Apex,	Apices.	Thesis,	Theses.
Axis,	Axes.	Appendix,	{ Appendices,
Casis,	Cases.		
Crisis,	Crises.	Calx,	Calces.
Parenthesis,	Parentheses.	Index,	{ Indices, or
Decrisis,	Decrises.		
Emphasis,	Emphases.	Vertex,	{ Vertices, or
Ellipsis,	Ellipses.		
Metamor- } Metamor-	phoses.	Vortex,	{ Vortices, or
phosis, }			
			Vortexes.

Compound words when the principle word is put first ; has the principle word only varied to form the plural : as, " Father-in-law, fathers-in-law ; court martial, courts martial ; Aide-de-camp, aides-de-camp.

Some Nouns from foreign languages form the plural in *a*, *ae*, and *i* : as, Arcanum, arcana ; datum, data ; desideratum, desiderata ; phenomenon, phenomena ; erratum, errata ; animalculum, animalculæ ;

stratum, strata ; stimulus, stimuli ; genius, genii, (spirits) ; magus, magi ; virtuoso, virtuosi ; bandit, banditti.

Cherub and Seraph, or Cherubim and Seraphim, in the Bible and in most of the books wrote in the beginning of the 18th Century, are made plural by adding *s*, as "Cherubs, Cherubims," there seems therefore an impropriety in using the Hebrew plural *im*, in the English language, as an English plural, as seems to be the present practice.

### OF CASE.

In English, Substantives have four cases, the Nominative, the Possessive,\* the Objective, and the Vocative.

The Nominative case simply expresses the name of a thing, or the subject of the verb : as, "the boy plays." "The girls learn."

The Possessive case expresses the relation of property or possession ; and has an apostrophe with the letter *s* coming after it : as, "The scholar's duty ;" "My father's house."

When the plural ends in *s* the other *s* is commonly omitted, but the apostrophe is retained : as, "On eagles' wings ;" "The drapers' company."

Generally also, when the singular terminates in an *s*, and the next word begins with *s*, the apostrophe *s* is not added : as, "For goodness' sake."

The Objective case expresses the object of an action, or of a relation ; and generally follows a verb active, or a preposition : as, "John assists Charles ;" "They live in London ;" "James beats him."

The Vocative is used in calling on a person or thing : as, "O ! John assist me."

---

\* The Possessive is sometimes called the Genitive case, and the Objective the Accusative.

In English the Vocative and the Nominative have always the same form, though they are often different in Latin. It is for this reason perhaps of their having the same form, that Murray has taken no notice of the Vocative in his Grammar. But in so doing, he has certainly done wrong, as in parsing such sentences : as, " What is required of thee O man, &c." The words " O man," is neither a Nominative nor an Objective, and yet it is something, and may be called the Vocative.

Some late Grammarians appear to think, that they had made a new discovery, (because Murray had neglected it,) by giving it a new name, viz : " The Nominative Independent," and have even given lengthy rules about it, under this new name ; but the old name of Vocative seems preferable in several respects, and is therefore here used.

English Substantives are declined in the following manner :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative Case.</i>	A mother.	Mothers.
<i>Possessive Case.</i>	A mother's.	Mothers'.
<i>Objective Case.</i>	A mother.	Mothers.
<i>Vocative Case.</i>	O mother.	O mothers.
<i>Nominative Case.</i>	The man.	The men.
<i>Possessive Case.</i>	The man's.	The men's.
<i>Objective Case.</i>	The man.	The men.
<i>Vocative Case.</i>	O man.	O men.
<i>Nominative Case.</i>	A box.	The boxes.
<i>Possessive Case.</i>	A box's.	The boxes'.
<i>Objective Case.</i>	A box.	The boxes.
<i>Vocative Case.</i>	O box.	O boxes.
<i>Nominative Case.</i>	A fly.	The flies.
<i>Possessive Case.</i>	A fly's.	The flies'.
<i>Objective Case.</i>	A fly.	The flies.
<i>Vocative Case.</i>	O fly.	O flies.

## OF ADJECTIVES.

An Adjective is a word added to a Substantive, to express its quality : as, " An industrious man ;" " A virtuous woman ;" " A benevolent mind."

In English, the Adjective is not varied on account of Gender, Number, or Case. Thus we say "A careless boy ;" "careless girls."

The only variation which it admits of, is that of the degrees of comparison.

There are commonly reckoned three degrees of Comparison : the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Positive State expresses the quality of an object, without any increase or diminution : as, wise, good, great, benevolent.

The Comparative Degree, increases or lessens the positive in signification : as, wiser, greater, more benevolent, less wise.

The Superlative Degree, increases or lessens the positive, to the highest or lowest degree : as, wisest, greatest, least wise, most benevolent.

The simple word, or positive, becomes the comparative, by adding *r* or *er* ; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est* to the end of it : as, wise, wiser, wisest ; great, greater, greatest. Words ending in *y* change it into *i* : as, happy, happier, happiest. And the adverbs *more* and *most*, placed before the adjective have the same effect : as, wise, *more* wise, *most* wise.

In some words the superlative is formed by adding *most* to the end of them ; as, foremost, nethermost, uttermost or utmost, undermost, uppermost.

In English, there are some words, which by the caprice of custom, are irregular in their comparison ; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Good.	Better,	Best.
Bad or Ill,	Worse,	Worst.
Near,	Nearer,	Next or nearest.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Little,	Less,	Least.
Much or many,	More,	Most.
Old,	Elder or older,	Eldest or oldest.

An Adjective put without a Substantive, with the definite article before it, becomes a Substantive in sense and meaning : as, " Providence rewards *the good*, and punishes *the bad*."

Various Nouns placed before other nouns, assume the nature of Adjectives : as, sea fish, wine vessel, corn field, meadow ground.

Numeral Adjectives are either Cardinal or Ordinal : cardinal as one, two, three, &c. ; ordinal, as first, second, third, twentieth, &c.

## OF PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a Noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word : as, " The man is happy ; *he* is benevolent ; *he* is useful."

There are three kinds of Pronouns, viz : the Personal, the Relative, and the Adjective.

### OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

There are five Personal Pronouns, viz : *I, thou, he, she, it* ; with their plurals, *we, ye or you, they*.

Personal Pronouns admit of Person, Number, Gender, and Case.

The Persons of Pronouns are three in each number, viz :

<i>I</i> , is the first person,	} Singular.
<i>Thou</i> , is the second person,	
<i>He, she, or it</i> , is the third person,	
<i>We</i> , is the first person,	} Plural.
<i>Ye or you</i> , is the second person,	
<i>They</i> , is the third person,	

This account of persons will be very intelligible, when we reflect, that there are three persons who may be the subject of any discourse : first the person who speaks, may speak of himself ; secondly, he may speak of the person to whom he addresses himself ; thirdly, he may speak of some other person, and as the speakers, the persons spoken to, and the other persons spoken of, may be many, so each of these persons must have the plural number.

The Numbers of Pronouns, like those of Substantives, are two, the Singular, as, *I, those, he* ; and the Plural, as, *we, ye or you, and they*.

Gender has respect only to the third person singular of the pronouns, *he, she, it*. *He* is Masculine ; *she* is Feminine ; *it* is Neuter.

Pronouns have four cases ; the Nominative, the Possessive, the Objective, and the Vocative.

The Objective case of a Pronoun, has, in general, a form different from that of the Nominative or the Possessive case.

The Personal Pronouns are thus declined :

PERSON.	CASE.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First.	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>I.</i>	<i>We.</i>
	<i>Possessive.</i>	<i>Mine.</i>	<i>Ours.</i>
	<i>Objective.</i>	<i>Me.</i>	<i>Us.</i>
	<i>Vocative.</i>	<i>Wanting.</i>	<i>O we.</i>
Second.	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Thou.</i>	<i>Ye or you.</i>
	<i>Possessive.</i>	<i>Thine.</i>	<i>Yours.</i>
	<i>Objective.</i>	<i>Thee.</i>	<i>You.</i>
	<i>Vocative.</i>	<i>O thou.</i>	<i>O ye or you.</i>
Third. Masculine.	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>He.</i>	<i>They.</i>
	<i>Possessive.</i>	<i>His.</i>	<i>Theirs.</i>
	<i>Objective.</i>	<i>Him.</i>	<i>Them.</i>
Third. Feminine.	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>She.</i>	<i>They.</i>
	<i>Possessive.</i>	<i>Hers.</i>	<i>Theirs.</i>
	<i>Objective.</i>	<i>Her.</i>	<i>Them.</i>
Third. Neuter.	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>It.</i>	<i>They.</i>
	<i>Possessive.</i>	<i>Its.</i>	<i>Their.</i>
	<i>Objective.</i>	<i>It.</i>	<i>Them.</i>

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative Pronouns are such as relate, in general, to some word or phrase going before, which is thence called the Antecedent : they are, *who*, *which*, and *that* : as, "The man is happy *who* lives virtuously."

The Relative Pronoun when used interrogatively, relates to a word or phrase, which is not antecedent, but subsequent to the relative.

*What* is a kind of Compound Relative, including both the antecedent and relative, and is mostly equivalent to *that*, *which* : as, "This is *what* I wanted;" that is to say, "the thing *which* I wanted."

What seems sometimes an Adjective when joined to a Noun : as, "In what way he did it, I know not."

*Who* is applied to Persons, *which* to Animals and inanimate things : as, "He is a friend *who* is faithful in adversity;" "The bird *which* sung so sweetly, is flown;" "This is the tree *which* produces no fruit."

*That*, as a Relative, is often used to prevent the too frequent repetition of *who* and *which*. It is applied to both persons and things ; as, "He that acts wisely, deserves praise;" "Modesty is a quality *that* highly adorns a woman." It is often used when *who* or *which* would be improper.

*Who* is of both numbers and is thus declined :

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Nominative.	Who.
Possessive.	Whose.
Objective.	Whom.

*Which*, *that*, and *what*, are likewise of both numbers, but do not vary their termination, except that *whose* is some-



times used as the Possessive case of *which* : as, "The fruit of that forbidden *tree* whose mortal taste brought death."

*Who* and *what*, have often the words *ever* and *soever* annexed to them : as, whoever, whosoever ; whatever, whatsoever ;—and *which* has also *ever* and *soever* joined to it, but seldom by good writers.

*That* is sometimes a Relative, sometimes a Demonstrative Pronoun, and sometimes a Conjunction. It is a Relative when it may be turned into *who* or *which* without destroying the sense : as, "They *that* (who) reprove us, may be our best friends ;" "From every thing *that* (which) you see derive instruction." It is a Demonstrative Pronoun, when it is followed immediately by a Substantive, to which it is joined, or refers, and which it limits or qualifies : as, "That boy is industrious ;" "That belongs to me ;" meaning that book, that desk, &c. It is a Conjunction, when it joins sentences together and cannot be turned into *who* or *which*, without destroying the sense : as, "Take care *that* every day be well employed."

*Who*, *which*, and *what*, are called Interrogative Pronouns, when used in asking questions : "Who is he ? which is the book ? what are you doing."

#### OF ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Adjective Pronouns are of a mixed nature, participating the properties both of Pronouns and Adjectives.

The Adjective Pronouns may be subdivided into four sorts, namely, the *Possessive*, the *Distributive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Indefinite* or *Indeterminate*.

1. The Possessive are those which relate to possession or property. There are seven of them ; viz : *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their* ; and *mine* and *thine*, for *my* and *thy*. *His*, *mine* and *thine*, have the same form whether they are Possessive Pronouns, or the possessive cases of their Personal Pronouns.

A few examples will assist the learner, to distinguish the Possessive Pronouns, from the Possessive Cases, of their correspondent Personal Pronouns. The following sentences exemplify the Possessive Pronouns—"My lesson is finished ; Thy books are torn ; he loves his studies ; she does her duty ; We own our faults ; Your situation is distressing ; I admire their virtues."

The following are examples of the Possessive Cases of the Personal Pronouns : " This desk is *mine* ; the other is *thine* ; These trinkets are *his* ; those are *hers* ; This house is *ours*, and that is *yours* ; *Theirs* is very commodious."

The words *own* and *self*, are used in conjunction with Pronouns. *Own* is added to Possessives, both Singular and Plural : as, " *My own* hand ; *our own* house." " I live in *my own* house ;" that is, not in another's house. *Self* is added to Possessives : as, *Myself*, *thyself*, *yourself*, *yourselves*, *ourselves* ;—and also to Personal Pronouns : as, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*. " I did this *myself*," that is, not another did it. These have been called Compound Pronouns. They are all used in the Nominative, as well as the Objective case : as, " He came *himself* ; she will do it *herself* ; *Themselves* performed it ; you may go *yourselves* ; *ourselves* will go."

2. The *Distributive* are those which denote the person or things that make up a number, as taken separately and singly. They are, *each*, *every*, *either* or *neither* : as, " *Each* of his brothers is in a favourable situation ;" " *Every* man must account for himself ;" " I have not seen *either* of them ;" " *Neither* (that is not either) of my friends was there."

Either and neither, relate to two persons or things, to say, " either or neither of the three," is therefore improper.

*Every*, may relate to a series of things when plural : as, " a Jubilee kept every 50 years."

3. The *Demonstrative* are those which precisely point out the subjects to which they relate : *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, are of this class : as, " *This* is true charity ; *that* is only its image."

*This* refers to the nearest person or thing, and *that* to the most distant : as, " *This* man is more intelligent than *that*." *This* indicates the latter or last mentioned ; *that* the former or first mentioned : as, " Both wealth and poverty are temptations ; *that* tends to excite pride, *this*, discontent."

*These* which is the plural of *this*, and *those* the plural of *that*, are used in the same manner.

The words *former* and *latter* have been classed amongst the Demonstrative Pronouns, in many of their applications.—The following sentence is an example : “*Fabius* continued in the command with *Minucius* : the *former's* phlegm, was a check upon the *latter's* vivacity.” *Yon* also appears to be one ; as, “*Yon* ship will soon be here.”

4. The *Indefinite* are those which express their subjects in an indefinite or general manner. The following are of this kind : *some, other, any, one, all, such, none, another, both, whole.*

Of the Pronouns only the words *one* and *other* or *another* are varied. *One* has a possessive case, as *one, one's*. This word has a general signification, meaning people at large ; and sometimes also a peculiar reference to the person who is speaking : as, “*One* ought to pity the distressed ;” “*one* is apt to love *one's* self.” This word is often used in the Plural number : as, “The great *ones* of the world ;” “my wife and the little *ones*.”

*Other* is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Other.</i>	<i>Others.</i>
<i>Possessive.</i>	<i>Other's.</i>	<i>Others'.</i>
<i>Objective.</i>	<i>Other.</i>	<i>Others.</i>

The Plural *others* is only used apart from the Noun to which it refers, whether expressed or understood : as, “When you have perused these papers, I will send you the *others* ;” “he pleases *some*, but disgusts *others*.” When this Pronoun is joined to Nouns, either singular or plural, it has no variation : as, “the *other* man ;” “the *other* men.”

*None* is used in both numbers : as, “*None* is so deaf, as he that will not hear ;” “*none* of those are equal to these.”

*Another* is composed of the article *an*, prefixed to *other*—and has a possessive case as *other*.

The following phrases may serve to exemplify the Indefinite Pronouns : “*Some* of you are wise and good.” “A few were idle, the *others* industrious.” “Neither is there *any* that is unexceptionable.” “They were *all* present.” “*Such* is the state of man.” “This and that are *both* alike.” “*Whole* cities were sunk by this earthquake.”

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

Point out the Article, Noun and Adjective in the following sentences :

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| A good heart.           | Obedient children.      |
| A happy son.            | A peaceful mind.        |
| A dutiful son.          | Composed thoughts.      |
| A serene aspect.        | Disobedient scholars.   |
| A silver inkstand.      | Amiable girl.           |
| An affable deportment.  | The good boy.           |
| Uneasy behaviour.       | The Egyptian teapot.    |
| A blue sky.             | A bad boy.              |
| A rapid stream.         | The milky way.          |
| An Ivy mantled Tower.   | Sweet scented myrtle.   |
| A sweet scented flower. | The astronomical clock. |

Point out the Personal, Relative, Possessive, Distributive, Demonstrative, and Indefinite Pronouns, in the following sentences :

I am, thou art, he is, she was, it can be, our house, we are, ye or you were, they might be, her cap, its wing, my hat, thy copy, his pen, their own copy. Your knife, our own desk, your own write, their own copy. The hat is mine, the knife is theirs, the pen is his, the fan is hers, the house is yours, the desk is theirs, the ink is ours. It is its own cage, give me it, take him away. Let her stay, who is that, whose house is this ? That is mine, this is ours, these are yours. We will mind ourselves, mind yourselves, and let them mind themselves. It is just what he wanted. What man is that ? That is my bird that he has ; this is the bird which he chose ; who is that man ? Whose pen is this ? Which of these will you have ? To whom did you give your knife ? All may read this. Some are negligent ; others are industrious. They are both idle ; any person may go ; every hundred years was a Jubilee. It was either he or she did it. It was neither the one, nor the other. You may go with these here, but not with those yonder. This is mine, that is thine. One may deceive one's self. You

only can go, and not any other ; another person may go. None of them came there that day. The whole will amount only to half the sum due. Trees grow on each side of the River.

### EXERCISES ON NOUNS.

Shew the Nominative case Plural of the following Nouns :—Plain, plant, disorder, tree, apple, orange, novice, convenience, beginning, defeat, boy, cry, play, cherry, cargo, glory, lily, foe, blow, loaf, bush, muff, shell, wife, staff, self, knife, chief, wolf, ox, half, proof, shelf, life, monarch, blackness, louse, child, woman, foot, ear, tooth, goose, penny, grotto, folio, die, chimney, watch, journey, distress, basis, crisis, emphasis, ellipsis, antithesis, phenomenon, virtuoso, genius, apex.

Write the following Nouns in the Possessive case Singular :—Land, toy, girl, lake, sea, church, dress, beauty, bee, music, fox, lace, page.

Write the following Nouns in the Possessive case Plural: rock, house, wife, griet, mouse, tooth, staff, city, strife, lynx, family, echo, picture, tyro, ste each, brush, coach, harness, latch.

Write the following Adjectives in the comparative degree : near, loan, wise, little, good, bad, much, ill, far, old, white, short, dress, dear, sil'y, fine, pure, trusty, obscure, obscene, worthy.

Write the following Adjectives in the superlative degree : good, bad, little, late, near, more, old, ill, far, low, high, yellow, handsome.

Compare the following Adjectives, both by adding *er* and *est*, and with *more* and *most* : fair, grave, tall, strong, kind, poor, vile, feeble, early, discreet, narrow, sublime.

EXERCISES ON PRONOUNS.

Write or spell the Plural of the Pronouns : I, thou, he, she and it.

Write the Objective case of the Pronouns : I, thou, he, she, it, who and which, we, ye, they, these and those.

Write the Possessive case of the following Pronouns : I, thou, he, she, it, we, ye, they, who, which, other, another, one.

Put the Personal Pronoun in the place of the Noun Peter, in this sentence, " Peter went to the college, but Peter learns slowly, for Peter's genius is dull, and Peter is a dunce.

OF VERBS.

A Verb is a word which signifies to BE, to DO, or to SUFFER ; as, " I am, I rule, I am ruled."

Verbs are of three kinds, ACTIVE, PASSIVE, and NEUTER.

A Verb Active expresses an action, and necessarily implies an agent, and an object acted upon : as, to love ; " I love Penelope."

A Verb Passive expresses a passion, or a suffering, or the receiving of an action ; and necessarily implies an object acted upon : as, to be loved ; " Penelope is loved by me."

A Verb Neuter expresses being, or a state of being : as, " I am, I sleep, I sit, I walk."

Verbs may be divided into Regular, admitting of variety ; Irregular, Defective, and Redundant.

The Verb active is also called *transitive*,\* because the

\* Some late writers by introducing such names into Grammar, as " active intransitive verbs," not only injure the proper distinctions of Science, but use terms contradictory.—

action passes over to the object, or has an effect upon some other thing : as, "The Tutor instructs his Pupils." "I esteem the man."

Verbs Neuter may properly be denominated *intransitives*, because the effect is confined within the subject, and does not pass over to any object : as, "I sit, he lives, they sleep, we walk."

In English many Verbs are used both in an Active and Neuter signification. The construction only determining of which kind they are : as, "to flatten," signifying to make even or level, is a verb active ; but when it signifies to grow dull or insipid, it is a verb neuter.

A Neuter Verb, by the addition of a preposition, may become a *compound* active verb. To smile is a neuter verb : it cannot therefore, be followed by an objective case, nor be construed as a passive verb. We cannot say she *smiled him*, or *he was smiled*. But to smile *on* being a *compound* active verb, we properly say, *she smiled on him* ; *he was smiled on* by fortune.

Auxiliary or Helping Verbs, are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated ; they are, *am*, or *be*, *have*, *do*, *did*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, *could*, *would*, *should*, *let*, and sometimes *must* and *ought*.

To Verbs belong NUMBER, PERSON, MOOD, and TENSE.

Verbs have two numbers, the Singular and the Plural : as, "I run, we run," &c.

---

They say that "to walk," is an active verb, but not transitive, yet not neuter. But it is no more active than "to sleep," or any other neuter verb. There is an action in sleeping as well as walking. There appears to be indeed no verb without some action. Even the verb of existence *am* or *be* has such signification, since I cannot live without doing something. The only distinction then between the active and neuter verb is, that in the Active, the action passes over to another ; but in the Neuter it is confined to the actor.



In each number there are three Persons, as :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First Person.	I love.	We love.
Second Person.	Thou lovest.	Ye or you love.
Third Person.	He loves, or loveth.	They love.

The learner will observe, that the Verb in some parts of it, varies its *endings*, to express or agree with different persons of the same number : as, " I *love*, thou *lovest* ; he *loves* or *loveth*." And also to express different numbers of the same person : as, " Thou *lovest*, ye *love*, he *loveth*, they *love*." In the Plural number of the Verb, there is no variation of ending to express the different persons ; and the Verb in the three persons plural is the same, as it is in the first person singular. Thus the adding the terminations *est* or *st*, *s*, and *eth*, is the only way the Verb varies its endings in the persons. But in the Participles, the terminations *ing*, *ed*, *n*, *t*, *g*, and *k*, *ad*, *id*, &c. are added ; or are characteristic of varieties of Verbs.

Mood, or Mode is a particular form of the Verb, showing the manner in which the being, action, or passion, is represented.

The nature of a Mood may be more intelligibly explained to the Scholar, by observing, that it consists in the change which the Verb undergoes to signify various intentions of the mind, and various modifications, and circumstances of actions : which explanation, if compared with the following account and uses of the different Moods, will be found to agree with, and illustrate them.

There are five Moods of Verbs, the Indicative, the Imperative, the Potential, the Subjunctive, and the Infinitive.

The Indicative Mood, simply indicates, or declares a thing : as, " He loves, he is loved ;" or, it asks a question : as, " Does he love ?" " Is he loved ?"

The Imperative Mood is used for commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting : as, " Depart thou ; mind ye ; let us stay ; go in peace ; give us our daily bread."

The Potential Mood implies possibility or liberty, power, will, or obligation : as, " It may rain ;



he may go or stay ; I can ride ; he would walk ; they should learn."

The Subjunctive Mood represents a thing under a condition, motive, wish, supposition, &c. ; and is preceded by a conjunction, expressed or understood, and attended by another verb : as, " I will respect him, *though* he chide me ;" " Were he good, he would be happy ;" that is, " *if* he were good."

The Infinitive Mood expresses a thing in a general and unlimited manner, without any distinction of number or person : as, " To act, to speak, to be feared."

The Participle is a certain form of the verb, and derives its name from its participating, not only of the properties of a Verb, but also of those of an Adjective : as, " I am desirous of *knowing* him ;" " *admired* and *applauded*, he became vain ;" " *having finished* his work, he submitted it," &c. " He *had written* a letter to them."

There are three Participles, the Present or Imperfect or Active, the Perfect or Passive or Past, and the Compound Perfect : as, " Loving, loved, having loved." " Knowing, known, having known."

The Present Participle, signifies imperfect action begun and not ended : as, " I am *writing* a letter."

The Past Participle, signifies action *perfected* or finished : as, " I have *written* a letter ;" " The letter is *written*."

The Participle is distinguished from the Adjective, by the former's expressing the idea of time, and the latter's denoting only a quality. The phrases, " *loving* to give, as well as to receive ;" " *moving* in haste ;" " *heated* with liquor ;"—contain Participles giving the idea of time, but the epithets contained in the expressions, " a *loving* child ;" " a *moving* spectacle ;" " a *heated* imagination ;" mark simply the qualities referred to, without any regard to time ; and may properly be called Participial Adjectives.

Participles sometimes perform the office of Substantives, and are used as such ; as in the following instances : " The

beginning ;" " a good *understanding* ;" " excellent *writing*." " The chancellor's *being attached* to the King, secured his crown." " The general *having failed* in his enterprise, occasioned his disgrace." " John's *having been writing* a long time, had wearied him."

Tense being the distinction of time, might seem to admit only of the present, past, and future ; but to mark it more accurately, it is made to consist of six variations, viz : the Present, the Imperfect, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, and the First and Second Future Tenses.

The Present Tense represents an action or event, as passing at the time in which it is mentioned : as, " I rule, I am ruled ; I think, I fear ; I am working."

This Tense is used to express general truths, or things that are always the same : as, " Heat produces fire ;" " truth is eternal." This Tense is often used to express the actions or ideas of persons long since dead : as, " Seneca reasons well." In animated historical relations, this tense is sometimes substituted for the imperfect : as, " He enters the territory of the peaceable inhabitants, he fights and conquers, takes an immense booty, and returns home to enjoy an empty triumph."

The Imperfect or Past Tense represents the action or event, either as past and finished, or as remaining unfinished at a certain time past : as, " I loved her for her modesty and virtue ;" " They were travelling post when he met them." " The sun arose in splendor ;" " John died to day." This tense is often called, " the Preterite."

The Perfect Tense not only refers to what is past, but also conveys an allusion to the present time : as, " I have finished my letter ;" " I have seen the person that was recommended to me."

In speaking of things abolished or obsolete, this tense should not be used, we may say, " Cicero has written Orations," but we ought not to say, " Cicero has written Poems," because the orations are extant,

but the poems are lost ; we must therefore use the imperfect and say, " Cicero wrote Poems."

The Perfect Tense, and the Imperfect Tense, both denote a thing that is past ; but the former denotes it in such a manner, that there is still actually remaining some part of the time to slide away, wherein we declare the thing has been done. Whereas the Imperfect denotes the thing or action past, in such a manner, that nothing remains of that time in which it was done.

The Pluperfect Tense represents a thing, not only as past, but also as prior to some other point of time specified in the sentence : as, " I had finished my letter before he arrived."

The First Future Tense represents the action as yet to come, either with or without respect to the precise time : as, " The sun will rise to-morrow."

The Second Future, or Future Perfect, intimates that the action will be fully accomplished, at or before the time of another future action or event : as, " I shall have dined at one o'clock ;" " the two houses shall have finished their business, when the King comes to prorogue them."

The different Tenses represent an action, as incomplete or imperfect, or as complete and perfect : in the phrases, " I am writing ;" " I was writing ;" " I shall be writing." Imperfect unfinished actions are signified, but the following examples, " I wrote ;" " I have written ;" " I had written ;" " I shall have written ;" all denote complete perfect action.

The conjugation of a Verb is the regular combination and arrangement of its several Numbers, Persons, Moods and Tenses.

The conjugation of an Active Verb is styled the Active Voice ; and that of a Passive Verb the Passive Voice.

The Auxiliary and Active Verb **TO HAVE**, is conjugated in the following manner :

# TO HAVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### *Present Tense.*

#### SINGULAR.

1. *Pers.* I have.
2. *Pers.* Thou hast.
3. *Pers.* He, she, or it, }  
has or hath.

#### PLURAL.

1. We have.
2. Ye or you have
3. They have.

### *Past or Imperfect Tense.*

#### SINGULAR.

1. I had.
2. Thou hadst.
3. He, &c. had.

#### PLURAL.

1. We had.
2. Ye or you had.
3. They had.

### *Perfect Tense.*

#### SINGULAR.

1. I have had.
2. Thou hast had.
3. He, &c. has had.

#### PLURAL.

1. We have had.
2. Ye or you have had.
3. They have had.

### *Pluperfect Tense.*

#### SINGULAR.

1. I had had.
2. Thou hadst had.
3. He, &c. had had.

#### PLURAL.

1. We had had.
2. Ye or you had had.
3. They had had.

### *First Future Tense.*

#### SINGULAR.

1. I shall or will have.
2. Thou shalt or wilt have
3. He, &c. shall or will have.

#### PLURAL.

1. We shall or will have.
2. Ye or you shall or will have.
3. They shall or will have.

*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I shall have had.      | 1. We shall have had.       |
| 2. Thou wilt have had.    | 2. Ye or you will have had. |
| 3. He, &c. will have had. | 3. They will have had.      |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Let me have.                        | 1. Let us have.                           |
| 2. Have or have thou, or do thou have. | 2. Have or have ye, or do ye or you have. |
| 3. Let him have.                       | 3. Let them have.                         |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I may or can have.        | 1. We may or can have.        |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have. | 2. Ye or you may or can have. |
| 3. He, &c. may or can have.  | 3. They may or can have.      |

*Past or Imperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have.            | 1. We might, could, would or should have.        |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have. | 2. Ye or you might, could, would or should have. |
| 3. He, &c. might, could, would or should have.       | 3. They might, could, would or should have.      |

*Perfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. I may or can have had.        | 1. We may or can have had.        |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have had. | 2. Ye or you may or can have had. |
| 3. He may or can have had.       | 3. They may or can have had.      |

*Pluperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have had.            | 1. We might, could, would or should have had.       |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have had. | 2. Ye or you might, could would or should have had. |
| 3. He, &c. might, could, would or should have had.       | 3. They might, could, would or should have had.     |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. If I have.       | 1. If we have.        |
| 2. If thou have.    | 2. If ye or you have. |
| 3. If he, &c. have. | 3. If they have.      |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present.* To have.      *Perfect.* To have had.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present or Active.</i>	Having.
<i>Perfect or Passive.</i>	Had.
<i>Compound Perfect.</i>	Having had.

The Auxiliary and Neuter Verb TO BE is conjugated as follows :

## TO BE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present Tense.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. I am.
2. Thou art.
3. He, she, it, is.

##### PLURAL.

1. We are.
2. Ye or you are.
3. They are.

#### *Imperfect Tense.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. I was.
2. Thou wast.
3. He, &c. was.

##### PLURAL.

1. We were.
2. Ye or you were.
3. They were.

#### *Perfect Tense.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. I have been.
2. Thou hast been.
3. He, &c. has or hath been.

##### PLURAL.

1. We have been.
2. Ye or you have been.
3. They have been.

#### *Pluperfect Tense.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. I had been.
2. Thou hadst been.
3. He, &c. had been.

##### PLURAL.

1. We had been.
2. Ye or you had been.
3. They had been.

#### *First Future Tense.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. I shall or will be.
2. Thou shalt or wilt be.
3. He shall or will be.

##### PLURAL.

1. We shall or will be.
2. Ye or you shall or will be.
3. They shall or will be.

*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I shall have been.     | 1. We shall have been.        |
| 2. Thou wilt have been.   | 2. Ye or you shall have been. |
| 3. He, &c. will have been | 3. They shall have been.      |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Let me be.              | 1. Let us be.                 |
| 2. Be thou, or do thou be. | 2. Be ye or you, or do ye be. |
| 3. Let him, &c. be.        | 3. Let them be.               |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I may or can be.        | 1. We may or can be.        |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst be. | 2. Ye or you may or can be. |
| 3. He, &c. may or can be   | 3. They may or can be.      |

*Imperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should be.           | 1. We might, could, would or should be.       |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst or shouldst be. | 2. Ye or you might, could would or should be. |
| 3. He, &c. might, could would or should be.       | 3. They might, could, would or should be.     |



*Perfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I may or can have been
2. Thou mayst or canst have been.
3. He, &c. may or can have been.

## PLURAL.

1. We may or can have been.
2. Ye or you may or can have been.
3. They may or can have been.

*Pluperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should have been.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst or shouldst have been.
3. He, &c. might, could, would or should have been.

## PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would or should have been.
2. Ye or you might, could, would or should have been.
3. They might, could, would or should have been.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. If I be.
2. If thou be.
3. If he, &c. be.

## PLURAL.

1. If we be.
2. If ye or you be.
3. If they be.

*Imperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. If I were.
2. If thou were.
3. If he, &c. were.

## PLURAL.

1. If we were.
2. If ye or you were.
3. If they were.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.* To be. *Perfect.* To have been.

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.*      *Being.*      *Perfect.*      *Been.*  
*Compound Perfect.*      *Having been.*

OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

The Learner will perceive that the preceding Auxiliary Verbs *to have* and *to be*, could not be conjugated through all the Moods and Tenses, without the help of other Auxiliary Verbs: namely, *may, can, will, shall*, and their variations. That Auxiliary Verbs in their simple state and unassisted by others, are of a very limited extent: and that they are chiefly useful in the aid which they afford in conjugating the principal Verbs, will appear by a conjugation of each.

TO HAVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I have, thou hast, he has or hath.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they have.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I had, thou hadst, he had.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they had.

PERFECT. I have had.      PLUPERFECT. I had had, &c.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Having.      PERFECT. Had.

TO BE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I am, thou art, he is.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I was, thou wast, he was.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you were.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Being.      PERFECT. Been.

## ETYMOLOGY.

## SHALL.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I shall, thou shalt, he shall.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they shall.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I should, thou shouldst, he should.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they should.

## WILL.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I will, thou wilt, he will.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they will.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I would, thou wouldst, he would.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they would.

## MAY.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I may, thou mayst, he may,  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they may.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I might, thou mightst, he might  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they might.

## CAN.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I can, thou canst, he can.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they can.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I could, thou couldst, he could.  
 PLURAL. We, ye or you, they could.

TO DO.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I do, thou dost, he does or doth.

PLURAL. We, ye or you, they do.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR. I did, thou didst, he did.

PLURAL. We, ye or you, they did.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Doing.

PERFECT. Done.

The Verbs *have*, *be*, *will*, and *do*, when they are unconnected with a principle verb, expressed or understood are not Auxiliaries but Principle Verbs : as, " We have enough ;" " I am grateful ;" " He wills it to be so ;" " They do as they please." In this view they have also the Auxiliary : as, " I shall have enough ;" " I will be grateful."

*Do* and *did* mark the action itself, or the time of it with greater energy and positiveness : as, " I do speak truth, I did respect him ;" " Here am I, for thou didst call me." They are of great use in negative sentences : as, " I do not fear ;" " I did not write." They are much employed in asking questions. They sometimes supply the place of another verb, and make the repetition of it in the same and subsequent sentences unnecessary : as, " You attend not to your studies as he does ;" (i. e. as he attends, &c.) " I shall come if I can, but, if I do not, please excuse me ;" (i. e. if I come not.)

We shall give a specimen of the conjugation of *Do* and *Did* when used in Interrogation.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

SINGULAR. Do I love ? dost thou love ? does he love ?

PLURAL. Do we, ye or you, they love ?

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR. Did I love ? didst thou love ? did he love ?

PLURAL. Did we, ye or you, they love ?

They are not used however in a Passive case : as,

PRESENT.

SINGULAR. Am I loved ? art thou loved ? is he loved ?

PLURAL. Were we, ye or you, they loved ?

These Auxiliaries *do* and *did* appear to be used often only with a view to add emphasis to a sentence : as, " I do love ;" some verbs however cannot be conjugated without *did* in the imperfect : as, Present, " I beat him ;" Imperfect, " I did beat him ;" *did* is not then emphatic, but *do* seems always to be used in an emphatic sense.

*Let* not only expresses permission, but entreating, exhorting, commanding : as, " Let us know the truth ;" " Let me die the death of the righteous ;" " Let not thy heart be too much elated with success ;" " Let thy inclination submit to thy duty."

*May* and *might* express the possibility or liberty of doing a thing ; *can* and *could* the power : as, " It may rain ;" " I may write or read ;" " He might have improved more than he has ;" " He can write much better than he could last year."

*Must* is sometimes called in for a helper and denotes necessity : as, " We must speak the truth, whenever we speak, and we must not prevaricate." *Must* properly speaking has no relation to time, though it is commonly used with other verbs in the present tense.

*Will* in the first person singular and plural intimates resolution and promising ; in the second and third person only foretells : as, " I will reward the good and will punish the wicked ;" " We will remember benefits and be grateful ;" " Thou wilt or he will repent of that folly ;" " You or they will have a pleasant walk."

*Shall* on the contrary in the first person simply foretells, in the second and third person promises, commands or threatens : as, " I shall go abroad ;" " We shall dine at home ;" " Thou shalt or you shall inherit the land ;" " Ye shall do justice and love mercy ;" " They shall account for their misconduct." The following passage is not translated according to the distinct and proper meanings of the words *shall* and *will* : " Surely, goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life ; and I will dwell in the house of the Lord forever ;" it ought to be " will follow me," and " I shall dwell." The Foreigner who as it is said fell into the Thames, and cried out : " I will be drowned nobody shall help me ;" made a sad misapplication of these auxiliaries.

These observations respecting the import of the verbs *will* and *shall* must be understood of explicative sentences, for when the sentence is interrogative just the reverse for the most part takes place : thus, " I shall go, you will go," express events only ; but, " will you go ?" imports intention ; and

"*shall I go ?*" refers to the will of another, but, "*he shall go,*" and "*shall he go ?*" both imply will expressing or referring to a command.

When the Verb is put in the Subjunctive Mood, the meaning of the Auxiliaries likewise undergo some alteration, as the learner will readily perceive by a few examples : "*He shall proceed,*" "*If he shall proceed ;*" "*You shall consent,*" "*If you shall consent.*" These Auxiliaries are sometimes interchanged in the Indicative and Subjunctive Mood, to convey the same meaning of the Auxiliary : as, "*He will not return,*" "*If he shall not return ;*" "*He shall not return,*" "*If he will not return.*"

*Would* primarily denotes inclination of will, and *should* obligation, but they both vary their import. *Should* seems often to be used in place of ought : as, "*We should remember the poor.*" *Would* and *should* are often attended with a supposition though they are also often used to express simple events ; they seem to be subject to the same rules.

As the Subjunctive Mood in English has no variation in the form of the Verb from the Indicative, (except in the Present Tense, and the second Future Tense of Verbs generally, and the Present and Imperfect Tenses of the Verb *to be*.) It would be superfluous to conjugate it through every tense.—The remaining tenses of the subjunctive mood being the same, except that the second and third person singular and plural of the second future tense require the auxiliary *shall, shalt*, instead of *will, wilt* ; thus, "*He will have completed the work by midsummer,*" is the Indicative : but the Subjunctive is, "*If he shall have completed the work by midsummer.*" It will be proper for the Learner to repeat all the Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood, with different conjunctions prefixed.

It may be proper for young persons beginning the study of Grammar not to commit to memory all the Tenses of the Verbs. If the simple tenses, namely, the *Present* and *Imperfect*, together with the first *Future Tense*, should in the first instance be committed to memory, and the rest carefully perused

and explained, the business will not be tedious to scholars.

That the Potential Mood should be separated from the Subjunctive, is evident from the intricacy and confusion which are produced by their being blended together, and from the distinct nature of the two moods, the former of which may be expressed without any condition, supposition, &c. as will appear from the following instances, "They *might* have done better ;" "We *may* always act uprightly ;" "He was generous and *would* not take revenge ;" "We *should* resist the allurements of vice ;" "I *could* formerly indulge myself in things, of which I *cannot* now think, but with pain."

Some Grammarians have supposed that the Potential Mood, as distinguished from the Subjunctive, coincides with the Indicative. But as the latter, "simply indicates or declares a thing," it is manifest that the former which modifies the declaration, and introduces an idea materially distinct from it, must be considerably different, "I *can* walk," "I *should* walk," appear to be so essentially distinct from the simplicity of "I walk," "I walked," as to warrant a correspondent distinction of moods.

The Indicative Mood is converted into the Subjunctive by the expression of a condition, motive, wish, supposition, &c. being superadded to it : so the Potential Mood, may in like manner be turned into the Subjunctive ; as will be seen in the following examples : "If I could deceive him, I should abhor it ;" "Though he should increase in wealth, he would not be charitable ;" "Even in prosperity he would gain no esteem, unless he should conduct himself better."

English Verbs have hitherto been commonly divided into what has been called Regular and Irregular ; the former, comprehending such Verbs as form the Perfect or Past Participle, in *ed* ; and the latter such as do not form it with that termination. But this division seems not to be correct ; since many

of these classed as Irregular, are in reality more Regular than many of those whose Past Participle ends in *ed*; as for instance these, whose Past Participle ends in *g* and *k*, as *sing*, *sink*, &c. which are more regular according to the form acquired by their variety of verbs, than those, whose Present Tense ends in *y*, (as *carry*.) though their Past Participle end in *ed*. Some method, of arranging Verbs, in proper order, then, appears to be the greatest desideratum yet wanted in English Grammar.— We have therefore, as the best method we could devise, classed these in *ed* according to their varieties: and those not ending in *ed*, according to theirs. And though they may not *all* fall *exactly* into *Ranks*, as Regular; yet surely this new arrangement must save a great deal of time and labour to learners; especially to Foreigners; many of whom, complain so much of the difficulties of English Verbs; and chiefly on this account never attain to write the language correctly. We have divided Verbs into a *First* and *Secondary* Conjugations.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

The first Conjugation comprehends all Verbs, whose past Participle ends in *ed*, and the first person of the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect or Past Tenses of the Indicative Mood, are the same as this Participle. It contains five varieties.

### VARIETY I.

Comprehends all Verbs that end in *e* as *love*; when the terminations *d*, *st*, *th*, and *s*,\* are added the

\* *D*, *st*, *th*, are added when the Verb ends in *e*, but *ed*, *st*, and *eth*, when it ends not in *e*.

*St*, (without *e*.) is added to the second person of the Auxiliary Verbs may, can, might, could, would and should: as, "Thou mayst," "Thou couldst," &c. as also to the imperfect of the first Conjugation: as, "I loved, thou lovedst;" but in the Imperfect of the secondary Conjugation the *e* is retained: as, "I knew, thou knewest;" "I fought, thou foughtest;" "I sing, thou sungest;" "I put, thou puttest;" "I found, thou foundest."

The termination *eth*, which has been called the solemn *eth*, because used on solemn subjects, is not used at present except in Psalms and Prayers, and subjects of Devotion. On these subjects *eth* is still used in preference to the terminations *d* or *es*. It seems therefore not to be correct what some late writers assert, that this termination is obsolete.



*e* is not cut off, but when *ing* is added it is : as love, loving, except the verb ends in *ee*, as, agree, agreeing.

The greatest number of English Verbs end in *e*, and are such as, love, place, ensure, educate, repine, invite, revere, revenge, refuse, handle, struggle, embezzle, agree, decree, see, &c.

#### VARIETY II.

Comprehends all such Verbs as end in vowels, (except *e* or *ee*,) in two consonants ; in a consonant preceded by a diphthong ; in a diphthong ; in three letters, where the middle one is a vowel, and the other two consonants, (except those ending in *l*,) when the accent is not on the last syllable. When the terminations *ed*, *ing*, &c. are added, no letter is cut off : But in the verbs ending in *ch*, *sh*, *o*, *x*, *s*, and *z*, when *s*, *st*, or *th*, is added, an *e* is put before them, as in fix, fixes ; wish, wishes ; echo, echoeth, &c.\*

The Verbs are such as, kill, stuff, dress, mind, insult, trick, wish, pitch, refrain, obey, dismay, enjoy, bestow, renew, weight, fix, buzz, woo, open, widen, hasten, differ, poison, foster, visit, render, &c.

#### VARIETY III.

Comprehends all such Verbs, as end in three letters, when the middle one is a vowel, and the other two consonants ; and is accented on the last syllable, and those ending in *l*, however accented. When the terminations *ed*, *ing*, *est*, *eth*, are added, the last consonant is doubled, but when *s* is added, it is not.

The verbs are such as, compel, distil, fulfil, remit, allot, win, entrap, travel, level, regret, bet, blot, deter, inter, pen, beg, brag, &c.

---

\* When *ch* sounds like *k* as in stomach *e* is not added, as, "He stomachs that affront."

VARIETY IV.

Comprehends all such Verbs, as end in *y* after a Consonant : When *ed*, *est*, &c. are added, the *y* is changed into *i* ; but when *ing* is added the *y* is retained.

The Verbs are such as, marry, envy, reply, bury, crucify, comply, study, occupy, try, fly, rectify, &c.

VARIETY V.

Comprehends certain Verbs, that have *ea* or *ee* in the Present Tense, and end in *d*, (except *flee*,) and lose the *a* or an *e* in the other Tenses, and Past Participle. The verbs are :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imp. Perf. and Past Part.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imp. Perf. and Past Part.</i>
Lead,	led.	Breed,	bred.
Mislead,	mised.	Feed,	fed.
Knead,	{ kned or kneaded.	Flee,	flee.
Plead,	{ pled, or pleaded.	Speed,	sped.
Bleed,	bled.	Weed.	{ wed or weed- ed.

Shed and shred have their Present, Perfect and Past Tenses, and Past Participle all the same.

An Active Verb of the first Conjugation is conjugated in the following manner :

TO LOVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I love.
2. Thou lovest.
3. He, she, or it loves, }  
or loveth.

PLURAL.

1. We love.
2. Ye or you love.
3. They love.

E

*Imperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I loved.
2. Thou lovedst.
3. He loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We loved.
2. Ye or you loved.
3. They loved.

*Perfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I have loved.
2. Thou hast loved.
3. He has or hath loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We have loved.
2. Ye or you have loved.
3. They have loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I had loved.
2. Thou hadst loved.
3. He had loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We had loved.
2. Ye or you had loved.
3. They had loved.

*First Future Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I shall or will love.
2. Thou shalt or wilt love.
3. He shall or will love.

## PLURAL.

1. We shall or will love.
2. Ye or you shall or will love.
3. They shall or will love.

*Second Future or Future Perfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I shall have loved.
2. Thou wilt have loved.
3. He will have loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We shall have loved.
2. Ye or you will have loved.
3. They will have loved.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

1. Let me love.
2. Love thou, or do thou love.
3. Let him love.

## PLURAL.

1. Let us love.
2. Love ye or you, or do ye love.
3. Let them love.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I may or can love.
2. Thou mayst or canst love.
3. He may or can love.

PLURAL.

1. We may or can love.
2. Ye or you may or can love.
3. They may or can love.

*Imperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should love.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst love.
3. He might, could, would or should love.

PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would or should love.
2. Ye or you might, could would or should love
3. They might, could, would or should love.

*Perfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I may or can have loved.
2. Thou mayst or canst have loved.
3. He may or can have loved.

PLURAL.

1. We may or can have loved.
2. Ye or you may or can have loved.
3. They may or can have loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, or should have loved.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have loved.
3. He might, could, would or should have loved.

PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would or should have loved.
2. Ye or you might, could would or should have loved.
3. They might, could, would or should have loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. If I love.
2. If thou love.
3. If he love.

## PLURAL.

1. If we love.
2. If ye or you love.
3. If they love.\*

## INFINITIVE MOOD,

*Present.* To love.*Perfect.* To have loved.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present.* Loving.*Perfect.* Loved.*Compound Perfect.* Having loved.

## PASSIVE.

Verbs Passive of the first Conjugation form their Perfect Participle by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the Verb ; as, from the Verb “ To love,” is formed the Passive, “ I am loved, I was loved, I shall be loved,” &c.

A Passive Verb is conjugated by adding the Perfect Participle to the Auxiliary *to be*, through all its changes of Number, Person, Mood and Tense, in the following manner.

## TO BE LOVED.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I am loved.
2. Thou art loved.
3. He is loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We are loved.
2. Ye or you are loved.
3. They are loved

---

\* The remaining Tenses of this Mood, are, in general, similar to the correspondent Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

*Imperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I was loved.
2. Thou wast loved.
3. He was loved.

PLURAL.

1. We were loved.
2. Ye or you were loved.
3. They were loved.

*Perfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I have been loved.
2. Thou hast been loved.
3. He has or hath been loved.

PLURAL.

1. We have been loved.
2. Ye or you have been loved.
3. They have been loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I had been loved.
2. Thou hadst been loved.
3. He had been loved.

PLURAL.

1. We had been loved.
2. Ye or you had been loved.
3. They had been loved.

*First Future Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I shall or will be loved.
2. Thou shalt or wilt be loved.
3. He shall or will be loved.

PLURAL.

1. We shall or will be loved.
2. Ye or you shall or will be loved.
3. They shall or will be loved.

*Second Future Tense.*

SINGULAR.

1. I shall have been loved.
2. Thou wilt have been loved.
3. He will have been loved.

PLURAL.

1. We shall have been loved.
2. Ye or you will have been loved.
3. They will have been loved.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

1. Let me be loved.
2. Be thou loved, *or* do thou be loved.
3. Let him be loved.

## PLURAL.

1. Let us be loved.
2. Be ye *or* you loved, *or* do ye be loved.
3. Let them be loved.

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I may *or* can be loved.
2. Thou mayst *or* canst be loved.
3. He may *or* can be loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We may *or* can be loved.
2. Ye *or* you may *or* can be loved.
3. They may *or* can be loved.

*Imperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I might, could, would, *or* should be loved.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst *or* shouldst be loved.
3. He might, could, would *or* should be loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We might, could, would *or* should be loved.
2. Ye *or* you might, could, would *or* should be loved.
3. They might, could, would *or* should be loved.

*Perfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. I may *or* can have been loved.
2. Thou mayst *or* canst have been loved.
3. He may *or* can have been loved.

## PLURAL.

1. We may *or* can have been loved.
2. Ye *or* you may *or* can have been loved.
3. They may *or* can have been loved.

*Pluperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. I might, could, would,<br/>or should have been<br/>loved.</p> <p>2. Thou mightst, couldst,<br/>wouldst or shouldst<br/>have been loved.</p> <p>3. He might, could, would<br/>or should have been<br/>loved.</p> | <p>1. We might, could, would<br/>or should have been<br/>loved.</p> <p>2. Ye or you might, could,<br/>would or should have<br/>been loved.</p> <p>3. They might, could,<br/>would or should have<br/>been loved.</p> |
|---|--|

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. If I be loved.</p> <p>2. If thou be loved.</p> <p>3. If he be loved.</p> | <p>1. If we be loved.</p> <p>3. If ye or you be loved.</p> <p>3. If they be loved.</p> |
|--|--|

*Imperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. If I were loved.</p> <p>2. If thou wert loved.</p> <p>3. If he were loved.</p> | <p>1. If we were loved.</p> <p>2. If ye or you were loved.</p> <p>3. If they were loved.*</p> |
|--|---|

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

To be loved.

*Perfect.*

To have been loved.

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.* Being loved.

*Perfect or Passive.* Loved.

*Compound Perfect.*

Having been loved.

---

\* The remaining Tenses of this Mood, are, in general, similar to the correspondent Tenses of the Indicative Mood.



Those Tenses are called Simple Tenses which are formed of the Principle without an Auxiliary Verb : as, " I love, I loved."

The Compound Tenses are such as cannot be formed without an Auxiliary Verb : as, " I have loved, I had loved, I shall or will love ; I may love, I may be loved, I may have been loved," &c. These Compounds are however to be considered, as only different forms of the same verb.

The Auxiliary Verbs used as signs of the different Tenses of the Indicative are :

*Do* for the Present : as, " I do love, or I love."

*Did* for the Imperfect : as, " I did love, or I loved."

*Have* for the Perfect : as, " I have loved."

*Had* for the Pluperfect : as, " I had loved."

*Shall or will* for the First Future : as, " I will love."

*Shall or will have* for the Second or Future Perfect : as, " I will have loved."

The Auxiliary Verbs used as signs of the Potential Mood, are : may, can, might, could, would, should and must.

The Imperative has the Auxiliary *let*, and sometimes *do*. *Let* is used only in first and third persons, and properly speaking the Imperative Mood has only the second person. But such expressions, as, " Let me love, let us love," are idiomatic forms of the English Imperative, and therefore should be shewn in the conjugation of a verb. Some late writers that reject *let* in the Imperative are therefore certainly wrong, and do not exhibit all the varieties of an English Verb. The first person singular of the Indicative Present, and the second person of the Imperative are the same in all verbs.

Some late Grammarians choose to conjugate the verb with *you* in place of *thou* in the singular ; and it may be so conjugated, remembering that *you* though used in the singular requires a plural verb. As we have given the plural conjugation with *you*, it therefore seems unnecessary to conjugate the verb twice in the same words, and we shall therefore not give any specimen of such conjugation again.

Certain late Grammarians by using *you* in both singular and plural, and not using *ye* or *thou*, appear as if they wished to explode these two Pronouns from the English Language ; but this surely cannot be done, since they have been so well established by all writers. *Thou* is not used indeed in common con-

variation ; nor is *ye* much in use, except on religious subjects, where however it is abundantly used in such expressions as, "Ye men of Galilee," &c. *Ye* seems even at present however preferred to *you* after the Verb in the Imperative Mood : as, "Awake ye, arise ye," &c.

There is one particular Sect that always prefer *thou* to *you*, that is the sect of Friends or Quakers. Some of them however, use it rather ungrammatically with a singular verb, and say, "Thou may go, if thou will go," &c. Others substitute the Objective *thee* for the Nominative, and say, "*Thee* does, *thee* thinks," &c.

There appears to be no objection to always using *thou* and not *you* ; but it ought to be used in accordance with the Rules of Grammar.

## SECONDARY CONJUGATION.

### OR OF VERBS USUALLY TERMED IRREGULAR.

In a different or Secondary Conjugation, may be arranged all such Verbs as do not form their Imperfect or Past Tenses or Past Participle in *ed*, but in another termination. They will be found to contain about four varieties.

#### VARIETY 'I.

Comprehends certain Verbs that have their Imperfect Tenses mostly different from their Perfect ; and their Perfect Tenses and Past Participle the same ; which end in *n*, *en* or *ne*, and some in *m* or *me*. The Imperfect Tense has *o*, *oo*, *a* or *i*, before the last consonant, and some verbs in this tense end in *w* ; those that have a diphthong in the Present generally lose a letter in the Perfect Tense and Past Participle, and form them from the Imperfect ; whereas the others usually form them from the Present by adding *n*, *en* or *ne*. Some end in *n*, *m* or *me*, in all the Tenses and Past Participle ; and a few follow no certain rule.

List of Verbs that have *o* before the last consonant of the Imperfect :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Arise,	arose,	arisen.
Rise,	rose,	risen.
Beget,	begot,	begotten.*
Forget,	forgot,	forgotten.*
Get,	got,	gotten.*
Ride,	rode,	ridden.*
Stride,	strode,	stridden.*
Drive,	drove,	driven.
Rive,	rove,	riven. F.
Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Strive,	strove,	striven. F.
Thrive,	throve,	thriven. F.
Write.	wrote,	written.
Underwrite,	underwrote,	underwritten.
Smite,	smote or smit,	smitten.
Shine,	shone,	shone.
Go,	go or went,	gone.
Undergo,	{ <i>undergo</i> or <i>un-</i> <i>derwent</i> , }	undergone.

Verbs which have *oo* before the last consonant of the Imperfect.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Take,	took,	taken.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.
Mistake,	mistook,	mistaken.
Partake,	partook,	partaken.
Undertake,	undertook,	undertaken.
Overtake,	overtook,	overtaken.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.
Unshake,	unshook,	unshaken,

Verbs having the diphthongs *ea*, *ee*, and *oo*, in the Present, form their Perfect and Past Participles from the Imperfect; which has *o* before the last consonant.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Bear, <i>to bring</i> <i>forth</i> ,	{ bore or bare,	born.
Bear, <i>to carry</i> .		borne.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Forbear,	forbore,	forborn.
Tear,	tore,	torn.
Swear,	swore or sware,	sworn.
Forswear,	forswore,	forsworn.
Wear,	wore,	worn.
Break,	broke or brake,	broken.
Speak,	spoke or spake,	spoken.
Heave,	hove,	hoven. F.
Weave,	wove,	woven.
Interweave,	interwove,	interwoven.
Cleave, <i>to split</i> ,	clove or cleft,	cloven or cleft.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.
Tread,	trode,	trodden.
Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Choose or chuse,	chose,	chosen.
Seethe,	sod,	sodden.

Verbs that have *a* before the last consonant of the Imperfect.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Bake,	bake,	baken. F.
Beat,	beat,	beaten. *
Bid,	bade,	bidden. *
Forbid,	forbade,	forbidden.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.
Give,	gave,	given.
Engrave,	engrave,	engraven. F.
Shave,	shave,	shaven. F.
Grave,	grave,	graven. F.
Lade,	lade,	laden. F.
Load,	load,	loaden or laden. F.
Lie. <i>to lie down</i> ,	lay,	lain.
Shape,	shape,	shapen. F.
Spit,	spat,	spitten. *
Wax,	wax,	waxen. F.

Verbs that have *i* before the last consonant of the Imperfect.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Bite,	bit,	bitten.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Chide,	chid or chode,	chidden.
Hide,	hid,	hidden.
Unhide,	unhid,	unhidden.
Slide,	slid,	slidden. F.
Do,	did,	done.
Misdo,	misdid,	misdone.
Undo,	undid,	undone.

Verbs which end in *w* in the Imperfect.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Blow,	blew,	blown.
Crow,	crew,	— F.
Grow,	grew,	grown.
Know,	knew,	known.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.
Withdraw,	withdrew,	withdrawn.
Hew,	hew, F.	hewn. F.
Mow,	mow, F.	mown. F.
Show or shew,	show or shew. F.	shown or shewn.
Strow or strew,	strow or strew, F.	strawn or strewn.
Sow,	sow, F.	sown. F.
Fly,	flew,	flown.
Slay,	slew,	slain.
See,	saw,	seen.
Foresee,	foresaw,	foreseen.
Saw,	saw, F.	sawn. F.

Verbs which end in *n*, *m*, or *me*, in all the Tenses and Past Participle.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perf. &amp; Past Part.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.
Spin,	span,	spun.
Run,	ran,	run.
Win,	won,	won.
Swim,	swam,	swum,
Come,	came,	come.
Become,	became,	become.

Verbs that follow no certain Rule of Variety I.

Present.	Imperfect.	Perf. & Past Part.
Be, or am,	was and were,	been.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.
Befall,	befell,	befallen.
Swell,	swell. F.	swollen. F.

VARIETY II.

Comprehends all Verbs that form their Imperfect and Perfect Tenses and Past Participles in *t*. In some the *t* seems shortened from *ed*. In others *d* in the Present, is changed into *t* in the Past. Several have *gh* before the *t*, and many have the Present, Imperfect and Perfect Tenses, and Past Participle the same. Many that have a diphthong in the Present, lose a letter in the other Tenses and Past Participle.

Verbs which seem formed by changing *ed* into *t*.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Burn,	burnt. F.	Lose,	lost.
Learn,	learnt.	Pass,	past. F.
Dwell,	dwelt.	Toss,	tost. F.
Spell,	spelt. F.	Pen, (to coop	} pent.
Dream,	dreamt. F.	up,)	
Spill,	spilt. F.	Light,	lit. F.
Mean,	meant.		

Verbs which end in *d* in the Present, and in *t* in the other Tenses, and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Bend,	bent. F.	Spend,	spent.
Unbend,	unbent. F.	Build,	built. F.
Blend,	blent,	Gild,	gilt. F.
Lend,	lent,	Gird,	girt. F.
Send,	sent.	Geld,	gelt. F.
Rend,	rent.		

Verbs that have a diphthong in the Present, lose a letter in the other Tenses and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Bereave,	berest. F.	Sweat,	swet or swat
Leave,	left.	Meet,	met.
Creep,	crept. F.	Feel,	felt.
Keep,	kept.	Kneel,	knelt. F.
Sleep,	slept.	Deal,	*dealt. F.
Sweep,	swept. F.	Shoot,	shot.
Weep,	wept. F.		

Verbs which have *gh* before the *t* in the Imperfect, Perfect, and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Beseech,	besought. F.	Fight,	fought.
Bring,	brought.	Catch,	caught. F.
Seek,	sought.	Teach,	taught.
Work,	wrought. F.		

Verbs ending in *t*, which have the Present and all other Tenses, and the Past Participle the same.

Burst.	slit.	hit.	shut.
Cast.	let.	knit. F.	wet. F.
Cost.	set.	split.	
Thrust.	beset.	quit. F.	
Hurt.	cut.	put.	

### VARIETY III.

Comprehends such Verbs as end their Past Participle in *g* and *k*. They have generally *i* in the Present, and *u* in the other Tenses and Past Participle. Such as have an *n* (except hang, swing, and wring,) may form their Imperfect with *a*, as well as *u*, as sank or sunk, but not the Perfect or Past Participle.

---

\* Deal though it does not lose the *a* in spelling, yet is pronounced in the Past Tenses, and Past Participle, as if spelled *deit*.

Verbs with *g*.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Cling,	clung.	Spring,	sprung.
Fling,	flung.	Sting,	stung.
Hing or } hang, }	hung. <i>f</i> .	String,	stiung. <i>f</i> .
Ring,	rung.	Swing,	swung.
Sing,	sung.	Wring,	wrung.
		Dig,	dug. <i>f</i> .

Verbs with *k*.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Drink,	*drank.	Stink,	stunk.
Sink,	sunk.	Stick,	stuck.
Slink,	slunk.	Strike,	struck.
Shrink,	shrunk.	Awake,	awoke. <i>f</i> .

VARIETY IV.

Comprehends all such Verbs as form their Imperfect and Perfect Tenses, and Past Participle, in *d* with any other letter before it than *e*. They end in *ad, ade, id, ld, nd, od, ode, rd*. Such as end in *y* in the Present change it to *i* before *d* in the other Tenses and Past Participle. Such as have *ind* in the Present, have *ound* in the rest. Such as have *old* in the Present, have *eld* in the rest. Such as have *and* in the Present have *ood* in the rest. Such as have *ell* in the Present, have *old* in the rest. A few follow no certain rule. And a few are the same in all the Tenses and Past Participle.

Verbs which end in *y* in the Present, change it into *i* in the rest of the Tenses and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Lay,	laid.	Repay,	repaid.
Inlay,	inlaid.	Say,	said.
Belay,	belaid.	Unsay,	unsaid.
Underlay,	underlaid.	Stay,	staid.
Pay,	paid.	Unstay,	unstaid.

\* The Imperfect of drink is only formed with *a* and not *u*.



Verbs which have *ind* in the Present, have *ound* in the other Tenses and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Bind,	bound.	Unbind,	unbound.
Find,	found.	Unwind,	unwound.
Grind,	ground.	Ungrind,	unground.
Wind,	wound.		

Verbs which have *old* in the Present, have *eld* in the other Tenses and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Hold,	held.	Uphold,	upheld.
Behold,	beheld.	Withhold,	withheld.

Verbs which have *and* in the Present, have *ood* in the rest of the Tenses and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Stand,	stood.	Understand,	understood.
Misunder-stand,	misunderstood.	Withstand,	withstood.

Verbs which have *ell* in the Present, have *old* in the other Tenses and Past Participle.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Sell,	sold.	Undersell,	undersold.
Tell,	told.	Unsell,	unsold.
Resell,	resold.	Untell,	untold.

Verbs which follow no certain rule of variety IV.

Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.	Present.	Imp. Perf. and Past Part.
Clothe,	clad.	Shoe,	shod.
Make,	made.	Hear,	heard.
Abide,	abode.	Unhear,	unheard.
Have,	had.		

Read, spread, and rid, are the same in all the Tenses and Past Participle ; but read and spread, though spelled the same, are Pronounced as if spelled *red*, *spred*, in the Past Tenses and Past Participle.

Verbs of the Secondary Conjugation may be conjugated much the same as the first ; but the Tenses of the Imperfect often differ from the Perfect Participle : as, Present, " I know ;" Imperfect, " I knew, or did know." Present, " I drive ;" Imperfect, " I drove, or did drive." Present, " I sing ;" Imperfect, " I sung or sang, or did sing." Perfect, " I have known ;" " I have driven ;" " I have sung."

The Passive voice is made as in the first conjugation, by the Verb *to be*, with the Past Participle: as, " I am known, I am driven, I am hurt, I am taught."

Many Verbs whose Perfect, Imperfect, and Past Tenses, and Past Participle are the same : as, shed, knit, rid, &c. seem incapable of being formed so as to make a proper distinction between the Present and the Imperfect Tenses, except by the auxiliary *did* : as, Present, " I knit ;" Imperfect " I did knit."

The Active Verb may be conjugated differently from the forms above shewn, by adding its Present or Active Participle to the Auxiliary *to be*, through all its Moods and Tenses : as instead of " I teach, thou teachest, he teaches," &c. ; we may say, " I am teaching, thou art teaching, he is teaching," &c. and on through all the variations of the Auxiliary. These forms of expression are adapted to particular acts, not to general habits or affections of the mind. They are frequently applied to Neuter Verbs : as, " I am musing, he is sleeping." This form of the verb is on many occasions better than the simple form, but some verbs will not admit of it, as we can

say, " I respect him ;" but not, " I am respecting him."

The Neuter Verb is conjugated like the Active, but as it partakes somewhat of the nature of the Passive, it admits in many instances of the Passive form, retaining still the Neuter signification : as, " I am arrived ;" " I was gone ;" " I am grown." The Auxiliary Verb *am, was*, in this case, precisely defines the time of the action or event, but does not change the nature of it. The Passive form still expressing, not properly a passion, but only a state or condition of being.

In the foregoing list of Verbs we have not inserted all those that have been contracted from *ed* into *t* though often used, not only in familiar discourse, but even in Printing, as *blest, drest, address, prest, dropt, tript, mixt, &c.* Those we have inserted, as *spelt, spilt, burnt, past, tost, &c.* being in general use, and to be found in Dictionaries, could not with propriety be omitted. Some that Murray seemed to think rather obsolete are placed in the list however, as *ridden, gotten, spitten, slank, stank, &c.* as notwithstanding what he has said, they are used by many ; for besides being in the Bible and Shakespeare's works, books which are in daily use, they are inserted in some of the latest Dictionaries ; yet we have omitted such words as are quite obsolete, as *wreathen, holpen, molten, holden, drunken, gat, &c.*

#### OF REDUNDANT VERBS.

Redundant Verbs are such as have terminations both of the First and Secondary Conjugation, which many verbs have : as *dealed, dealt ; digged, dug ; sawed, sawn, &c.* Those of the Secondary Conjugation that are so, are marked with *r.* for first conjugation. In some Verbs the Imperfect is sometimes

used for the Perfect, such have the mark \* put to them.

In the foregoing list of Verbs of the Secondary Conjugation, the Imperfect is mostly different from the Present ; but when it is the same as the Present and is made the Imperfect by *did*, it is inserted in *Italics* : as, "*now, did now, mown* ;" and the letter *E*, is also put after such to shew it is redundant and has the Participle in *ed*. This seems more proper, than always inserting only the Imperfect in *ed*, as both words are shewn. Murray and others have sometimes been led into a gross omission, by only inserting the Imperfect in *ed*; as in the Verb *clothe*, where the Imperfect *clad* is omitted though much used.

### OF DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are such as are only used in some of the Moods and Tenses, or admit but of few terminations.

*Aware* and *wont* are used after the verb *to be* : as, " I am aware of this," " He was wont to do so."

*Beware* is chiefly used in the Imperative and Potential Moods.

*Durst*,\* is only used in the Present.

*Quoth* is only used in the Imperfect Tense.

*Went*,† is used but in the Imperfect, and admits only of the termination of the second person.

Those Auxiliaries, which are used in the conditional tenses ; and have no Perfect Tense or Past Participle ; and admit but of the termination of the

\* *Durst* has been classed as the Imperfect of *dare*, but that it is not, is apparent : as, " I did dare, or dared to go to the battle ;" implies having been there, but, " I durst go to the battle ;" implies only courage to go but not having been there.

† *Went* has been usually classed as the Imperfect of *go*, but it is a different verb, which is evident from Shakespeare's using the present *wend*.

second person : are *can, may, might, could, would, should, will and shall.*

*Must* which has no respect (properly speaking) to time, though it is commonly used in the Present ; this verb is used as an Auxiliary in the Potential Mood.

*Ought* which has also properly speaking no respect to time, and has only the termination of the second person; this verb implies duty, and is always followed by an Infinitive.

Aware, wont, durst, beware, quoth, and must, admit no addition of a termination.

In most languages, there are some verbs which are defective with respect to persons. These are denominated *Impersonal Verbs*. They are used only in the third person, because they refer to a subject peculiarly appropriated to that person : as, "It rains, it snows, it hails, it lightens, it thunders." Many other verbs are also used impersonally : as, "It appears, it follows," actively, and "it is reported, it is rumoured," passively. *Methinks*, and *methought*, also appear to be *Impersonal Verbs* — Though the word *Impersonal*, implies a total absence of a person, a thing, which it may be said, cannot be, and therefore this *term* is improper : yet as the act they speak of, is not implied to be done by a person, but by some unknown power, (as when it rains, is supposed to be done by the Elements), it does not appear to be so very improper.

#### EXERCISES ON VERBS.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Indicative Mood, Present and Imperfect or Past Tenses: gain, read, beat, eat, interpose, walk, slit, rid, slide, drew, bring, lose, pay, ring.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Potential

Mood, Imperfect Tense : fear, hope, work, dream, fly, consent, impose, contravert, weep.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood, Perfect Tense : drive, prepare, storm, omit, remit, carry, bind, echo, hinder, visit.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Imperative Mood : believe, depart, invent, give, sing, abolish, dig, sink, kill, wind.

Write the following Verbs in the Infinitive Mood, Present and Perfect Tenses : grow, have, bring, prosper, decrease, agree, make, take, furnish, sit.

Write the Present, Perfect or Past, and compound Participles of the following Verbs : confess, drive, disturb, please, know, begin, sit, eat, see, lie, put, decree, keep, bind, gird, lend, feel, arise, throw, dream, set, lay, shed, find, sell, feed, understand, drink, seek, lose, shake, fly, wring, catch, make.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Indicative Mood, Present and Perfect Tenses of the Passive voice : honor, amuse, slight, enlighten, gird, bereave, sell, toss, take, swell, burn, mean.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Indicative Mood, Pluperfect and First Future Tenses : contrive, fly, grow, wring, bring, forsake, lend, light, invent, beset, interweave.

Write the following Verbs in the Indicative Mood, Imperfect and Second Future Tenses of the Passive voice : slay, draw, crow, burst, throw, crown, defeat, grind, hear, strike, drink, bear, hit, hold, beat, fall, behold.

Write the following Verbs in the Present and Imperfect Tenses, of the Potential and Subjunctive Moods : know, shake, heat, weep, give, blow, run, bestow, beseech, swim, mistake, bind, send, be, behold, wet.

Write the following Verbs in the second and third person singular of all the Tenses in the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods : approve, condemn, mourn, freeze, know, arise, thrive, crow, forget, hew, leave, feel, breed, try, wash, buzz, impel, subdue, shed, tell.

Form the following Verbs in the Infinitive and Imperative Moods, with their Participles all in the Passive voice : embrace, draw, fill, defeat, smite, tear, win, become, betray, break, mislead.

### OF ADVERBS.

An Adverb is a part of speech joined to a Verb, an Adjective, and sometimes to another Adverb, to express some quality or circumstance respecting it : as, " He reads *well* ; " " A *truly* good man ; " " He *writes very correctly*."

To make the Learner understand the nature of Adverbs it will be proper to shew that they are not absolutely necessary, since an Adverb seems merely to express in one word, what perhaps would otherwise require several words, as in :

There,	in that place.
Whither,	to what place.
Speedily,	without delay.
Wisely,	in a wise manner.

Some Adverbs are compared like Adjectives.

The Adverbs, soon, often, seldom, and late, are compared by adding the terminations *er* and *est* : as, sooner, soonest ; oftener, oftenest, &c.

Many Adverbs cannot be compared ; all others that can (except often, &c.) must however not be done with *er* and *est*, but with *more* and *most* : as, " easily, *more* easily, *most* easily, (not easelier easeliest.)



The following may be termed Irregular, comparison :

Much,	more,	most.
Well,	better,	best.
Badly or ill,	worse,	worst.
Little wisely,	less wisely,	least wisely.

Many Adverbs are formed from Adjectives, or Participles, by adding *ly*, or changing *le* preceded by a consonant into *ly* : as, bad, badly ; cheerful, cheerfully ; vile, vilely ; feeling, feelingly ; admirable, admirably ; ample, amply ; gentle, gently ; single, singly ; undoubted, undoubtedly.

Adverbs though very numerous, may be reduced to certain classes, the chief of which are those of Number, Order, Place, Time, Quantity, Manner, or Quality, Doubt, Affirmation, Negation, Interrogation, and Comparison.

1. Of *Number* : as, " Once, twice, thrice, four times," &c.

2. Of *Order* : as, " First, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, lastly, finally," &c.

3. Of *Place* : as, " Here, there, where, elsewhere, somewhere, everywhere, nowhere, herein, whither, hither, thither, upward, forward, whence, hence, thence, whencesoever, whithersoever, backward, thereabout, whereabout, wheresoever," &c.

4. Of *Time*, Indefinite, Present, Past, or to come : as, " Yet, now, to day, already, before, lately, since, yesterday, heretofore, hitherto, long since, to-morrow, not yet, hereafter, henceforward, henceforth, by and by, instantly, presently, immediately, straightway, oft, often, oftentimes, sometimes, soon, seldom, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, always, when, then, ever, never, again, whensoever, while, whilst, till, until, after, ere long, frequently, occasionally, rarely," &c.



5. Of *Quantity* : as, “ Much, little, greatly, sufficiently, scarcely, hardly, barely, merely, only, partly, nearly, mostly, completely, abundantly, how much, how great, enough, altogether, wholly, totally, exceedingly, excessively, perfectly,” &c.

6. Of *Manner or Quality* : as, “ Wisely, foolishly, justly, well, ill, badly, forcibly weakly, thus, so, somehow, otherwise, unjustly, quickly, slowly, ably, furiously, quietly, across, together, apart, asunder, namely, necessarily, particularly,” &c.

7. Of *Doubt* : as, “ Perhaps, peradventure, possibly, perchance, may be so,” &c.

8. Of *Affirmation* : as, “ Verily, truly, undoubtedly, doubtless, certainly, yea, yes, surely, indeed, really,” &c.

9. Of *Negation* : as, “ Nay, no, not, by no means, not at all, in no wise,” &c.

10. Of *Interrogation* : as, “ How, why, wherefore, whither, when, whence,” &c.

11. Of *Comparison* : as, “ More, most, better, best, worse, worst, less, least, very, almost, little, alike,” &c.

Many Adverbs are formed by a combination of some prepositions with the Adverbs of place, here, there and where : as, “ Thereof, whereof ; hereto, thereto, whereto ; hereby, thereby, whereby ; herewith, therewith, wherewith ; herein, therein, wherein ; wherefore, therefore, (that is wherefor, therefor;) hereon, hereupon ; thereon, thereupon ; whereon, whereupon,” &c.

Some Adverbs are composed of Nouns and the letter *a*, for at, on, &c. : as, “ A side, a foot, a head, a sleep, a bed, afloat, a shore, a back,” &c.

The words *when, where, whence, whither, whenever, wherever*, &c. may be called *Adverbial Con-*

*junctions*, because they participate of the nature, both of Adverbs and Conjunctions ; as they conjoin sentences, they are Conjunctions ; as they denote *time or place*, they are Adverbs.

The word *therefore*, is an Adverb, when without joining sentences, it only gives the sense of, "*for that reason.*" When it gives that sense, and also connects, it is a Conjunction : as, "He is good, *therefore* he is happy." The same observation may be extended to the words *consequently*, *accordingly*, and the like, when these are subjoined to *and* or joined to *if*, *since*, &c. they are Adverbs, the connexion being made without their help : when they appear single, and unsupported by any other connection, they may be called Conjunctions.

Many words are used sometimes as Adjectives and sometimes as Adverbs : as, *more* in these sentences, "*More men than women were there ;*" "*I am more diligent than he.*" In the former sentence it is an Adjective, in the latter an Adverb.

Other words are sometimes used as Substantives, and sometimes as Adverbs : as, "To day's lesson is longer than yesterday's ;" here *to day* and *yesterday* are Substantives, and admit of a Possessive case : but in the phrase, "He came home *yesterday*, and sets out *to day*," they are Adverbs of time. The Adverb *much* is used as all three : as, "Where *much* is given, *much* is required ;" "*Much* money has been expended ;" "It is *much* better to go than to stay." In the first of these sentences *much* is a Substantive ; in the second, it is an Adjective ; and in the third an Adverb.

Prepositions sometimes become Adverbs, as when we say, "He rides *about*," "He was *near* falling."

There are many sentences in English, that may be termed adverbial phrases, as they are in fact an Adverb, in several words ; such are, *long since*,

*none at all, at length, by no means, by all means, a great deal, a great many, ere long, a few days ago, &c.*

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions serve to connect words with one another, and to shew the relation between them.— They are, for the most part put before Nouns and Pronouns : as, “ He went *from* London *to* York ;” “ She is *above* disguise ;” “ They are instructed *by* him.”

The following are the principle Prepositions:

Of,	over,	among,	down,	except.
To,	under,	beside,	before,	athwart.
For,	through,	till,	behind,	towards.
By,	throughout,	until,	off,	instead of.
With,	above,	mixt,	on or upon,	according
In,	below,	since,	amongst,	to.
Out,	between,	from,	after,	out of.
Into,	betwixt,	at,	about,	
Within,	beneath,	near,	against,	
Without,	beyond,	up,	underneath,	

Several words ending in *ing* : as, concerning, excepting, respecting, regarding, &c.

Prepositions in their original acceptation, seem to have denoted relations to place, but they are now used *figuratively* to express other relations. For example, from the phrase, “ As they who are *above*, have in several respects the advantage of such as are *below*.” Prepositions expressing high and low places, are used for superiority and inferiority in general : as, “ He is *above* disguise ;” “ He rules *over* a willing people ;” “ We should do nothing *beneath* our character.”

The importance of Prepositions, will be perceived by the explanation of some of them.

*Of* denotes possession or belonging ; as, " The house *of* my friend ;" that is " The house belonging to my friend ;" " He died *of* a fever ;" that is " In consequence of a fever."

*To* or *unto* is opposite to *from* : as, " He rode *from* Salisbury *to* London, and *from* London *to* Bath."

*For*, indicates the cause or motive of any action or circumstance, &c. as, " He loves her *for* (that is on account of) her amiable qualities."

*By* is generally used with reference to the cause, agent, means, &c. ; as, " He was killed *by* a fall;" that is, " A fall was the cause of his being killed." " This house was built *by* him ;" that is, " He was the builder of it."

*With* denotes the act of accompanying, uniting, &c. as, " We will go *with* you ;" " They are on good terms *with* each other." *With* also alludes to the instrument or means ; as, " He was cut *with* a knife."

*In*, relates to time, place, the state or manner of being or acting, &c. as, " He was born *in* (that is during) the year 1835 ;" " He dwells *in* the city ;" " She lives *in* affluence ;" " He did it *in* revenge ;" " He is *in* love."

*Into* is used after verbs that imply motion of any kind : as, " He retired *into* the country ;" " Copper is converted *into* brass ;" " He pries *into* futurity."

*Within* relates to something comprehended in any place or time : as, " They are *within* the house;" " He finished his work *within* the limited time ;" " *Within* reach of his hand."

The signification of *without* is generally opposite to that of *within* : as, " She stands *without* the gate;" but it also signifies *want*, as, " He is *without*

wisdom." It is also opposed to *with* : as, " You may go *with* me, or *without* me."

The import of the remaining Prepositions will be understood, without a particular detail of them ; especially, as we shall in the Syntax, point out many errors, in using one for another.

Participles are frequently used as Prepositions: as, excepting, respecting, touching, concerning, according, " They were all in fault, *except* or *excepting* him."

Some of the Prepositions, appear to be Conjunctions, from their situation in a sentence ; as, " *After* their prisons were thrown open," &c. " *Before* I die ;" " They made haste to be prepared *against* their friends arrived." But if the *noun time* which is understood, be added, they will lose their Conjunctive form : as, " *After* (the time when) their prisons were thrown open," &c.

The Prepositions *after*, *above*, *beneath*, and several others, sometimes appear to be Adverbs : as, " They had their reward soon *after* ;" " He died not long *before* ;" " He dwells *above*." But if the Nouns *time* and *place* be added, they will lose their adverbial form : as, " He died not long *before that time*."

Verbs are often compounded of a Verb and a Preposition ; as, to uphold, to invest, to overlook ; and this composition sometimes gives a new sense to the Verb ; as, to understand, to withdraw, to forgive. But the Prepositions is also frequently placed separately after the Verb, in which situation, it also affects the sense, and gives it a new meaning : as, *to cast*, is *to throw* ; but *to cast up*, or compute an account, is a different thing. Thus, " *To follow*, *to bear out*, *to give over* ;" so that the meaning of the Verb depends on the Preposition subjoined.

In the composition of some words, there are

certain Initial Syllables employed, which Grammarians have called Inseparable Prepositions : as, *be, con, mis, dis, pro*, as in *conjoin, mistake, disgrace, procreate, &c.* but which Murray has denied to be Prepositions, although so many have been of an opposite opinion. Whether they be Prepositions or not, as they evidently alter or fix the meaning of the words they are prefixed to, they deserve attention as to their formation, &c.

### OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction is a part of speech that is chiefly used to connect sentences ; so as out of two or more sentences, to make but one. It sometimes connects only words. Conjunctions are principally divided into two sorts, the Copulative and the Disjunctive.

The Conjunction Copulative, seems to connect or to continue a sentence, by expressing an addition, a supposition, a cause, &c. as, " He *and* his brother reside in London ;" " I will go, *if* he will accompany me ;" " You are happy, *because* you are good."

The Conjunction Disjunctive, serves, not only to connect words and continue other sentences, but also to express opposition of meaning in different degrees : as, " *Though* he was frequently reprov'd, yet he did not reform ;" " They came with her, *but* they went away without her."

The following is a list of the principal Conjunctions.

The Copulative—And, if, that, both, then, since, for, because, too, also, therefore, wherefore.

The Disjunctive—But, or, nor, as, than, lest, though, yet, although, unless, either, neither, notwithstanding, so, provided, as well as, except, whether.

Conjunctions, have also been divided by Grammarians, into the conditional : as, *If*, provided, unless, if but. The Causal : as, for, that, since, because, therefore. The Adversative and Exceptive : as, *But*, yet, if not, notwithstanding, except. The Concessive : as, *Though*, although, then, if so, so then, so as. The Comparative, such as, *Than*, so, as. for instance. And the Distributive, or such as are used in pairs : as, *Nor* and *neither*, *as* and *as*, *as* and *so*, &c.

The same word, is occasionally used both as a Conjunction and as an Adverb ; and sometimes as a Preposition, " *I rest then* upon this argument ;" *then* is here a Conjunction ; in the following phrase it is an Adverb : " *He arrived then* and not before." " *I submitted, for* it was vain to resist ;" in this sentence, *for* is a Conjunction, in the next, it is a Proposition : " *He contended for* victory only." In the first of the following sentences, *since* is a Conjunction ; in the second it is a Proposition ; and in the third an Adverb : " *Since* we must part let us do it peaceable ;" " *I have not seen him since* that time ;" " *Our friendship commenced long since.*"

*But*, though generally a Conjunction, when it has the sense of *only*, appears to be an Adverb : as, " *Doing this is but* our duty," " *is only* our duty." Some writers have thought that *but* is sometimes a Proposition, as in this sentence : " *All but* he, were there ;" and that it has the sense of except. However, it seems to have the sense of *only* in such sentences, rather than except : " *All only* he were there."

*Either* is a Conjunction when it is coupled with *or*, " *Either* you *or* I must go ;" but *either* is a Distributive Pronoun when one of two things are mentioned : as, " *You may take either* of these."

*Both* is a Conjunction when followed by *and* : as, " *He aided him both* for his and her sake." *Both* is an Adjective Pronoun, when it means two in number : as, " *Both* these men will be punished."

*Yet* is a Conjunction when it follows *though* : as, " *Though* he slay me *yet* will I love him ;" in the other cases it seems to be an Adverb, as in this sentence : " *I have yet* to learn that science."

Relative Pronouns, as well as Conjunctions, serve to connect sentences : as, " *Blessed* is the



man, *who* feareth the Lord, *and* keepeth his commandments."

A Relative Pronoun, possesses the force both of a Pronoun and a Connective. A Conjunction may form two or more sentences into one ; but by the Relative, several sentences may incorporate into one and the same *clause* of a sentence : thus, "Thou seest a man *and* he is called Peter ;" is a sentence consisting of two distinct *clauses*, united by the Copulative *and* : but, "The man *whom* thou seest is called Peter," is a sentence of only one *clause*, and not less comprehensive than the others.

Conjunctions often unite sentences, when they appear to unite only words ; as in the following instances : "Duty and interest forbid vicious indulgences ;" "Wisdom or folly governs us." Each of these forms of expression contains two sentences ; namely, "Duty forbids vicious indulgences : Interest forbids vicious indulgences ;" "Wisdom governs us : or Folly governs us."

Though the Conjunction is commonly used to connect sentences, yet on some occasions, it merely connects words, not sentences : as, "The King and Queen are an amiable pair ;" where the affirmation cannot refer to each ; it being absurd to say, that the *King* or the *Queen only* is an amiable pair. So in the instances, "Two and two are four ;" "The fifth *and* sixth volumes complete the set of books." Prepositions also as before observed, connect words, but they do it to shew the relation, which the connected words have to each other. Conjunctions when they unite words only, are designed to shew the relation, which those words, so united, have to other parts of the sentence.

As there are many Conjunctions and connecting phrases, appropriated to the coupling of *entire* sentences, that are never employed in joining the *parts* or *members* of a sentence ; so there are several Con-



junctions appropriated to the latter use, which are never employed in the former ; and some that are adapted to both these purposes : as, *again, further, besides*, &c. of the first kind ; *than, lest, unless, that, so that*, &c. of the second ; and, *but, and, for, therefore*, &c. of the last.

Relatives are not so needful in language as Conjunctions.

Relatives comprehend the meaning of a Pronoun and Conjunctions *Copulative* : Conjunctions while they *couple* sentences, may also express opposition, inference, and many other relations and dependences.

#### OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are words thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express the passions or emotions of the speaker : as, “ Oh ! I have alienated my friend ; ” “ Alas ! I fear for life ; ” “ O virtue ! how amiable thou art ! ”

Interjections are of different sorts according to the different passions they serve to express.

Of Grief : as, Ah ! O ! oh ! alas ! welladay ! heigh ho ! woes me !

Of Contempt or Aversion : as, Pish ! tush ! fch ! fie ! sirrah ! pshaw ! fudge !

Of Calling : as, Hilloa ! sohc ! ho ! hark ! hei ! halt ! what !

Of requesting Silence : as, Hush ! hist ! whist ! mum !

Of Salutation : as, Hail ! all hail ! welcome !

Of Laughter : as, Ha ! ha ! ha ! he !

Of ordering away : as, A vaunt ! begone ! away !

Of Joy or Rejoicing : as, Huzza ! hurra !  
welldone !

Of Doubt or Hesitation : as, Hem ! ha !

Of Wonder : as, Hey or heigh ! hah hah !  
strange ! hey day !

Of Parting : as, Adieu ! farewell !

Of Looking : as, Lo ! behold ! see !

### EXERCISES ON ADVERBS.

POINT OUT THE ADVERBS IN THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES.

I will go immediately. He behaves quietly. He was here once or perhaps twice. I will not only go there but elsewhere also. Thirdly, and lastly, I shall now conclude. Only to day is properly ours. He speaks very well. She dresses very finely. The task is already done. We cannot serve you now but may hereafter. We often resolve, yet seldom perform. When will you act wisely. Where shall we stop. He has certainly been busily employed and will possibly succeed. We sail fast towards land, and will soon arrive, and get safely anchored. How sweetly and enchantly, the little birds sing to day. It is alike to me, whether you stay here or get away. You lean forward too hastily, and may fall down low. Formerly he was idly inclined, but latterly he is diligently employed. Both mentally and bodily, we are curiously and wonderfully formed. Why do you not come oftener, how seldom you come. We must all die sooner or later.

### EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS.

They travel through France in haste towards Italy. She is fallen from virtue to vice. By care we may arrive at competency. We are often below our wishes and above our desires. Some things

make for him, some against him. I am again plunged into difficulties. Without the aid of charity I supports himself by some work. On all occasions speak truth. Of his abilities we cannot say much. He came here with us, but went off without us. This is a path between two little hills. I live in London. She came down stairs and went up again.

#### EXERCISES ON CONJUNCTIONS.

His father and mother and uncle reside at London. We must be temperate if we would be healthy. I am as old as you, but not so old as he. Charles is esteemed because he is discreet and good. Though he is often advised, yet he does not reform. I retire to rest soon, that I may rise early. Reproof either softens or hardens its object. Neither poverty nor adversity improves him. Let him that stands, take heed lest he fall. Notwithstanding his poverty, yet he is a worthy man. So much was he beloved, that even his enemies wept at his death. Wisdom is better than riches, for riches fly away.

#### EXERCISES ON INTERJECTIONS.

O ! the cares of mankind. Oh ! I am wounded. Ah ! me I am greatly deceived, Woes me ! I am ruined. Hark ! how the cannon's roar at the sea fight. Huzza ! the victory is ours. Lo ! that vile serpent, Ho ! every one that thirsts. Pshaw ! you are always wrong. I must bid you farewell. Adieu ! for one year at least.

#### EXERCISES,

*On the Noun Adjective and Active Verb.*

Perseverance, surmounts every difficulty.  
Anxiety brings grey hairs in youth.  
Affluence is apt to create pride.

- Reason should govern us, not fancy.  
 Benevolence ennobles every virtue.  
 Prosperity with humility, renders its possessors truly amiable.  
 Meekness subdues the wrath of Kings.  
 Gentleness gains more battles than strength.  
 Knowledge forms the gate to intellectual pleasure.  
 Disappointment often follows presumption.  
 Disobedience to the orders of our superiors, generally ends in disgrace and punishment.  
 Knowledge and good nature, make old age pleasant.  
 Dissimulation degrades every other qualification.  
 Indolence undermines virtue.  
 Discretion and prudence generally go together.

EXERCISES,

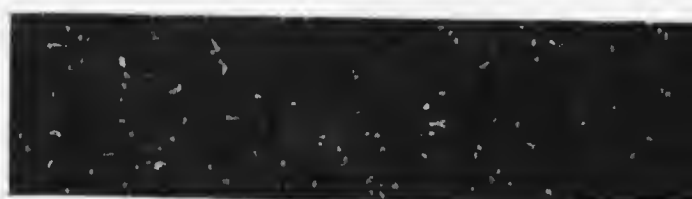
*On Adjectives, with the Verb TO BE.*

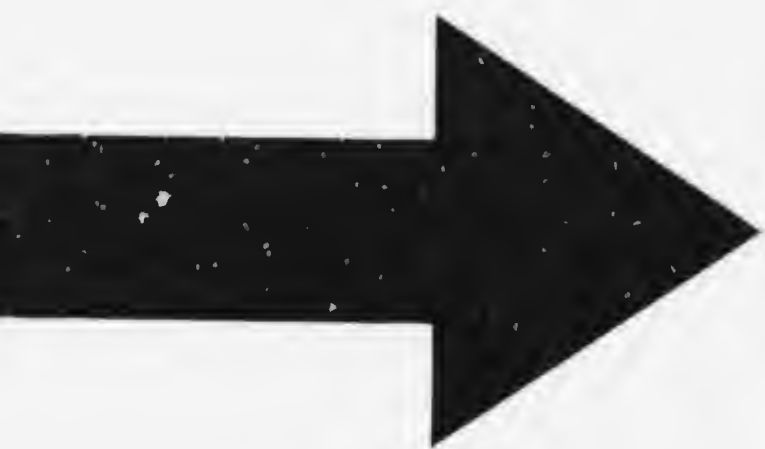
- Gentleness is productive of love and quiet.  
 Virtue is preferable to riches and knowledge.  
 I am much afraid of being betrayed.  
 It is not possible to be incessant in study.

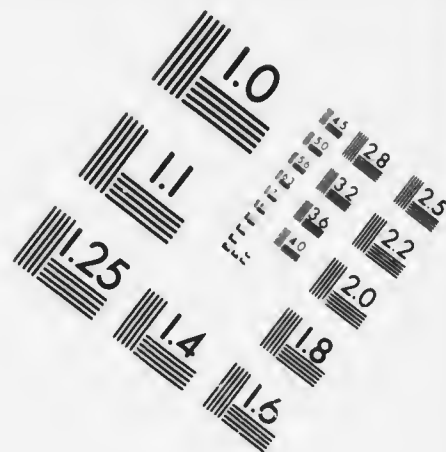
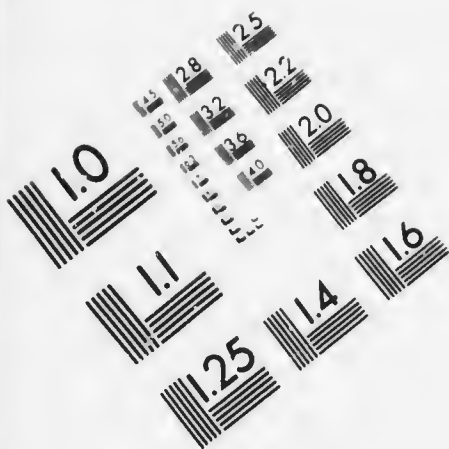
EXERCISES,

*On Adjectives resembling the Past Participle, so much, that they are sometimes mistaken for a Passive Verb*

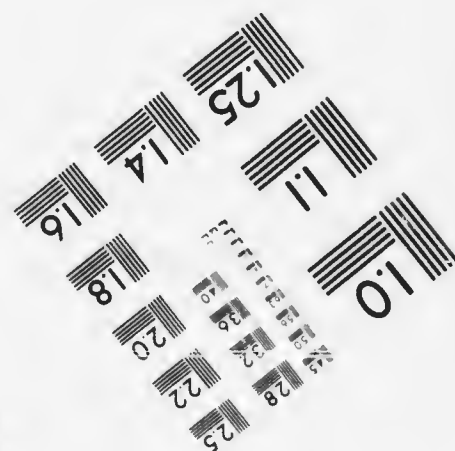
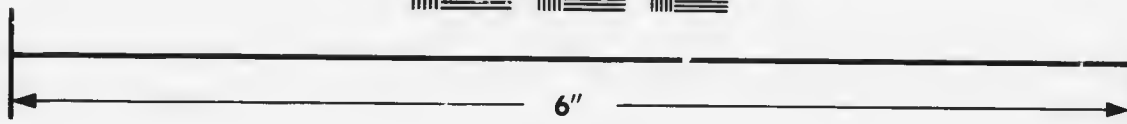
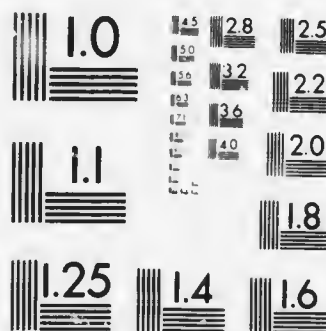
- He is a very learned man.  
 Blessed is the man, who walketh not astray.  
 His principles are of the most exalted kind.  
 They were quite disconcerted at this turn of fortune.  
 He is a weak conceited mortal.







# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

8  
25  
22





They may be much ashamed of their bad conduct.

Infatuated and superstitious, he became ridiculously devout.

His mind is pure and untainted by guilt.

When the conduct is so well regulated, the mind is always serene.

He is a most disinterested noble person.

He always maintains a dignified character.

This is quite a controverted doctrine.

He is a superannuated soldier.

Let us avoid the detested sight of this person.

Good men are called with propriety the chosen vessels of Deity.

#### EXERCISES,

*On the Imperfect Participle : 1st. used as a Verb ; 2nd. used as a Substantive ; 3rd. used as an Adjective.*

1st. He is now learning Grammar.

We are now studying Virgil.

While I am reading you should be writing.

You ought not to be idling away your time, but minding to learn your lessons properly.

While I am speaking you should be attending to what I say.

He was honest, and incapable of destroying or betraying his master.

Be particular in correcting the error.

2d. This is a fine piece of writing.

Learning is better than riches.

In the beginning God made the world.

Jacob inherited the blessing.

Understanding is the daughter of wisdom.

The governing of our passions should be our chief cares.

The calumniating of our neighbours is a great crime.

3d. This is a fine winding river and has a flowing tide.

He has often a cheering and pleasing address.

The opening buds and the blooming flowers smell sweet.

There is now a charming prospect for the labouring husbandman.

### EXERCISES ON NEUTER VERBS.

Economy and diligence are worthy of praise.

Virtue is better than riches.

You travel fast.

It is better to live on a little than outlive a great deal.

Virtuous persons can only be real friends.

Flee from vice as from a serpent.

To despair from earthly trouble is worse than madness.

Whether we walk sit or stand, our thoughts should actively be employed.

We must not rely on promises always.

The ship is at last arrived, she was long in coming.

It thunders now, we will, hurry home.

Friendship cannot exist, but where virtue is.

No advantage arises from being idle.

You are fallen from that height of virtue, you were at one time possessed of.

She smiles or laughs mildly, and dances gracefully.

The man that swells in prosperity, will shrink in adversity.

#### EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VERB.

Virtue is accompanied with inward peace.

Many are brought to ruin by extravagance.

Great difficulties may be overcome by diligence.

Virtue is connected with honor and renown.

Eternal happiness, is surely reserved for the virtuous.

The greatest monuments of arts, are destroyed by time.

Virtue and true Religion cannot be separated.

All our conduct ought to be regulated by virtue.

The Mind should be carefully purified from error.

Virtuous courses should always be chosen in preference to others.

True happiness is only to be found in the paths of virtue.

#### EXERCISES ON VERBS IN THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Abstain from the appearance of evil.

Remember your own errors, but forget those of others.

Fear God. Honor the King.

Dishonor not your profession of virtue.

Deal honestly with all men.

Reject pride and practise humility.

Cherish virtuous principles.

Be steady in virtuous pursuits.

Contemn praise or flattery.

Allow no vicious indulgence.

Beware of ill habits.

Go learn of the ant to be industrious.

Despair not in adversity.

Hear what I say.

Mark well my words.

Do you now be wise.

Bid him get his task better.

Let him read. Let me write.

Let us go away. Let them pass.

EXERCISES ON BE, DO, &c.

*The Verbs BE, DO, DID, HAVE, and WILL, are sometimes Auxiliary Verbs. 1st. Auxiliary Verbs when joined to another Verb. 2nd. Principal Verbs.*

When we have done our work, we should be paid for it.

If he does not act wisely, he will suffer for it.

He who does not perform what he promises, deserves punishment

The Butler did not remember Joseph.

Do you intend to walk or ride.

We do not intend to go at all.

I do not believe you will act so badly.

Did she tell you this ? she did say so indeed.

*Principal.*

There is no flesh meat for us, but we have bread.

Industry is the hand of wealth, but Idleness is the index of poverty.

If they do these things now, what would they do if they had full power.

Did you do the work, you agreed to do:

You have not Prudence, or you would not do so.

These Soldiers have neither arms nor ammunition.

I see you are one of those, who have no will to falsify an engagement.

Be kind to those who are kind to you.

He wills it to be so.

He said "I will be thou clean."

We shall have enough.

#### EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE WHAT.

*What generally means, that which, sometimes comprehends two Nominatives, two Objectives, or an Objective and Nominative. It may often be considered as an Adjective, or Adjective Pronoun, and sometimes an Adverb.\**

Remember what you are rather than what you may be.

Do not put off to another day, what may be done now.

Consider what you have gained, and not what you have lost.

What cannot be cured should be patiently endured.

I wish to know what he means, rather than what he pretends.

By what means shall a young man purify his way.

What dignity in her port; what grace in her air!

In missing this dangerous station, I may say, by what I lost, I have in reality gained.

---

\* What, is an Adverb in "What with policy, what by force," being the same as "Partly with policy, partly by force."

In what way he will act I know not.

What with policy and what by force, he accomplished his design.

EXERCISES,

*On the words compounded with who and what.—*

1st. *Whoso, whoever, whosoever, have the same meaning, and mean he who. 2nd. Whatever and whatsoever have the same meaning as that which, and like what includes two cases, and may be often considered as Adjectives.*

Whoever wishes to do well, should live well.

Whosoever is disinterested in one station, is generally so in another.

Whatever is worth doing at all, is worth doing well.

Whatever be the affront you receive, it is always best not to revenge it in any case whatever.

Learn wisdom by whatever arts you honestly can.

Eat whatsoever is set before you, asking no questions.

EXERCISES ON THE NOMINATIVE, &c.

*The Nominative though generally placed before the Verb, yet is sometimes placed after it. When an Adverb as here, there, &c. and a Conjunction (if, lest, &c.) is understood or expressed.*

In the number of blessings bestowed on mortals, may be classed, patience and perseverance.

Among all the evils that humble man, may be reckoned, despair and disobedience as the worst.

Here was the clangor of arms, here were the groans of the dying.

And there sat in the window a young man named Eutychus.

Thus shall the coming of the son of man be.  
 Then shall be remembered thy great fault.  
 There were at this time here, many Jews.  
 Then shall break forth thy light as the morning.  
 Are not industry and virtue the keys of wealth  
 and happiness.

*The Nominative is sometimes at a considerable distance  
 from the Verb.*

The person who is neither elated by prosperity,  
 nor dejected by adversity, who will not deviate from  
 the paths of truth and honesty, by any temptation,  
 however fascinating in appearance, possesses a truly  
 excellent energy of soul.

The man whose constant employment like that  
 of the great Howard, is to alleviate the sufferings of  
 those around him, rectify their mistakes; and lead  
 them into the paths of prosperity, virtue and happi-  
 ness, should be loved, admired and praised by all  
 who know him.

He who thro' vast immensity can pierce,  
 See worlds on worlds compose one universe ;  
 Observe how system into system runs,  
 What other planets circle other suns ;  
 What varied Being, peoples every star,  
 May tell why Heaven, has made us as we are.  
Pope.

*The Relative is often the Nominative to a Verb ; when  
 not close to it, it is either the Objective or Possessive.*

Who that has virtue would sell it for money:

True Charity is not a meteor which occasionally  
 gleams, but a luminary which is orderly and regular.

There are many men who cannot read, and yet  
 have considerable knowledge of the world.

Euclio loves Clarissa, whom Clarissa also loves,

but whose father hates, and who therefore will not allow him to marry her.

The best flavored fruit we commonly find that, which the birds have picked.

Blessed is the man who acts uprightly, he shall flourish like a tree, which is planted by a river, and whose leaves are always green.

*The Infinitive Mood or part of a sentence, is often the Nominative to a Verb, as being equivalent to a Noun.*

To see the sun is pleasant.

To live virtuously is honorable.

To prevent disease is often easier than to cure it.

To be ashamed of the practice of religious duty speaks a feeble mind.

1st. *The Objective is often placed before the Verb as well as after it ; and if a Relative generally precedes it.* 2nd. *If a Verb has two Objectives after it, one a person and the other a thing, a Preposition governs the person, and the Verb the thing.* 3rd. *The Infinitive Mood or part of a sentence is often the Objective to a Verb.*

Him you have delivered to be crucified.

Them that honor me, I will honour.

Me ye have put in prison unjustly.

Him whom ye ignorantly worship, I declare unto you.

Those whom I hate, I will punish.

Me he restored to my office, but him he hanged.

2nd. I gave him a gold watch in a present.

Bring me that Book

I will sell thee my sword.

Send him for my desk.



Write him on this subject.

Tell me all the truth.

Fetch us a light.

O Charles lend me this money.

3rd. To have conquered himself, he esteemed the highest pleasure.

To be disappointed so much all at once, is the greatest of misfortunes.

The rolls of Fame I will not now explore.

#### EXERCISES IN SUPPLYING WORDS.

*A Noun is often understood and not expressed after Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns, as all, many, few, these, those, &c.*

It behoves all to be virtuous.

Judge not the many by the rascal few.

Many walk in the broad way of sin, but few in the narrow path of virtue.

Those who are truly great, should also be truly good.

Each should mind the affairs of his own office.

Such as are bad shall be punished.

Such as those are not good.

Some are good, some are bad.

I have seen several but none that pleases me.

If you had a million, they would not do.

The rich, the poor, the base, the brave, are alike laid in the grave.

*The Verbs to be, and to have, are often understood with a Relative, or Personal Pronoun or Adverb.\**

Embrace the Doctrines that are contained in the Scriptures, as the real truths of the Deity.

---

\* It is sometimes difficult to supply the proper part of the Verb *to be*. A Personal Pronoun, Relative or Adverb, is of-

The Precepts taught by Religion should be particularly observed.

The benefits conferred on us by Providence, require our gratitude.

Deprived of all succour, it was no wonder he succumbed under such pressure.

Knowledge when associated with prudence, and manners refined, will always be esteemed and admired.

I perceive him now much affected with the disease.

Economy when wisely conducted is an excellent virtue.

We see mankind placed on the stage of the universe, wherein they have not the power of selecting the part acted.

I think him leader of a faction.

We thought them the authors of this mischief.

We find man here in a state of misery and sin.

They lost their parents when only a year old.

Do not allow dissimulation a place in your heart.

*The Auxiliaries, may, might, could, would, and should, are supplied.*

Now live and be happy.

Let us entreat the King that he spare our lives.

So strict were they, he might not laugh nor sing.

Though he run ever so fast, I will overtake him.

---

ten understood before it : thus in this passage, " Embrace the doctrines contained in the Scriptures ;" *which* are must be supplied before contained. A Relative is generally understood before the Perfect Participle : in the passage " Knowledge softened by good breeding will make a person loved and admired ;" the Adverb *when* is understood as also (*it is*) before *softened*. In the sentences, " Do not allow dissimulation a place in your heart ;" *to have* is understood before *place*.

*Supply words after than, as, and but.*

Is he not younger than I am.

I am not so fair as she.

Thou art not a better man than he.

He reads as well as I.

We came home sooner than they.

I admire you as much as her.

There was no person there but she.

I could get it from no person but her.

*The Objective after a Preposition is often understood when a Relative.*

The more riches some men have, the more they desire.

It is difficult to love those we cannot reverence

Men are sometimes ruined by the very means, they strove to avoid such ruin.

It is impossible to esteem those we hate.

The more virtue a man has, the more he values it in others.

Our good Fortune, sometimes depends on the choice we make of our company.

*The Antecedent is often improperly omitted and must be supplied.*

Who steals my purse steals trash.

Who robs me of my honest name, makes me poor indeed.

All interested now receive notice.

There have been, who have freed their country from Tyrants, purely from love of it.

For if there be first a willing mind, it is accepted according to that a man hath ; and not according to that he hath not.

EXERCISES IN

*Instances of the same word's constituting several of the Parts of Speech.*

Calm and peaceful was the sky.

We may expect a calm after a storm.

It is easier to prevent passion than to calm it.

A little is better with content, than a great deal with anxiety.

The gay and dissolute think little of the miseries which are stealing after them.

A little attention will rectify some errors.

Though he is out of danger, he is still afraid.

He laboured to still the tumult.

Still waters are commonly deepest.

Damp air is unwholesome.

Guilt often casts a damp over our mirth.

Soft bodies damp the sound more than hard ones.

Though she is rich and fair, yet she is not amiable.

Many men, many minds.

They are yet young and must suspend their judgment yet awhile.

The few and the many have their prepossessions.

Few days pass without some clouds.

Much money is corrupting.

Think much, and speak little.

He has seen much of the world, and been much caressed.

His years are more than hers, but he has not more knowledge.

The more we are blessed the more grateful we should be.

The desire of getting more is rarely satisfied.

He has equal knowledge, but inferior judgment.

She is his inferior in sense but his equal in prudence.

Make a like space between the lines.

Behave yourselves like men.

- Every thing loves its like.  
 We are too apt to like as  
 caprice dictates.  
 To his wisdom, we owe  
 our privilege.  
 They strive to learn.  
 He goes to and fro.  
 He served them with his  
 utmost ability.  
 When we do our utmost,  
 no more is required.  
 I will submit, for submis-  
 sion brings peace.  
 It is for our health to be  
 temperate.  
 O ! for better times.  
 I have a regard for him.  
 Both of them deserve  
 praise.  
 He is esteemed both on  
 his account, and on  
 that of his parents.  
 Since I must go, let me go.  
 He has not been here  
 since yesterday.  
 It is long since this hap-  
 pened.  
 He stood before the win-  
 dow.  
 Before the world was he  
 existed.  
 Either of the two will do.  
 Either James or John  
 will go.  
 Neither of these will do.  
 Neither Tom nor Mary  
 shall have it  
 The years that are fled  
 were happy ones.
- That is not the one I  
 want.  
 He said that he was un-  
 happy.  
 Grant me this one favour.  
 The King did favour him  
 with a grant of land.  
 Save him quickly from  
 drowning.  
 They were all there *save*  
 she.  
 He went to Court on pur-  
 pose to court the favour  
 of the great.  
 Great damage was done  
 by the storm.  
 He was in a passion and  
 did storm because they  
 did damage his goods.  
 He is a grave serious  
 man.  
 Death and the grave are  
 never satisfied.  
 Let us not disturb his  
 soft repose.  
 You may repose on that  
 bed.  
 Judge not too rashly.  
 The Judge charged the  
 Jury.  
 He came back here.  
 A rod for the fool's back.  
 Thy will be done.  
 I will be thou clean.  
 I will not do it.  
 He had no lack of any  
 thing ; he did not lack  
 money ; for the Nabob  
 gave him a lack of ru-  
 pees

## OF DERIVATION.

Having treated of the different sorts of words and their various modification, which is the first part of Etymology ; it is now proper to explain the methods by which one word is derived from another.

Words are derived from one another in various ways, viz.

Substantives are derived from Verbs.

Verbs are derived from Substantives, Adjectives, and sometimes from Adverbs.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives and Verbs.

Substantives are derived from Adjectives.

Substantives are derived from Substantives.

Adverbs are derived from Adjectives.

Substantives are derived from Verbs : as from "to love," comes "lover ;" from "to visit," "visitor ;" from "to survive," "survivor ;" &c.

In the following instances and in many others, it is difficult to determine, whether the Verb was deduced from the Noun, or the Noun from the Verb, viz : Love, to love ; hate, to hate ; fear, to fear ; sleep, to sleep ; walk, to walk ; ride, to ride ; act, to act ; &c.

Verbs are derived from Substantives, Adjectives, and sometimes even from Adverbs : as from the Substantive "salt," comes "to salt ;" from the Adjective "warm," "to warm ;" and from the Adverb "forward," "to forward." Sometimes they are formed by lengthening the vowel or softening the consonant : as from "grass," "to graze ;" sometimes by adding *en*, as from "length," "to lengthen ;" especially to Adjectives : as from "short," "to shorten ;" "bright," "to brighten."

Adjectives are derived from Substantives in the following manner : Adjectives denoting plenty, are derived from Substantives by adding *y* : as from "Health, healthy ; wealth, wealthy ; might, mighty," &c.

Adjectives denoting the matter out of which any thing is made, are derived from Substantives by adding *en* : as from "oak, oaken ; wood, wooden ; wool, woolen," &c.

Adjectives denoting abundance, are derived from Substantives by adding *ful* : as from "Joy, joyful ; sin, sinful ; fruit, fruitful," &c.

Adjectives denoting plenty, but with some kind of diminution, are derived from Substantives by adding *some* : as from "Light, lightsome ; trouble, troublesome ; toil, toilsome," &c.

Adjectives denoting want, are derived from Substantives by adding *less* : as from "Worth, worthless ; care, careless ; joy, joyless," &c.

Adjectives denoting likeness, are derived from Substantives by adding *ly* : as from "Man, manly ; earth, earthly ; court, courtly," &c.

Some Adjectives are derived from other Adjectives or from Substantives, by adding *ish* to them, which termination when added to Adjectives imports diminution, or lessening the quality : as, "white, whitish," i. e. somewhat white ; when added to Substantives, it signifies similitude or tendency to character : as, "child, childish ; thief, thievish."

Many Adjectives are derived from Substantives by adding the terminations *able* or *ible*, *ic*, *al*, *ate*, *ous*, *ar* : as, "Answer, answerable ; poet, poetic ; pastor, pastoral ; fortune, fortunate ; vigor, vigorous ; angle, angular." These Adjectives denote qualities participating of the Substantives they are derived from.



Some Adjectives are derived from Verbs by adding the terminations *able* or *ible*, *ive*, *ant* or *ent* : as from, "to change, changeable ; vend, vendible ; possess, possessive ; excel, excellent."

Some Substantives are derived from Adjectives, by adding the terminations *ness*, *dom*, *ity*, *cy*, *hood*, *ship*, *ry*, *ard*, and *th* or *t* : as from, "white, **whiteness** ; free, freedom ; pure, purity ; excellent, **excellency** ; false, falsehood ; hard, hardship ; brave, bravery ; drunk, drunkard ; warm, warmth ; high, height."

Many Substantives are derived from other Substantives, by adding the terminations, *head*, *hood*, *dom*, *ship*, *wick*, *rick*, *ry*, *ian*, *ile*, *ist*, *ism*, *tude*, *cy*, *icle*, *ice* : as from, "God, **godhead** ; man, **manhood** ; king, **kingdom** ; friend, **friendship** ; bailiff, **bailiwick** ; bishop, **bishoprick** ; poet, **poetry** ; music, **musician** ; favor, **favorite** ; art, **artist** ; despot, **despotism** ; quiet, **quietude** ; bankrupt, **bankruptcy** ; ice, **icicle** ; note, **notice**."

Some Substantives are derived from Verbs, by adding the terminations, *ion*, *al*, *age*, *ment*, *ance* or *ence*, *er*, *or*, *tude*, *ation*, *ure* : as, "to possess, **possession** ; distract, **distract**ion ; remove, **removal** ; use, **usage** ; engage, **engagement** ; insure, **insurance** ; excel, **excellence** ; join, **joiner** ; act, **actor** ; serve, **servitude** ; reform, **reformation** ; fail, **failure**."

Substantives ending in *head* or *hood*, are such as signify character or qualities, as, "Godhead, manhood, knighthood, falsehood."

Substantives which end in *ery*, signify action or habit: as, "Slavery, foolery, prudery, bribery," &c.

Substantives ending in *wick*, *rick*, and *dom*, denote, dominion, jurisdiction or condition : as, "Bailiwick, bishoprick, kingdom, dukedom, freedom, wisdom," &c.



Substantives which end in *ian*, *er* or *ist*, are those that signify profession : as, " Physician, musician, magician, joiner, artist," &c.

Those that end in *ment* and *age*, come generally from the French, and commonly signify the act or habit : as, " Commandment, enchantment, usage, umpirage."

Substantives ending in *ard*, denote character or habit : as, " Drunk, drunkard ; dote, dotard."

Substantives ending in *ship*, are those that signify office, employment, state, or condition : as, " Lordship, stewardship, partnership," &c.

Substantives ending in *ion*, *ance*, *ity*, *al*, *ism*, are generally those of abstract quality : as, " destraction, reputation, perseverance, identity, renewal, deism," &c.

Some Substantives have the form of Diminutives, but these are not many. They are formed by adding the terminations, *kin*, *ling*, *ock*, *el* : as " Lamb, lambkin ; goose, gosling ; duck, duckling ; hill, hillock ; cock, cockerel."

Adverbs of quality, are derived from Adjectives by adding *ly* or changing *le* into *ly* ; and denote the same quality as the Adjectives from which they are derived : as from " base," comes " basely ;" from " slow, slowly ; able, ably."

It will be observed from many of the above examples, that several Substantives may be considered as derived from other Substantives, or from Adjectives, or Verbs, by adding the same termination: as, " favorite," which may be regarded as derived either from the Noun " favor," or Verb, " to favor."

It will also be observed, that the same terminations may be added to Nouns, Adjectives or Verbs: as, *dom* to the Verb " to free," or Adjective " free,"

to form "freedom;" or to the Noun "king," to form "kingdom."

It sometimes also happens, that two or three terminations can be added to the same word, and yet not alter the sense; thus to *false* may be joined *ness*, *hood*, or *ity*, and the sense remains the same: as, "falseness, falsehood, falsity."

There are so many ways of deriving words from one another, that it would be difficult to enumerate them all. The Primitive words of any language are few; the Derivative form much the greatest number.

## S Y N T A X.



**THE THIRD PART** of **GRAMMAR** is **SYNTAX**, which treats of the agreement and construction of words in a sentence.

A sentence is an assemblage of words forming a complete sense.

Sentences are of two kinds, **SIMPLE** and **COMPOUND**.

A Simple Sentence has in it but one subject, and one finite Verb : \* as, "Life is short."

A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences connected together : as, "Life is short, and art is long ;" "Idleness produces want, vice and misery."

A Phrase is two or more words rightly put together, making sometimes part of a sentence, and sometimes a whole sentence.

The principle part of a simple sentence are, the Subject, the Attribute, and the Object.

The Subject, is the thing chiefly spoken of ; the Attribute, is the thing or action affirmed, or denied of it ; and the Object, is the thing affected by such action.

The Nominative denotes the subject, and usually goes before the Verb or Attribute ; and the word or phrase, denoting the object, follows the Verb : as,

---

\* Finite Verbs are those to which Number and Person appertain. Verbs in the Infinitive Mood, have no respect to Number and Person.

"A wise man governs his passions." Here a *wise man*, is the subject ; *governs*, the attribute, or thing affirmed ; and *his passions*, the object.

There are three sorts of simple sentences : the *explicative* or explaining ; the *interrogative* or asking ; the *imperative* or commanding.

An explicative sentence is when a thing is said to be or not to be, to do or not to do, to suffer or not to suffer, in a direct manner : as, "I am ; thou wrotest ; thou art loved." If the sentence be negative, the Adverb *not* is placed after the Verb or Auxiliary : as, "I touched him not ;" or "I did not touch him."

In an Interrogative sentence, or when a question is asked, the Nominative case follows the principal Verb, or the auxiliary : as, "was it he?" "did Alexander conquer the Persians?"

In an Imperative sentence, or when a thing is commanded to be, to do, to suffer or not, the Nominative likewise follows the Verb or auxiliary : as, "Go thou traitor ;" unless the Verb *let* be used : as, "Let us begone."

Syntax principally consists of two parts, Concord and Government.

Concord is the agreement that one word has to another in Gender, Number, Case, or Person.

Government is that power, which one part of speech has over another, in directing its Mood, Tense, or Case ; as for example, in this phrase : "Go thou *with him* ;" *with* governs the Pronoun *he* in the Objective case, *him*.

To produce the agreement, and right dependence of words in a sentence, the following Rules of construction and observations, should be carefully studied.

## RULE I.

The Article *a* is put before a consonant : as, "a city ; a heathen ;" or words beginning with long *u*, *eu*, *ew* : as, "a union ; a eulogy ; a ewe." *An* is put before the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o* ; and *u* short, and an *h* mute : as, "An actor ; an event ; an isle ; an ounce ; an urn ; an hour."

Sometimes when two or more Nouns follow one another some of them require *a*, and some *an* ; in this case the article *a* or *an* is generally repeated : as, 'He bought a house, an orchard, and a horse, in one day.'

Some late writers seem to be of opinion that *an* and not *a* should be used before *h*, when the accent of a word is on the second syllable : as, 'An historical relation ; an heroic action.' But there seems to be no proper reason for this, and therefore it is to be rejected. And I believe the best writers, as Addison, Johnson, &c. never used it, therefore it seems to be a late innovation.

Many persons may think that this *rule* about the article, should not be placed in the Syntax ; but if it is considered how often it is violated, the propriety and importance of placing it here, will be easily perceived.

## EXERCISES OF BAD SYNTAX ON RULE I.

A idle boy.

An house.

A old horse.

An ewer of glass.

A elegy on the dead.

An eulogy on the dead.

An unison.

A unnatural union.

A uncle.

A aunt.

A infidel.

A owl.

A howling dog.

A humble man.

A hospital.

A herbalist.

He is just such an one.

He is an one eyed person.

An once famed general.

An historical relation.

An hysteric fit.

## RULE II.

The Indefinite article *a* or *an* agrees with Nouns in the singular number : as, "A good man ; a score ; a thousand."

The Indefinite article *the*, agrees with Nouns either singular or plural : as, "The garden ; the wise men."

The articles are not put before Nouns taken in an abstract sense : as, "Gold is corrupting ;" "Nothing is more certain than death."

The articles are not put before names of persons or places in the singular : as, "Cesar ; India ;" but in the plural *the* is put before *them* : as, "The twelve Cesars ; the Indies ;" as also before names of rivers, mountains, and ships : as, "The Thames ; the Juno ; the Alps."

*The* is also put before Adverbs as well as Nouns and Adjectives: as, "The more you run, the sooner you'll get there."

The above Rule is an outline of the use of the Articles, but is very far from giving a proper idea of their various uses ; we shall therefore endeavour to be more particular in explaining their application.

The Articles are generally placed before the Adjective or Substantive, but in some cases, they are put after it, though before the Adjective : as, 'King William *the* Fourth, chapter *the* third.' Generally the Article is placed before the Noun, though the Adjective is put after it : as, 'A man ignorant of grammar.' But in some cases, the Indefinite article is placed after the Adjective : as, 'Full *many* a flower is born to blush unseen ;' 'as great a man as Alexander.'

The Article *a* or *an*, seems originally to have signified *one*, as in the sentence, 'He sold apples at *a* dollar *a* bushel ;' i. e. 'he sold apples at *one* dollar for *one* bushel.' It appears however, it has also sometimes the sense of *every*, as in the sentence : 'He went twice a day ;' i. e. 'he went twice *every* day.'

There appears to be a sort of exception to the rule of the Indefinite article being joined only to singular Nouns, in the use of the Adjectives *few* and *many* : as in, 'A *few* men, a great *many* men.' But as these sentences mean a small or great number, collectively taken, they give the idea of a whole, i. e. unity ; and therefore *few* and *many* seem not to give a different conception from *score* or *thousand* ; and again in the phrase, '*many* a flower.' The article refers to a single flower, separately, and not collectively.

A nice distinction of the sense is sometimes made by the use or omission of the article ; as, if I say, ' He behaved with *a* little reverence,' my meaning is positive ; if I say, ' He behaved with little reverence,' my meaning is negative. And these two are by no means the same, or to be used in the same cases. By the former I rather praise a person ; by the latter I dispraise him. For the sake of this distinction, which is a very useful one, we may better bear the seeming impropriety of the article *a* before Nouns of number ; when I say, ' There were few men with him,' I speak diminutively and mean to represent them as inconsiderable : whereas, when I say, ' there were a few men with him,' I evidently intend to make the most of them.

It is of the nature of both articles to determine, or limit, to things spoken of. *A* determines it to be one single thing of the kind, leaving it still uncertain which : *the* determines which it is, or of many which they are.

The following passage will serve as an example of the different uses of *a* and *the*, and of the force of the Substantive, without any article : ' *Man* was made for society, and ought to extend his good will to all men : but *a man* will naturally entertain a more particular kindness for *the men* with whom he has the most frequent intercourse ; and enter into a still closer union with *the man* whose temper and disposition suit best with his own.'

In general it may be sufficient to prefix the article to the former of two words in the same construction ; (though the French never fail to repeat it in this case.) ' There were many hours, both of the night and day, which he could spend in solitary thought.' It might have been ' of *the* night, or of *the* day.' For the sake of emphasis, we often repeat the article in a series of epithets : as, ' He hoped that the title would secure him *an* ample and *an* independent authority.' But where there is no emphasis, in some particular cases, it seems proper to repeat the article : as in the sentence, ' Avoid such rude wrestling, *an* arm is easily broken, or eye lost ;' *an* should be repeated before eye. To avoid ambiguity it is sometimes necessary to repeat the article, as if we say, ' He is a better writer than orator ;' we compare different qualifications of the same person ; but when we say, ' He is a better writer than *an* orator ;' we refer to different men.

We sometimes like the French, repeat the same article, when the Adjective is put after the Substantive : as, ' With such a spacious title as that of blood, which with the multitude is always a claim *the* strongest, and *the* most easily comprehended.'



The articles should not be used before Nouns taken in an abstract or general sense. These Nouns are mostly virtues, vices, passions, qualifications, arts and sciences, metals, &c. This sentence is therefore improper: 'And I persecuted this heresy unto the death.' The apostle does not mean any particular sort of death, but death in general; the Indefinite article therefore is improperly used: it ought to be, 'unto death,' without any article. In the following sentence the Definite article is improperly omitted, 'When he the Spirit of Truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth;' that is according to this translation, 'into all truth whatsoever, into truth of all kinds;' very different from the meaning of the Evangelists, and from the original, 'Into all *the* truth;' that is 'into all Evangelical truth,' all truth necessary for you to know in a religious sense.

From the above it may be easily seen that it is not always easy to know whether an Abstract Noun should have or want the Article. For though they are generally omitted before these Nouns, yet in several instances they may require them. In such sentences as the following, the articles are properly omitted before the Nouns, truth and falsehood, 'She was void of truth, and deceived him by duplicity and falsehood.' But in such as these, 'Alexis could not find out *the* truth, but his jealousy was aroused by a falsehood she told him;' the articles are required.

Though the articles are not generally put before the Names of Metals, arts and sciences, yet they sometimes are: as in the phrases, 'The gold of Ophir; the Iron of Mount Ida; the Mathematics; the Algebra of Newton, differs from that of Euler.'

In familiar style we frequently omit the articles, which ought to be inserted in a grave style: as, 'At worst,' 'at the worst,' is better. 'Give me here John Baptist's head;' there would be more dignity in saying, 'John *the* Baptist's head.'

It is sometimes not very easy to determine whether *a* or *the* should be used. In this sentence, 'This day is salvation, come to this house, for as much as he also is *the* son of Abraham.' Murray says it ought to be 'a son of Abraham;' but if Christ was talking before of *the* sons of Abraham, and including Zaccheus in the number of such sons, *the* would be proper. 'Who breaks a butterfly upon *a* wheel?' it ought to be *the* wheel; because a reference is made to an instrument for the particular purpose of torturing criminals.

From the above it appears that Murray has not always cleared the path so as to make it easy to distinguish when to



use the article *a* or *the*. Indeed in some instances, he has rather blocked it up : as in the following sentence, 'The profligate man is seldom or never found to be *a* good husband, *a* good father, or *a* beneficent neighbour.' This indeed is good tame language, and might be used in familiar conversation ; but certainly wants the emphasis, which it would have by using *the* in place of *a*, and which a proper orator would certainly do, if speaking warmly on the subject. The emphatic use of the definite article *the*, though overlooked by Murray, seems to have been well known to our best writers, as in that passage of Shakespeare :

" *The* cloud cap'd towers, *the* gorgeous Palaces ;  
*The* solemn Temples. *You the* great globe itself ;  
 All shall dissolve."

Or that in Goldsmith :

" *The* sceptred King, *the* burthen'd slave,  
*The* humble and *the* haughty die ;  
*The* rich, *the* poor, *the* base, *the* brave,  
 In dust without distinction lie."

It is the emphatic use of the article *the* that makes it have a good effect in distinguishing a person by an epithet : as, 'In the history of Henry the Fourth, by Father Daniel, we are surprised at not finding him *the* great man ;' 'I own I am often surprised he should have treated so coldly a man so much *the* gentleman.' If we used *a* in place of *the* in the above sentences, and said, '*a* great man,' and '*a* gentleman ;' the language would be tame and flat.

Though the article *a* is not commonly prefixed to names of persons or places, yet in some instances it is ; as, 'He is *a* Howard of the Howard family ;' 'every man is not *a* Newton ;' 'we live in *an* Egypt of plenty.'

The definite article *the* is frequently applied to Adverbs, in the comparative and superlative degree : and its effect is to mark the degree the more strongly, and to define it the more precisely : as, '*The* more I examine it, *the* better I like it.'

This article is often elegantly put (after the manner of the French,) for the Pronoun Possessive : as, 'He looks him full in the face ;' that is, 'in *his* face.' 'In *his* presence they were to strike the forehead on the ground ;' that is, '*their* foreheads.'

It is not always easy to determine, whether *both* the articles should be used or *both* suppressed ; as in this sentence : '*A* purity of the mind, has such *an* influence over the conduct

as to form the material part of a character.' 'Purity of mind has such influence over conduct, as to form a material part of character.' It appears from the above sentence, that the suppression of all articles, often renders the composition the most elegant.

Though the definite article is used before the names of mountains, yet it is seldom put before the word, 'mount,' as 'Mount Sinai.' In the xiv. chapter of Revelation, the article is improperly used before 'mount;' 'I looked, and lo! a lamb stood on the Mount Sion.' When an epithet is used the article is put however before mount: as, 'The mount of transfiguration.'

When Titles are mentioned, no titles only, the articles should not be used: 'The King bestowed on him the title of an Earl;' 'He is styled a Viscount.' These sentences are improper, the article should be suppressed before Earl and Viscount.

## EXERCISES ON RULE II.

Love of the money is the root of many evils.

Hope is an anchor of the soul.

Virtues of the good, and vices of the bad, form great contrast.

He had consolations of religion to support him, in his troubles.

The miracles, nature and fate, are under Deity.

Astrology, or influence of stars, is obsolete science.

Under appearance of benevolence, they were covetous.

Juno and Minerva have sailed for India.

Loss of his beloved friend, or disappointments he met with, occasioned total derangement of mind.

London has a Thames, and Paris a Seine, both fine Rivers.

Italy and Sicilies are subject to the earthquake.

The King conferred on him a title of a Duke.

The highest title in this place, was that of the Governor.

Cromwell's title was that of a Lord Protector.

The fire, the water, the air, and the earth, are four elements of the Philosophers.

He wished to do something, though he knew not yet either end or means.

I would rather have an orange than apple.

There is a species of an animal called unicorn.

We must act our part with a constancy though reward be distant.

The virtues like his, are not easily acquired.

So bold a breach of order, called for little severity of punishment.

As his misfortunes were the fruits of his own obstinacy, a few persons pitied him.

A man is the noblest work of the creation.

Heathens have placed us again in this prison, under the trial of our virtue.

This complicated affair would require a more than an ordinary discernment to unriddle it.

True charity is not the meteor that occasionally glares ; but the luminary which regularly dispenses benign influence.

Carriages formerly used were clumsy.

His offering was but poor at best.

All will receive their doom at day of Judgment.

### RULE III.

A Verb must agree with its Nominative case, in number and person : as, " I learn ; thou art improved ; the birds sing."

The following are a few instances of the violation of this Rule : ' What signifies good opinions when our practice is bad ? ' ' what signify.' ' There's two or three of us who have seen the work ? ' ' there are.' ' We may suppose there was more impostors than one ? ' ' there were more.' ' I have considered what have been said on both sides ; ' ' what has been said.' ' Thou sees how little has been done ; ' ' thou seest.'

Every Verb except in the Infinitive Mood, or the Participle, ought to have a Nominative case either expressed or un-

derstood : as, 'Awake ; arise ;' that is 'Awake ye ; arise ye.'

A Nominative is called the subject of the verb.

We shall here add some examples of inaccuracy in the use of the Verb without its Nominative case : 'As it hath pleased him of his goodness to give you safe deliverance, and hath preserved you in the great danger ;' &c. The Verb 'hath preserved,' has no Nominative case, for it cannot be properly supplied by the preceding Noun *him*, which is in the Objective case. It ought to be, 'and as *he* hath preserved you ;' or rather, 'and to preserve you.' These we have extracted from a historian of undoubted credit, and are the same that were practised ; 'they are the same.'

Every Nominative case, except the case absolute, and when an address is made to a person, should belong to some Verb, either expressed or implied : as, 'Who wrote this book ? James ;' that is 'James wrote it.' 'To whom thus Adam ;' that is 'spoke.'

When the Nominative case has no personal tense of a Verb, but is put before a Participle, independently on the rest of the sentence, it is called the case absolute : as, 'Shame *being lost*, all virtue is lost ;' 'That *having been* discussed long ago, there is no occasion to resume it.'

As in English the case absolute is always the Nominative ; the following example is erroneous in making it the Objective : 'Solomon made as wise and true proverbs as any body has done since ; *him* only excepted, who was much greater and wiser than Solomon.' It should be *he* only excepted.

Some Verbs have apparently no Nominative case, such as 'Methinks,' 'methought,' 'as follows,' 'as appears.' These being impersonal verbs should be confined to the singular number and the Nominative case supplied : as, 'Methinks it was so ;' 'methought so then ;' i. e. 'it appeared to me it was so ;' 'it seemed to my mind to be so then.' 'As follows ;' 'as appears ;' 'The arguments advanced were *as follows* ;' 'The resolution were *as appears* incontrovertable ;' i. e. 'as it follows, as it appears.' If we give the sentence a different turn, and instead of *as*, say *such as*, the Verb is no longer impersonal, but properly agrees with the Nominative in the plural number : as, 'the arguments advanced were *such as* follow ;' for *such* being here an adjective, requires argument to be supplied after it, '*such* arguments *as* follow.'

The Nominative case is commonly placed before the Verb, but sometimes it is put after the Verb, if it is a simple tense,

and between the Auxiliary and the Verb or Participle, if a compound tense.

1st. When a question is asked, a command given, or a wish expressed : as, 'Confidest thou in me ?' 'read thou ;' 'mayst thou be happy ;' 'long live the King.'

2nd. When a supposition is made without the Conjunction *if* : as, 'Were it not for this ;' 'had I been there.'

3rd. When a Verb Neuter is used : as, 'On a sudden appeared the King.'

4th. When the Verb is preceded by the Adverbs, *here, there, then, thence, hence, thus, &c.* : as, 'Here am I ;' 'there was he slain ;' 'then cometh the end ;' 'thence ariseth his grief ;' 'hence proceeds his anger ;' 'thus was the affair settled.'

5th. When a sentence depends on *neither or nor*, so as to be supplied with another sentence : as, 'Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.'

6th. For the sake of emphasis, especially in Poetry, some words are placed before the Verb, which ought to come after it, if they were arranged in a natural order : as, 'Silver and gold have I none ;' 'Narrow is the way of life ;' 'Echo the mountains all around.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE III.

I loves science and learning.

You are ignorant and knowest nothing.

Thou does always something wrong.

Fifty pounds of wheat contains forty pounds of flour.

Great pains has been taken to reconcile parties.

Thou should love thy neighbour as thyself.

The number of Inhabitants in Great Britain exceed sixteen millions.

A mixture of wisdom and folly were in his conduct.

Has the goods been sold to the best advantage?

Not one of those whom thou sees clothed in purple are happy.

I am sorry to tell it, but there was more equivocators than one.

The mechanism of clocks and watches were unknown a few centuries ago.

A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye.

The renewal of hope give consolation.

He need not proceed in such haste.

In vain our flocks and fields increases our store

When an abundance make us wish for more.

So much both of ability and merit is seldom found united.

The sincere is always esteemed.

None but the brave deserves the fair.

The generous never recounts minutely the actions they have done.

The support of so many of his relations were a heavy tax upon his industry.

Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits delight some persons.

Reconciliation was offered on as moderate conditions as was consistent with propriety.

He dare not act contrary to instructions.

Him being killed, Probus was declared Emperor of the Romans.

Whose grey top shall tremble, him descending

#### RULE IV.

When a Verb comes between two Nouns either of which might be its Nominative, it should agree with that, which is properly the subject of it : as, "His meat *was* locusts and wild honey;" not "were locusts," &c.

The above sentence might also stand thus, 'Locusts and wild honey *were* his meat;' and such sentences as, 'A great cause of the low state of industry *were* the restraints put upon it;' would be as well '*was* the restraints,' &c. But in sentences such as 'The wages of sin *is* death;' to make it '*are* death,' would be improper.

Some writers have said, that it is only before and after the Verb *to be*, that a Verb can be situated as in the above rule ;

but it appears not to be correct, as in this sentence. 'In unity *consists* the welfare and peace of society;' though it is so situated, the Verb *to be* is not in it, and it might stand as well, 'The welfare and peace of society *consist* in unity.'

## EXERCISES ON RULE IV.

The wages of John are one guinea.	The whole sum were seventy-five pounds.
His Pavilion was dark waters and thick clouds.	The principal and interest was not one pound.
The crown of virtue are peace and honor.	In unity consists the welfare and peace of society.
Controversy were his chief enjoyment and occupation.	Constantinople was the point in which was concentrated the learning and science of the world.
In love and fidelity center the happiness of a married life.	

## RULE V.

The Infinite Mood or part of a sentence may be the Nominative to a Verb : as, "To be good is to be happy ;" "A desire to excel others in learning or virtue is commendable."

The Infinitive Mood has much of the nature of a Substantive expressing the action itself, which the verb signifies, as the Participle has the nature of an Adjective. Thus the Infinitive does the office of a Substantive in being the Nominative to the Verbs in the above examples ; and it sometimes also does the office of a Substantive in the Objective case : as, 'Children love to play,' is the same as 'Children love play ;' and in the following sentence the Infinitive also does the office of an Objective : 'For *to will* is present with me, but *to perform* that which is good I find not.'

The Infinitive Mood is sometimes placed independent of the rest of a sentence, and is then not a Nominative : as, 'To confess the truth, I was in fault.'

An Adjective as well as a Participle agrees with the Infinitive or part of a sentence as a Nominative : as in, 'To see



the sun is pleasant ; ' Bear not false witness, is binding on all men.' To see the sun agrees with *pleasant*, and bear not false witness, with *is binding*.

## EXERCISES ON RULE V.

To excel others often require great exertion.

Honor thy father and thy mother, are required of all men.

To do all men as we would they should do unto us, constitute the great principle of virtue

To live soberly, righteously, and piously, are required of every person.

That warm climates should accelerate the growth of the human body, and shorten its duration—is reasonable to believe.

To be of a pure and humble mind, to exercise benevolence, to cultivate piety, is the means of becoming peaceful and happy.

## RULE VI.

Two or more Nouns joined by a Copulative Conjunction, expressed or understood, must have Verbs and Pronouns agreeing with them in the plural : as, " Socrates and Plato *were* ancient philosophers, *they* *were* wise men ; " " The sun in the sky, the food we eat, the rest we enjoy, *admonish* us of a superintending Power."

This Rule is often violated, as in the following instances, ' And so was also James and John the sons of Zebedee ; ' and so were also. ' All joy, tranquillity and peace forever doth dwell ; ' dwell, and not ' doth dwell. ' The thoughtless and intemperate enjoyment of pleasure, and the forgetfulness of being accountable creatures, obliterates serious thoughts, and effaces the sense of religion and God ; ' should be ' obliterate, ' and ' efface. '

When the Nouns are nearly related in sense, some authors have thought it allowable to put the Verbs, Nouns and Pronouns in the singular number : as, ' Tranquillity and peace dwells there ; ' ' The discomfiture and slaughter was great. '



But it is evidently contrary to the first principles of Grammar to consider two distinct ideas as one, however nice may be their shades of difference, and if there be no difference, one of them must be superfluous and ought to be rejected.

To support the above construction it is said, that the Verb may be understood as applied to each of the preceding terms as in, 'Sand and a mass of iron is easier to bear, than a man without understanding.' But besides the confusion and the latitude of application which such a construction would introduce it appears to be more proper and analogical in cases where the Verb is intended to be applied to any one of the terms, to make use of the disjunctive conjunction, which grammatically refers the Verb to one or other of the preceding terms in a separate view. To preserve the distinctive uses of the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, would render the rules precise, consistent, and intelligible. Dr. Blair, justly observes, 'Two or more Substantives joined by a Copulative, must *always* require the Verb or Pronoun to which they refer, to be placed in the plural number.'

In many complex sentences, it is difficult for learners to determine whether one or more of the clauses are to be considered as the Nominative case; and consequently whether the Verb should be singular or plural. We shall therefore set down a number of varied examples of this nature, which may serve as some government to the scholar with respect to sentences of a similar construction: 'Not only his estate, his reputation too *has* suffered by his misconduct.' 'He cannot be justified; for it is true that the prince, as well as the people *was* blame worthy.' 'In the mutual influence of body and soul there is a wisdom which we cannot fathom.' 'Virtue, honor, nay even self interest, *conspire* to recommend the measure.' 'Nothing *delights* me so much as the works of nature.'

When *with* follows a Noun, it is considered by many of our best writers, as equivalent to a Copulative Conjunction. Of this opinion appears to be Hume, Priestley, &c. Murray, and many others are of a contrary opinion; as a controversy has arisen, which seems at present unsettled, I shall briefly state the reasons each side adopts. 'The King *with* the Lords and Commons *form* an excellent frame of Government;' Hume. 'The side A, *with* the sides B and C, complete the triangle;' Priestley. 'Prosperity *with* humility, *renders* its possessor truly amiable.' Murray says, 'the words, 'the King,' 'the side A,' and 'prosperity,' are the true Nominatives to the respective Verbs; that the Preposition *with* governs the *Objective* in English; and if translated into Latin would govern the Ablative and it is manifest the clauses following *with* in the preceding sentences, cannot form any part of the

Nominative case.' To this it is replied, 'that wherever the Noun or Pronouns after *with* acts *jointly* with the singular Nominative before it, the Verb should be plural: If it is true, as Murray says, that 'the side A,' in the second example is the *true* Nominative to the Verb, then it follows of course that the two sides B and C, have no agency or no share in forming the triangle, and consequently that the side A *alone* composes the triangle. It is obvious however that *one* side cannot form a triangle or three sided figure, and that the sides B and C, are as much concerned in forming the triangle as the side A, and therefore the Verb should be plural. In the third sentence above, it is not asserted that prosperity *alone* renders its possessor truly amiable, but prosperity and humility *united* and co-operating to produce an effect in their joint state, which they were incapable of achieving in their *individual* capacity.'

When the Noun after *with* is a mere involuntary instrument; the Verb should be singular: as, 'The Squire with his hounds *kills* a fox;' here the Verb is *singular*, because the hounds are mere instruments in the Squire's hands, as the *gun* and *pen* in the hands of He and She in the following sentences: 'He with his gun *shoots* a hare.' 'She with her pen *writes* a letter.'

Some late writers have asserted (and put it in their Rules) that *and* alone, couples Nouns, as Nominatives to Verbs; but this appears not to be correct, *also*, *as also*, *too*, &c. having this effect as well as *and*: as in the following examples, 'It is said Alexander, as also Alexis *were* among the number lost in this ship.' 'He loved religious poetry; Herbert as well as Milton, as also Watts *were* his favorite authors.' It appears then that Murray was right in using the words 'Copulative Conjunctions,' join Nouns, rather than *and*.

When a Copulative Conjunction connects two or more Nouns referring to one thing, the Verb must be singular; as also when *every* is used: as, 'That superficial scholar and critic, has furnished proofs that he knows not the Hebrew letters;' 'Every man and woman *was* numbered; not *were*.'

If the singular Nouns and Pronouns which are joined together by a Copulative Conjunction, be of several persons, in making the plural Pronouns agree with them in person, the second person takes place of the third, and the first of both: as, 'James, and thou, and I, *are* attached to our country;' 'Thou and He divided it between *you*.'

#### EXERCISES ON RULE VI.

Charles and James writes Food, clothing and credit correctly. is the reward of industry

King James IV, and most of his nobility was killed at Flowdenfield.

Time and tide waits for no man.

In harmony and unity consists the welfare and security of society.

His politeness and good disposition charms every one.

Diligence and activity is the road to riches.

What signifies the counsel and care of preceptors, when youth think they have no need of assistance.

Luxurious living and high pleasures begets languor and satiety.

One and nineteen makes twenty.

What black despair! what horror fills his mind!

This treatise, as also the other which accompany it, was written ten years ago.

A great statesman and patriot live in that house.

Every tree, branch and root, were burnt up.

Wisdom, virtue, and happiness, dwells with the golden mediocrity.

Out of the same mouth proceeds blessing and cursing.

He and me is to do this piece of work.

## RULE VII.

Two or more singular Nouns, separated by a Disjunctive Conjunction, require a Verb or Pronoun in the singular: as, "John, James or Joseph *intends* to accompany me;" "There *is* in many minds neither knowledge nor understanding."

The following sentences are variations from this rule: 'A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a description;' read *it*. 'It must be confessed that a lampoon or a satire do not carry in them robbery, or murder;' *does* not carry in *it*. 'Death or some worse misfortune soon divide them;' it ought to be '*divides*.'

Two or more distinct phrases, connected by a Disjunctive Conjunction require a singular verb: as, 'That an idle person should be poor, or a beau ignorant is not wonderful.'

Some late writers have asserted, (and also put in their rules,) that *or* and *nor* alone separate Nouns and are applicable to this rule, and of course Murray's saying, 'Disjunctive Conjunctions,' generally, have this effect is erroneous. But if properly investigated it will be found, we believe, that they are wrong and not Murray. First *neither* has this effect as in this sentence: 'Not Cesar, neither Alexander, could have conquered this Hero.' *But* has this effect: as, 'Not education *but* nature makes a Poet.' That *but* has this effect is plain, for if we say, 'Not education nor any thing but nature makes a Poet;' it is the same as the above sentence. *As well* as, has also the effect: thus if we say, 'James as well as John intends to go,' the Verb is in the same tense, as to say, 'James or John intends,' &c.

## EXERCISES ON RULE VII.

Neither Charles nor Peter know, what his business is.

Man's happiness or misery are in a great measure put into his own hands.

Despise no infirmity of mind or body, nor any condition of life, for perhaps they are to be your own lot.

It was not money and honor, but revenge, were the cause of his killing this man.

When sickness, infirmity, or reverse of fortune affect us, the sincerity of friendship is proved.

Neither him, nor you were there.

He does not love you; George as well as you and I are hated.

A tart reply, a proneness to rebuke, or a captious and contradictory spirit, are capable of embittering domestic life, and of setting friends at variance.

## RULE VIII.

When different persons of Nominatives are separated by a Disjunctive Conjunction, the Verb must agree with the person next it: as, "Neither John nor I am accused;" "He or they have done it."

In the above Rule, though the Verb is only expressed to the last person, and not to the others, yet it is understood to

each of the others in its proper person, and the ellipsis may be thus supplied : ' Neither John is accused, nor I *am* accused ;' ' He *has done* it ;' ' They *have* done it.' Supplying the ellipsis would prevent ambiguity and render the sentences correct and would be understood better. But as the English Language seems often to delight in brevity, supplying words in such a manner, (as in many other ellipses,) would be esteemed too stiff and formal. Some have avoided both forms of expression, to render the sentences more elegant ; but in many instances this cannot be done. Many Grammarians confine this rule to *singular Nouns*, but it is as applicable to plural as to singular.

### EXERCISES ON RULE VIII.

Either thou or Joseph art mistaken.	Both thou and we art blamed for this base action.
Charles or I is now sure of this prize.	Thou or he or I is blamed as the doer of this deed.
Neither her nor thou understands this business properly.	They or we is named as the authors of this news.
Neither thou nor he understandest this science.	It could not be P��ter, but thou who toldest the lies.
I or thou is the person, must go there.	

### RULE IX.

A singular and a plural Nominative of the same person, separated by a Disjunctive Conjunction, require a plural Verb and the plural Nominative placed next it : as, " Neither honor nor riches confer happiness."

In most cases the plural Nominative may be placed next the Verb, and when this is the case, there can be little difficulty in choosing the right Verb. But some cases require the singular Noun placed next it, as in the sentence : ' Not only all his riches, but his virtue vanishes also.' Many Grammarians, and among others Levizac, have given such examples as this, as proper both in French and English. But it is surely not good Syntax, and if it is improper to place the plural Nominative next the Verb, when there is but one Verb in the sentence.

tence, two parts of the Verb might be supplied : as, ' Not only his riches *vanish*, but his virtue *vanishes* also.'

When *not* follows the singular Noun, the Verb must be singular and not plural, in such sentences : as, ' Goodness and not riches makes men happy.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE IX.

The ship and cargo were lost, and neither captain nor sailors was saved.

One or both of the scholars was present at the examination.

Neither this ruler nor his servants deserves our thanks.

One or more of these men

was engaged in this conspiracy.

The care of this world, or great riches often ruins virtuous principles.

Neither poverty nor riches was injurious to him.

Neither he nor they, has complied with the agreement.

### RULE X.

A Noun of Multitude requires a singular or plural Verb and Pronoun, agreeing with it in the singular or plural, according as it conveys unity or plurality of idea : as, " The Parliament *is* prorogued ;" " The multitude eagerly *pursue* pleasure as *their* chief good."

We ought to consider whether the term immediately suggests the idea of the number it represents, or whether it exhibits to the mind the idea of the whole as one thing. In the former case the Verb ought to be plural ; in the latter it ought to be singular. For it seems improper to say, ' The peasantry *goes* barefoot, and the middle sort *makes* use of wooden shoes ;' it would be better to say, ' The peasantry *go* barefoot, and the middle sort *make* use,' &c. because the idea in both these cases, is that of a number. On the contrary, there is a harshness in the following sentences in which Nouns of Number have Verbs plural, because the ideas they represent seem not to be sufficiently divided in the mind. ' The court of Rome *were* not without solicitude.' ' The House of Commons *were* of

small weight.' 'Stephen's party *were* entirely broken up by the captivity of their leader.' 'An army of twenty-four thousand *were* assembled.' 'There is indeed no constitution so tame or careless of *their* defence.' 'All the virtues of mankind are to be counted on a few fingers, but *his* vices and follies are innumerable.' Is not mankind in this place a Noun of multitude, and as such requires the Pronoun referring to it, to be in the plural number *their*.

Some may think that the words, 'An army of twenty-four thousand should have *were* and not *was* : if the sentence was transposed thus, 'Twenty-four thousand of an army *were* assembled,' the plural Verb would be better, not otherwise. In such sentences as, 'One half of the army *were* either killed or wounded ;' it seems better to make the word army plural : as, for to say, 'One half of *it*, (viz. the army) *was* either killed or wounded,' seems improper.

From these observations it appears, that a Noun that is singular in one case, by an alteration of circumstances, may be plural in another. Some Nouns indeed, in most cases, seem to be fitted so to be used either singularly or plurally, as *company*, and we may say either 'The company *were* assembled ;' or '*was* assembled.'

It has been thought a criterion of a Noun's conveying unity or idea, that it had a plural. Thus army has armies ; council, councils ; nation, nations ; church, churches ; flock, flocks, &c. but *people* has no plural, and therefore should always have a plural Verb. But this rule (though it often may be a guide) is not always sure ; thus multitude, has sometimes multitudes, and yet it ought never to have a singular Verb.

### EXERCISES ON RULE X.

The meeting were large  
and well attended.

The court have just ended  
their proceedings.

The crowd were so great,  
we could hardly get  
through them.

The church have no power  
to inflict corporal  
punishment.

The council was not unanimous  
in this business.

Ten thousand of an army  
was marching against  
them, whose number  
does not exceed five  
thousand.

One half of this detachment  
was slain, and  
the other half taken prisoners.



The committee were very full when they decided this point.

The committee was divided in its sentiments on this subject.

The fleet were seen sailing up the channel.

The fleet is all arrived and moored in safety, except three ships.

The flock and not the fleece, are or ought to be, the object of the shepherds care.

The shoal of herrings were of an immense extent.

The majority were disposed to agree to these measures.

This corporation consists of a mayor, alderman, and a common council.

The regiment consist of a thousand men.

The people rejoices in that which should give it sorrow.

The Parliament are composed of King, Lords and commons.

When the nation complain the rulers should listen to their voice.

Why do this generation wish for greater evidence, when so much is already given.

Never were any people so infatuated as the Jewish nation.

Were the Senate consulted in this business ?

Blessed is the people that knows the joyful sound.

The remnant of the people were persecuted with great severity.

## RULE XI.

Personal Pronouns must agree with the Nouns to which they refer, in gender, number, and person: as, " Charles is here, *he* came two hours ago ;" " The King and Queen put on *their* royal robes ;" " The Moon shines but has no light of *her* own ;" " Virtue has *its* reward."

Of this rule, many violations are to be met with, a few of which may be sufficient to put the learner on his guard : " Each of the sexes should keep within *its* particular bounds, and content *themselves* with the advantages of *their* particular



district ;' better thus, ' the sexes should keep within *their* particular bounds.' ' Can any one on *their* entrance into the world, be fully secured that *they* shall not be deceived ?' ' on *his* entrance,' and ' that *he* shall.' ' One should not think too favourably of ourselves ;' ' of *one's* self.'

The Pronoun *you* though properly plural, is now applied to a person, as well as more than one.

The Pronoun *we* and the compounds *ourselves*, or *ourselves* are sometimes applied by Monarchs as singular : as, ' We Alexander Emperor of Russia.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE XI.

Rebecca took goodly raiment which were in the house and put them upon Jacob.      The mind of man cannot be long without some food to nourish the activity of his thoughts.

The wheel has killed another man, which is the sixth that have lost their lives by this means.      The fair sex whose task is not to mingle in the labours of public life, has *her* own part assigned her to act.

The Hercules ship of war foundered at sea, it overset and lost most part of its men.      Take handfuls of the ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it towards heaven in the sight of Pharaoh, and it shall become small dust.

I do not think any one should bear censure for being tender of their reputation.      Anguish and discontent manifested itself in his face.

The sun shines in its meridian splendour.      Snow or ice when it melts absorbs heat.

### RULE XII.

The Pronoun *ye* or *you* should be followed by *you* or *yours*, and not *thou*, *thy*, *thine* or *thyselves*, &c.

and *thou* by *thy* and *thine*, and not *you* or *yours*, *yourself*, &c. This sentence is therefore wrong, "*Thou must learn your lesson*;" it should be, "*Thou must learn thy lesson*," or "*You must learn your lesson*."

This Rule is oftener infringed, than is generally imagined, and therefore requires notice in a particular rule. It is sometimes violated in Scripture: as in Micah i. 10, 11, 'Weep ye not at all; roll *thyself* in the dust.' 'Pass ye away *thou* inhabitant of Saphir.' Some of the best English writers have sometimes infringed it, as the Elegant Poet Collins in these lines:

As in that loved Athenian bower,  
You learned an all commanding power.  
Thy mimic soul O nymph endeared,  
Can well recal what then it heard.

## EXERCISES ON RULE XII.

You should give some of thy substance to the poor.	Go ye away for this time when it is more conven- ient I will see thee.
You ought not to give what is not thine.	Then hasten back, for you away, I mourn thy absence.
So then thou art liberal of what is not yours.	You should keep thyself pure from all desire.
You wept, and I wept for thee.	

## RULE XIII.

A Substantive and its Pronoun should not be used either as Nominatives or as Objectives to one Verb: as, "This man *he* is just;" "These conspirators the King ordered *them* all to be executed." In these sentences *he* and *them* should be omitted.

This Rule is very often infringed in Scripture, in such instances: as, 'And Joshua *he* shall go over before thee.' 'Now Hannah *she* spoke in her heart.' 'For all the men that followed Baal-peor, the Lord hath destroyed *them* from among you.' 'The lofty city *he* layeth it low.' In some instances however, in Scripture, it appears that the repetition of the

Noun in the Pronoun, is both emphatic and sublime : as in the sentence, ' The Lord, *he* is God.' And in interrogatories they have a grand effect : as, ' Your fathers, where are *they* ? and thy Prophets, do *they* live for ever ?'

This Rule is often violated by other authors as well as in Scripture : as,

' My banks *they* are furnished with bees.'—*Shenstone*.

' Her nose and chin *they* threaten each other.'—*Burns*.

' It curl'd not Tweed alone that *weeze*.'—*Sir W. Scott*.

' Or do *they* flash on spear and lance,  
The sun's retiring beams.'—*Idem*.

In some cases of apposition, many Grammarians think they are not only proper, but unavoidable : as in such lines as,

' But *he* our gracious *Master*, kind as just,  
Knowing our frame, remembers we are dust.'

' The Author of my being formed *me* man.'

That Murray should have infringed this rule, may appear strange, but he certainly has, in recommending such a sentence as, ' The show bread which *it* is not lawful to eat but for the Priests only.' Here show bread and *it* are both improperly made Nominatives to one Verb.

### EXERCISES ON RULE XIII.

The great Aristides, *he*  
was a very just man.

Man though *he* has great  
variety of thoughts,  
from which others  
might profit as well as  
himself, yet they are  
all shut up in his own  
breast.

This accident though un-  
likely, *it* did really hap-  
pen.

Whoever has such an  
idea of me, *he* is wrong.

The show bread which *it*  
is not lawful to eat, but  
for the Priests alone.

Afflictions though they  
are hard to be borne,  
yet they often improve  
us.

These accusations, *he*  
seemed not disposed to  
retract them.

The wicked men who  
followed Baal-peor, the  
Lord hath destroyed  
them from among you.

Gad, a troop shall overcome him.

The south and the north,  
thou hast created them.

Whom when they had  
washed they laid her in  
an upper chamber.

The lofty city he layeth it  
low.

### RULE XIV.

By an idiom peculiar to English, the Neuter Pronoun *it*, is joined to Nouns and Pronouns, male and female, singular and plural : as, "It is he, it might be they ;" "It was the Greeks that rebelled." Yet *it* is not joined to a plural Verb, but is often joined to a Verb called Impersonal : as, "It rains," i. e. "rain falls." "The positions were as appears true," i. e. "as *it* appears." It also represents the subject of an action : as, "It happened so," that is, "this business happened so." It is sometimes used however improperly.

The great license used in the construction of *it*, though often improper in many points of view, seems however to be so well fixed in the English Language, as to be very difficult to be altered or removed. Yet in many instances a gross idiom might be avoided.

It is often employed to express, 1st. the subject of any discourse or enquiry : as, 'It came to pass ;' 'Who is *it* that calls on me.'

2nd. The state or condition of any person or thing : as, 'How is *it* with you.'

3rd. The thing whatever it may be that is the cause of any effect or event, or any person considered merely as a cause : as, 'We heard him say *it* was not he ;' 'The truth is, *it* was I that helped him.'

Though *it* is used with Nouns and Pronouns, male and female, singular and plural, yet *it* is never joined to a plural verb, the verb must always be singular ; though we can say, 'It is *they* that are the real authors.' 'It was the *heretics* that first began to rail.' 'Tis *these* that early taint the female mind,' &c. Yet we cannot use a plural verb and say, 'it were *they*,' &c. 'It were the *heretics*,' &c. *Were* is used

after *it*, in the Subjunctive Mood only : as, ' They seemed as *it were* transformed into other men ;' that is, ' as if transformed.'

The phrases, ' It came to pass,' so often found in Scripture, is not in common use at present—and many other phrases with *it* in them, might as well be consigned to oblivion also. A gross idiom of the Pronoun *it* with a little care might be avoided. Instead of saying, ' Who is *it* calls on me,' we might say, ' Who is this, that calls on me.' Instead of saying, ' We heard her say *it* was not he ;' ' We heard her say he was not the person.' Instead of saying, ' How is *it* with you ;' ' How are you.' And many other such like inelegant phrases might be disused or altered. In such sentences as the following *it* is not only inelegant but vague and uncertain, though similar phrases are common : ' They begged and implored so much, that *it* melted the heart of the King with pity.' ' They threatened us with banishment, if we persisted, and *it* put us in great fear : at last they grew bold, and threatened us not only with *it*, but even death *itself* ; and you cannot wonder that *it* put us in great terror and perplexity.' These sentences would be better thus : ' They begged and implored so much, that the heart of the King was melted with pity.' ' They threatened us with banishment if we persisted, and *this* put us in fear. At last they grew very bold, and threatened us not only with banishment, but even death *itself* ; and you cannot wonder that *this* threatening put us in great terror, and perplexity.'

In Impersonal Verbs *it* is omitted and understood in some instances, as in, ' *As* appears, as follows,' for ' as *it* appears, as *it* follows ; and ' May be so,' or ' may be,' for ' *It* may be.'

Many late writers seem to be of opinion that ' as appears, as follows, as concerns,' are not Impersonal Verbs ; and that *it* should not be supplied to them, but they should be made to agree with a plural Noun. These reasons however appear to be of no force, as being *post factum* ; so many writers having for centuries used, ' as appears,' ' as follows,' &c. without agreeing with a plural Noun ; and it is the part of a Grammarian to explain language already formed, and not to form a new one. Since then, ' as appears, as follows,' &c. have been used so long ; there seems no method of explaining them, but that of supposing them Impersonal Verbs. It seems as improper to say, ' It was the men,' as in many cases to supply *it* to appears ; and the strange anomalous form that *it* often assumes, seems to be the best reason, that can be given that such verbs should be used in an impersonal sense.

## EXERCISES ON RULE XIV.

I looked and was in doubt whether it was he, or it was another.

It was these thieves that stole it away.

It so happened that it rained whenever we were walking thither.

It were the Romans who killed him.

The arguments advanced were as follows.

He did not think it worth his while to enquire after it.

It is better to plant cabbages now, than to delay it a week longer.

This contagion operates on the body by saturating itself with the aqueous particles of the blood, until it reduces it to its putrid fermentation.

## RULE XV.

The Relative is the Nominative case to the Verb when no Nominative comes between it and the Verb : as, "The master *who* taught us ;" "The trees *which* are planted." When both Antecedent and Relative are Nominatives, the Relative is the Nominative to the first and the Antecedent to the second Verb : as, "The man *who* is honest will prosper."

A few instances of erroneous construction will illustrate this rule, 'These are the men whom you might suppose were the authors of the work.' 'Men of fine talents are not always the persons who we should esteem.' In the first of the above instances, the Objective *whom* is used for the Nominative *who*; and in the second sentence the Nominative *who* is used for the Objective *whom*.

The different cases of *who*, viz. the Nominative, Objective, and Possessive, are illustrated in the following sentence, 'He *who* preserves me, to *whom* I owe my being, *whose* I am and *whom* I serve is eternal.' In the several members of this sentence the Relative performs a different office. In the first member, it marks the agent ; in the second it submits to the government of the preposition ; in the third it represents the possessive ; and in the fourth the object of an action : and

therefore it must be in the three different cases correspondent to those offices.

The sentence above, 'These are the men whom you might,' &c. contains a Nominative between the Relative and the Verb, and therefore seems to contravene the rule; but the student will reflect that it is not the Nominative of the Verb with which the Relative is connected.

When the Relative Pronoun is of the interrogative kind, the Noun or Pronoun containing the answer must be of the same case as that which contains the question: as, 'Whose books are those?' 'They are John's.' 'Who gave them to him?' 'We.' 'Of whom did you buy them?' 'Of a bookseller, him who lives at the Bible and Crown.' 'Whom did you see there?' 'Both him and the shopman.' The learner will readily comprehend this rule by supplying the words which are understood in the answers. Thus to express both answers at large, we should say, 'They are John's books.' 'We gave them to him.' 'We bought them of him who lives,' &c. 'We saw both him and the shopman.' As the Relative Pronoun when used interrogatively, refers to the subsequent word or phrase containing the answer to a question, that word or phrase may properly be termed the *subsequent* to the Interrogative.

Pronouns and Relatives are generally placed after their antecedents, yet they are sometimes made to precede the things they represent: as, 'If a man declares in autumn when eating *them*, or in spring when there are *none*, that he loves *grapes*,' &c. But such construction as this, is seldom proper.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XV.

If he will not hear his best friend, whom shall be sent to admonish him.

Without any assistance whom can subsist by themselves.

He who much is given to, will have much to answer for.

The persons who conscience and virtue support, may smile at the caprice of fortune.

They whom have laboured to make us wise and good, are the persons who we ought to love and respect, and who we ought to be grateful to.

That is the student who I gave the book to, and whom I am persuaded deserves it.

Whomsoever entertains such an opinion, judges wrong.



If our friend is in trouble,  
we who he knows, and  
loves, and who he as-  
sociates with, may con-  
sole him.

Who were the articles  
bought of? Of a mer-

chant, he who resides  
near the quay. Who  
was the money paid to?  
To the merchant and  
his clerk. Who count-  
ed it? Both the clerk  
and him.

## RULE XVI.

Relatives must agree with their antecedents, in gender, number, and person : *who* refers to man-  
kind, *which* to things, and *that* and *what* to both : as,  
“ There is no person *who* sins not ; ” “ Here are the  
goods *which* were sold ; ” “ What man or beast *can*  
*live* without food.”

The Pronoun *who* is so much appropriated to persons,  
that there is harshness in the application of it, except to the  
proper names of persons or the general terms *man*, *woman*,  
&c. A term which only implies the idea of person, and ex-  
presses them by some circumstance or epithet, will hardly au-  
thorise the use of it : as, ‘ That faction in England *who* most  
powerfully oppose his arbitrary pretensions ; ’ ‘ that faction  
*which*,’ would have been better ; and the same remark will  
serve in the following examples : ‘ France *who* was in alliance  
with Sweden.’ ‘ The court *who*,’ &c. ‘ The cavalry *who*,’  
&c. ‘ The cities *who* aspired at liberty.’ ‘ That party among  
us *who*,’ &c. ‘ The family *whom* they consider as usurpers.’

In some cases it may be doubtful whether this Pronoun is  
properly applied or not : as, ‘ The number of substantial inha-  
bitants, with whom some cities abound.’ For when a term  
directly and necessarily implies persons, it may in many cases,  
claim the Personal Relative : as, ‘ None of the company  
*whom* he most affected, could cure him of the melancholy un-  
der which he laboured.’ The word *acquaintance* may have  
the same construction.

We hardly consider little children as persons, because that  
term gives the idea of reason and reflection, and therefore the  
application of the Personal Relative *who* in this case appears  
harsh : as, ‘ A child *who* ; ’ but it seems only after the words  
*child* or *children* that this harshness is felt, for when children  
are called by their proper names, there seems nothing harsh in



using the Personal Relative with them. When the name of a person is used merely as a name and it does not refer to the person, the Pronoun *who* ought not to be applied, *which* in most cases or sometimes *whose* should be used : ' It is no wonder if such a man did not shine at the court of Queen Elizabeth, *who* was but another name for prudence and economy ;' better, ' Court of Queen Elizabeth *which* was but another name,' &c.

The word *whose*, is restricted by some (but we believe very few at present,) to persons, for the greatest part of good writers use it when speaking of things. Murray seems to think this construction not pleasing in such instances : as, ' Pleasure *whose* nature ;' ' Call every production *whose* parts and *whose* nature,' &c. But the most part of writers seem to see nothing displeasing in the use of this Possessive case.

In one case, custom authorises us to use *which* with respect to persons ; and that is when we want to distinguish one person of two, or a particular person among a number of others. We should then say, ' *Which* of the two,' or ' *which* of them is he or she.'

As the Pronoun Relative has no distinction of number, we sometimes find an ambiguity in the use of it : as, ' The disciples of Christ *whom* we imitate ;' the imitation either of Christ or of his disciples may be meant. The accuracy and clearness of the sentence depend very much upon the proper and determinate use of the Relative, so that it may readily present its antecedent to the mind, without obscurity or ambiguity.

*Who, which, what* and *that*, (as Relatives,) though in the Objective case, are always placed before the Verb ; as also their compounds *whoever, whosoever, &c.* as, ' He *whom* ye seek ;' ' This is *what*, or the thing *which*, or that you want ;' ' *Whomsoever* you please to appoint.' *What* is sometimes applied in a manner which appears to be exceptionable : as, ' All fevers, except *what* are called nervous,' &c. it would at least be better to say, ' except *those which* are called nervous.'

In some cases the word *what* is improperly used for *that* : as, ' They will never believe but *what* I have been entirely to blame ;' instead of ' *that* I have been,' &c.

Every Relative must have an antecedent to which it relates. This antecedent however is sometimes improperly omitted : as, ' Who is fatal to others is so to himself ;' it would be better to say, ' He *who* is fatal,' or, ' The man *who*,' &c.

The Relative sometimes refers to a whole sentence, instead of a particular word in it : as, ' These measures was :

dopted without proper consideration, *which* caused great dissatisfaction.'

When several clauses of a sentence follow one antecedent, whatever Relative is used in one, ought generally to be used in them all : as, 'O thou *who* art, and *who* wast, and *who* art to come.' This rule is infringed in the following sentence : 'Holland against *which* the war was undertaken, and *that*, in the very beginning was reduced to the brink of destruction ;' it should be, 'and *which* in the very,' &c.

The Relative should be placed as near as possible to its antecedent to prevent obscurity or ambiguity.

## EXERCISES ON RULE XVI.

This is the man which I esteem so much.

That person is blessed which walketh in wisdom's ways.

That is the vice whom I hate.

The lion is a beast of prey who sometimes destroys man.

They which seek wisdom will certainly find her.

He considers little the misery to whom we are reduced.

The census of the people whom they then took, was ten millions.

Which man or beast could live at the South Pole.

Who of those men came to assist you.

None of the members of the Senate which were proscribed were slain.

Cyrus asked him, which that God was of which he begged assistance.

There are millions of people in the East which cannot read or write.

These sportsmen appear to possess as little reason, as the beasts whom they hunt.

Thou who has been a witness of the fact, canst give an account of it.

Having once disgusted Nero, he could never regain his favor, who was but another name for cruelty.

## RULE XVII.

The Relative *that* should be used in place of *who* or *which*, after Superlatives : as, "He is the best reader *that* I know ;" after *who* when an Interrogative : as, "Who *that* has common sense would act so?" after Nouns, some requiring *who* and some *which* : as, "This is the hunter and his dog, *that* we saw before ;" and generally after the words, *same*, *some*, *all*, and *any* ; and also the words *child* or *children*.

No proper reason can perhaps be given for preferring *that* to *who*, or *which* after *same* ; but there must be a cacophony produced by not using it, and *some* is so near *same* that they seem both disagreeable when used with *who* or *which* ; as to *all* and *any*, though not used generally, yet they seem in the opinion of many to produce a more agreeable sound joined with *that*, than joined to *who* or *which*.

To prevent harshness, *that* should always be used after the words *child* or *children* ; though it does not seem necessary when children are spoken of by their names.

Some are of opinion that the Relative *that* should be used after an antecedent which was preceded by *it* : as, "It was *that* did it ;" but there seems to be no proper foundation for this idea. Some also think it more emphatic than *who* or *which* when put after antecedents, which have a sort of unlimited meaning as in this line : "Thoughts *that* breathe and words *that* burn ;" but this opinion also seems not to be reducible to a certainty.

## EXERCISES ON RULE XVII.

Moses was the meekest man who we read of in the Old Testament.

This is the man and horse which we saw yesterday.

Sydney was one of the best Governors which Ireland ever had.

Humility is one of the most amiable virtues which we can possess.

He is the most excellent writer who ever took a pen in hand.

The men and things which he has studied have not improved him.

They are the same persons who assisted us yesterday.

Some village Hampden who with dauntless breast, the tyrant of his fields withstood.

Germany ran the same risk which Italy had done.

Who is the man who dares say he sins not !

All which beauty, all which wealth e'er gave await alike the inevitable hour.

Those children whom we have seen are both healthy.

The child who was put to nurse is well.

He is like a beast of prey which destroys without pity.

### RULE XVIII.

When the Relative is preceded by two Nominatives of different persons, it and the Verb may agree in person with either : as, " I am a man who *am* a teacher of truth," or " who *is* a teacher of truth." Yet it is often more elegant to make the Relative and Verb agree with the last person mentioned than the first.

The words used by Murray in his rule, ' I am the man who command you ; ' seem not to be explicit, and therefore should be discarded from all such rules. There is however sometimes a difficulty in fixing the meaning produced by referring the Relative to different antecedents. Perhaps this difference of meaning may be more evident to the learner, from considering the following sentences as well as our rule : ' I am the General who *gives* the orders to day ; ' ' I am the General who *give* the orders to day.' This last sentence should be written, ' I who *give* the orders to day *am* the General ; ' and it would then be more explicit.

When the Relative and Verb have been determined to agree with either of the preceding Nominatives, that agreement must be preserved throughout the sentence, as in the following instance : ' I am the Lord that *maketh* all things, that *stretcheth* forth the heavens alone.'—Isa. xlv. 24. Thus far is consistent : the Lord in the third person is the antecedent, and the Verb agrees with the Relative in the third person :

'I am the *Lord*, which *Lord* or he that *maketh* all things.' If *I* were made the antecedent, the Relative and Verb should agree with it in the first person: as, 'I am the *Lord* that *make* all things, that *stretch* forth the heavens alone.' But should it follow, 'that *spreadeth* abroad the earth by myself;' there would arise a confusion of persons and a manifest solecism.

That the second person mentioned is often the best to make the Relative agree with, will appear not only from the disagreeable sentence: 'I am the man who command you;' (where the Relative is made to agree with the first person mentioned,) but also from many other sentences of a similar kind.

When the Deity is addressed, the Relative should generally be made to agree with *thou*: as in this sentence, 'Thou art the God, who *driedst* up the Red Sea, that thy people might pass through.' Some however may think it should be 'dried,' but the Scriptures generally make the Relative agree with *thou*.

In the third person singular of Verbs, the termination *eth* should be used in all language respecting the Deity, as being more solemn than the familiar *s* or *es*: as, 'I am the Lord who *teacheth* thee to profit;' and not, '*who teaches* thee to profit.'

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XVIII.

I acknowledge that I am the teacher who adopt that sentiment and maintains it.

Thou art a friend that has often relieved me, and that hast not deserted me now in the time of peculiar need.

Thou art the man who toldest me the truth.

I perceive that thou art a pupil who possessest bright parts, but who has cultivated them but little.

I am a man who approves of wholesome severity, and who recommend it to others; but I am not a person who promotes useless severity, or who object to mild and generous treatment.

Thou art he who breathest on the earth with the breath of spring, and who covereth it with verdure and beauty.

I am the Lord thy God, who teaches thee to

profit, and who lead    Thou art the Lord, who  
 thee by the way thou    did choose Abraham,  
 shouldst go.                and broughtest him out  
                                      of Ur of the Chaldees.

## RULE XIX.

These Distributives *either*, *neither*, *each*, *every*, and the Indefinite *one*, should generally, (though not always) have Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs in the singular number : as, "Either of these will do." "Each man must keep *his* seat." "Every man ought to attend *his* business well." "One cannot be too careful of *his* health." And these Pronouns should not be used the one for the other.

The following phrases shew the improper use of these Pronouns : 'Let *each* esteem others better than themselves ;' it ought to be '*himself*.' 'The language should be both perspicuous and correct : in proportion as either of these two qualities are wanting the language is imperfect ;' it should be '*is* wanting.' '*Every* grove and *every* tree were cut down ;' '*was* cut down.' 'One should take care of *their* own interest ;' '*of his* own interest.'

*Either* is often used improperly instead of *each* : as, 'The King of Israel and King of Judah sat *either* of them on his throne.' *Each* signifies both taken distinctly or separately ; *either* properly signifies the one or the other when Disjunctively taken.

Though it appears to be erroneous to use *either* for *each* in prose, yet it is questionable, whether it is so in verse, since there are examples of it in the greatest Poets, as in *Paradise Lost*, *Blair's Grave*, &c.

*Every* agrees with a collective Noun which has a plural signification : as, 'Every hundred years, every six months.' *Every* when combined with *one* as a Possessive seems to agree with plural Nouns : as, 'Every one's horses had *their* harness on.'

These Pronouns must have plural Pronouns or Verbs when joined to some Nouns of Multitude : as, 'Each of these people, (viz. the Quadi and Suevi,) have *their* own peculiar laws.' 'Either of these companies, will be allowed to take

*their* guns and amunition.' 'One's friends will sometimes by *their* conduct hurt one's interest.' 'Every company of these 500 men *had* Captains of *their* own.'

*Every* is sometimes used improperly in place of *one* : as, 'The Plague is usually communicated in the East from *every* city there to another by Infection alone ;' should be, 'from one city to another.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE XIX.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Each of them in <i>their</i> turn receive this benefit.   | One should not be too positive in their opinion.       |
| Every person should be contented with their condition.  | Each of these nations have Kings of its own.           |
| By discussing what relates to each particular in their order, we shall better understand the subject. | Every people have <i>its</i> own laws.                 |
| Are either of these books yours ?   | Every one's servant should obey their master.          |
| Neither of these men have an idea that <i>their</i> opinion is ill founded.                           | Each people has its own Ruler.                         |
| Every leaf, every twig, every drop of water, team with life.  | On either side of the river was the tree of life.      |
|   | Man is born to trouble, on every hand are evils.       |
|   | This remark suits either Jew, Christian, or Mahometan. |

### RULE XX.

When the Indefinite *such* means so much or so great, or when a consequence is deduced, it governs *that* after it : as, "Such is the love of money *that* few can resist it." "Their conduct was *such that* I ordered them to be punished." In every other case, *such* governs *as* after it. *Who* or *which* must not be used for *as* or *that* after *such*.



This Rule seems necessary, as mistakes are frequently made in the wrong use of *that* for *as*, and *vice versa*, which the Exercises will shew.

*Such* is often used when *as* and *that* are not expressed, but understood: as, 'Such is the lot of man, to day he flourishes, to morrow he is laid in the tomb.' *That* is understood after man.

In some cases *so* may be used in preference to *such*, as in this sentence: 'He was *such* an extravagant young man that he soon spent all;' '*so* extravagant,' would be better.

*Who* or *which* is sometimes improperly used after *such*: as, 'Let *such* persons *who* reprove others, look to their own conduct;' it should be '*as* reprove others.'

## EXERCISES ON RULE XX.

His behaviour has been such, as many will vilify his character.

Such was Alexander's love of praise and flattery, as he affected to be a God.

He spoke in such a sharp manner to the King, as it cost him his life.

I gained a son, and such a son, as all men hailed me happy.

There was none shewed such courage at this battle like that he did.

Such is the uncertain state of man's existence, as he cannot ensure his life for one hour.

Such persons that act the hypocrite are not to be trusted.

None but Nero could act such a part that Caligula did.

He uttered such sharp replies that cost him his life.

May such persons who slander others, be punished.

## RULE XXI.

In contrasting Nouns or circumstances by this and that, these and those, former and latter, on the one hand, or on the other, or such like phrases, they should be made to refer appropriately to the objects intended: as, "Wealth and poverty are



both temptations, *that* tends to excite pride, *this* discontent." Where *that* refers to the first Noun, and *this* to the second.

Instances of the use of *this* and *that*, *former* and *latter* have been given before. It is often better to *contrast*, with 'on one,' or 'one hand,' 'on the other;' than with these Demonstratives: as in the following, 'We were cooped up in this narrow defile, as if between two fires, where we could not escape. On one side was the camp of our enemies; on the other a broad deep river.' It would be inelegant to say, 'on *this* side was the camp, &c.' 'on *that* the river, &c.' In many cases the repetition of the Noun is better than using any of these words of reference: as in the following passage: 'Maria was beautiful, humble and modest, but poor. Sophia was also handsome, but haughty and rich. Alexis was enamoured of each, but which to prefer he was unable to determine. Maria was certainly the most lovely and amiable; but Sophia was richest and also handsome, &c.' It would be less elegant to say, 'the *former* was certainly the most lovely, &c.' 'the *latter* was the richest, &c.'

In three or more names coming together, the reference is made by first, second, third, &c. 'first and last,' as, 'Basil, Henry and Clement were partners, the first was rich, the second not rich but active, and the last both.'

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XXI.

Religion raises men above themselves, irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; that binds them down to a speck of perishable earth, this opens to them a prospect to the skies.

Those barefoot of mine, have been hurt on this hard road by these sharp stones.

Virtue is only an entire conformity to the eternal rule of things: vice

is the infringement of that rule; that causes misery; this creates happiness; therefore, let us love the latter and hate the former.

These houses on the opposite side of the river, are larger than those on this side of it.

I have always preferred cheerfulness to mirth, the former is an act, the latter is a habit of the mind.

Two principles in human nature reign,	Reason raise our instinct as you can—
Selflove to urge, and reason to restrain ;	In that 'tis God directs in this 'tis man.
Nor that a good, nor this a bad we call,	Farewell my friends, farewell my foes,
Each works its end to move or govern all.	My love with these, my peace with those.

## RULE XXII.

Every Adjective and Adjective Pronoun, belongs to a Substantive expressed or understood ; and is generally placed before it : as, "He is a *wise* man." "Few are happy," i. e. "*persons*." "This is a pleasant walk," i. e. "This walk is, &c."

Adjective Pronouns and Numeral Adjectives, must agree with their Substantives in number : as, "This book, these books ; that sort, these sorts ; another road, other roads ; one foot, ten feet."

The Adjective generally agrees with a Substantive whether singular or plural ; but the Adjectives *few*, *several*, *all*, &c. and the Adjective Pronouns *those* and *these* only agree with plural Nouns.

Some Adjective Pronouns in the plural number will associate with a singular Noun : as, 'our wish ;' 'your desire ;' 'their importunity.' This association applies rather to things of an intellectual nature, than to those which are corporeal. It forms an exception to the general rule.

A Substantive with its Adjective is reckoned as one compound word, whence they often take another Adjective, and sometimes a third, and so on : as, 'An old man, a good old man ; a very learned, judicious, good old man.'

Though the Adjective always relates to a Substantive, it is in many instances, put as if it were absolute ; especially where the Noun has been mentioned before, or is easily understood, though not expressed : as, 'I often survey the green fields, as I am very fond of *green*.' 'The wise, the virtuous, the honoured, famed and great ;' that is '*persons*.' The

'Twelve ;' that is 'Apostles.' 'Have compassion on the Poor ; be feet to the *lame* ; and eyes to the *blind*.'

In some cases Adjectives should not be separated from their Substantives, even by words which modify the meaning, and make but one sense with them : as, 'A *large* enough number surely ;' it should be 'A number *large* enough.'

Substantives are often used as Adjectives. In this case the word so connected is sometimes unconnected with the Substantives to which it relates ; sometimes connected with it by a hyphen ; and sometimes joined to it, so as to make the two words coalesce. The total separation is proper when either of the words is long, or when they cannot be fluently pronounced as one word : as, 'An Adjective Pronoun, a silver watch, a stone cistern.' The hyphen is used when both the words are short, and are readily pronounced as a single word : as, 'coal-mine, corn-mill, fruit-tree.' The words coalesce, when they are readily pronounced together, have a long established association ; and are in frequent use : as, 'honeycomb, gingerbread, inkhorn, Yorkshire.'

Sometimes the Adjective becomes a Substantive and has another Adjective joined to it : as, 'The chief good ;' 'the vast immensity of space.'

When an Adjective has a preposition before it, the Substantive being understood, it takes the nature of an Adverb, and is considered as an Adverb : as, 'In general, in particular, in haste, &c.' that is, 'Generally, particularly, hastily.'

Though the Adjective is usually placed before its Substantive, yet sometimes it is placed after it. The instances in which it comes after the Substantive are the following.

1st. When something depends upon the Adjective ; and when it gives a better sound, especially in Poetry : as, 'A man *generous* to his enemies ;' 'Feed me with food *convenient* for me ;' 'A tree three feet *thick* ;' 'A body of troops fifty thousand *strong* ;' 'The torrent tumbling through rocks *abrupt*.'

2nd. When the Adjective is emphatic : as, 'Alexander the *great* ;' 'Lewis the *bold* ;' 'Goodness *infinite* ;' 'Wisdom *unsearchable*.'

3rd. When several Adjectives belong to one Substantive : as, 'A man just, wise, and charitable.'

4th. When the Adjective is preceded by an Adverb : as, 'A boy regularly studious.'

5th. When the Verb *to be* in any of its variations comes between a Substantive and an Adjective, the Adjective may frequently either precede or follow it : as, 'The man is happy;' or 'happy is the man who makes virtue his choice.'

6th. When the Adjective expresses some circumstance of a Substantive placed after an Active Verb : as, 'Vanity often renders its possessor *despicable*.' In an exclamatory sentence, the Adjective generally precedes the Substantive : as, 'How *despicable* does vanity often render its possessor.'

When a Verb is next to a Noun or Pronoun, the Adjective is generally placed after it : as, 'We grew *uneasy* at this conduct.' There is sometimes great beauty, as well as force, in placing the Adjective before the Verb ; and the Substantive immediately after it : as, 'Great is the Lord ! just and true are thy ways thou King of Saints.'

Some times the word *all* is emphatically put after a number of particulars comprehended under it : 'Ambition, interest, honor, *all* concurred.'

In many cases, especially in Poetry, the Adjective may either precede or follow the Noun, and we may say, 'A being infinitely wise,' or 'An infinitely wise Being ;' 'The anger of the righteous is weighty,' or 'Weighty is the anger of the righteous ;' and many other phrases may have the Adjective either preceding or following its Noun or Pronoun.

A breach of the Rule with regard to Adjective Pronouns and Numeral Adjectives, is frequently made, such as, 'I have not travelled *this* ten years ;' '*these* ten.' 'I am not recommending *these* kind of sufferings ;' '*this* kind.' 'Those set of books was a valuable present ;' '*that* set.' 'The seam of coal was two foot thick ;' '*two* feet.' 'He walks five mile in an hour ;' 'five miles.' 'He sold it for twenty pound ;' 'twenty pounds.'

In the use of hundred, thousand and million, mistakes are frequently made. Million is always plural, except after *one*, and followed by *of* : 'Two million pounds ;' is wrong, it should be, 'Two millions of pounds.' Hundred and thousand are not used in the plural before Nouns, nor with *of* like million : to say, 'Ten thousands of men ;' is wrong, it ought to be, 'Ten thousand men ;' and hundred is the same. In some cases however, hundred and thousand are used in the plural, and generally they are not then followed by a Noun : as, 'Saul has slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands.'

Ordinal numbers generally agree with Nouns in the singular number only : as, 'The third man, the hundredth part.'

&c. However if the Noun is collective, they may agree with it in a plural sense ; as, ' The tenth company had *their* own arms.'

## EXERCISES ON RULE XXII.

He has not been here this ten days.

These pair of bracelets are real gold.

His virtues are that of honor and integrity.

Those sort of favours do hurt, instead of good.

These kind of indulgences soften and injure the mind.

How many a sorrow should we avoid, if we were not industrious to make them.

Thomas is equipped with a new pair of shoes, and a new pair of gloves : he is servant of an old rich man.

The chasm made by the earthquake, was twenty foot broad and one hundred fathom in depth.

The Government borrowed five million pounds to carry on the war.

The detachment consisted of eight hundred men.

The two first in the row are cherry trees, the two others are pear trees.

He saw one or more persons enter the garden.

He spoke in a distinct enough manner to be heard by all the assembly.

## RULE XXIII.

The Pronouns *this* and *that*, are used with the plural Nouns *means*, *amends*, *alms*, and *news* ; but they must be applied only when they respect singulars, and *these* and *those* when plurals are employed as, " He was temperate and by *this* means preserved his health." " The scholars were attentive and obedient, and by *these* means became learned." " *This* was ample amends for his loss." " He gave much to the poor, and by *this* alms was esteemed.

The word *means* in the singular number and the phrases, 'By this means;' 'By that means;' are used by our best and most correct writers. So well established is the use of *this* and *that* now with *means* that it is presumed no person of taste will venture to shock the ears of the generality of readers by saying, 'This mean,' or 'that mean.'

*Amends* is used in this manner: 'This was an honorable amends for his sacrificing his interest.'

Good writers do indeed make use of the Substantive *mean* in the singular number to signify mediocrity, middle rank, &c. as, 'This is a mean between the two extremes.' But in the sense of instrumentality, it has long been disused by almost every writer.

Murray seems to think that *Actos* should be always singular, and *alms* plural, but the opinion appears not to be correct. *Alms* is used in the singular very often, as in Acts iii. 3. and *Actos* is properly plural, and as such is used by many good writers.

The Nouns *hose*, *odds*, *species*, *series*, *apparatus*, and *hiatus*, are used with *this* and *that*, and also with *these* and *those*.

Some writers use the names of Sciences as optics, metaphysics, &c. as singular, (though it is certainly wrong to do so.) as, 'Mathematics is a science, &c.' but though such a sentence as this may pass, yet such a one as, 'This mathematics,' 'That metaphysics, &c.' should never be made by any writer.

### EXERCISES ON RULE XXIII.

He was rich and by this mean he rendered himself powerful.

He displayed his talents for satire, and by this means got many enemies.

He was industrious and frugal, and by this means became rich.

Joseph was frugal and sober, and by this means became rich.

John was very sober and by these means was esteemed.

It is a mean I will not adopt.

Industry is the mean of obtaining wealth.

This was the mean between the two measures.

It was by this ungenerous  
mean he obtained his  
end.

This messenger told of  
the Emperor's death,  
and also of the great  
defeat in the east, and  
by this news the city  
of Rome was in much  
alarm.

He received a thousand  
pounds in a present,  
which was ample a-  
mend for his loss.

He gave both to the  
church and to the poor,  
and by this alms ob-  
tained the name of be-  
ing generous.

### RULE XXIV.

Though Adjectives of one syllable are commonly compared with *er* and *est*, and dissyllables with *more* and *most*, yet they may often be done so with either. But dissyllables ending in *id*, *ed*, *ous*, *ish*, and *ry*, should not be compared with *er* and *est*. Those of three or more syllables can only be compared with *more* and *most*. No double comparatives or superlatives ought to be used.

Murray has intimated that no Dissyllable except those that end in *y*, as happy ; and in *le*, as able ; or is accented on the last syllable, as *discreet*, admits of a comparison by *er* and *est*. This appears to be not quite correct. A great number of Adjectives of two syllables are capable of being compared with either *er* and *est*, or *more* and *most*. Dissyllables that are not accented on the last syllable, may often be compared by *er* and *est*, as well as *more* and *most* : as, ' Proper, properest ; civil, civiler ; frugal, frugalest.' Some in *le*, however, (which ending, Murray intimates, always admits of comparison by *er* and *est*,) are disagreeable when so compared : as, ' Fertile, fertiler ; puerile, puerilest ; docile, dociler,' &c. Indeed most Adjectives that end in *ed*, *id*, *ous*, *ish*, and *ry*, will not admit of comparison by *er* and *est* : as, ' Valid, polished, virtuous, vicious, childish, hungry, &c.' Some Adjectives ending in *l*, especially *ful*, are unpleasant when compared with *er* and *est* : as, ' Frightful.'

Adjectives of more than two syllables can only be compared with *more* and *most*, but some that seem to be of three are properly only two : as, ' Partial, social, patient, &c.' compared, ' Partialer, sociallest, patienter, &c.'



Adjectives that have in themselves a superlative signification do not properly admit of the superlative or comparative form superadded : such as, 'Chief, extreme, perfect, right, universal, supreme, true, &c.' such are sometimes improperly written, 'Chiefest, extremest, most universal, most supreme, truest, &c.' The following expressions are therefore improper: 'He claims admission to the chiefest offices.' 'The quarrel became so universal and national.' 'A method of attaining the *rightest* and greatest happiness.' The phrases, 'so perfect, so right, so extreme, so universal, &c.' are incorrect ; because they imply something is less perfect, less extreme, &c. than another, which is not possible.

It is proper however to apprise the learner, that though the above remarks about chiefest, &c. seem proper, yet that many of our best writers have disregarded them. Several instances are to be found in the Bible, as in the phrase, 'The chiefest among ten thousand ;' and Addison, who has been called, the best English critic that ever wrote, has several examples ; as in the Campaign, 'Those who paint 'em *truest*, praise 'em *most*.'

Double Comparatives or Superlatives, are quite improper, and should never be used : as, 'Worser, lesser, more superior, most inferior, more better, most sweetest, most highest, most powerfulest, &c.'

Adverbs of one syllable which admit of comparison are compared with *er* and *est* ; but Dissyllables may be compared with either *er* and *est* or *more* and *most* : as, 'Seldomer, or more seldom, oftener or more often.'

Those ending in *ly* and those of three syllables can only be compared with *more* and *most* ; such Adverbs as *holily*, *utilly*, are disagreeable when compared, and should not be used.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XXIV.

Though Euclio was polisheder than the others, yet his conversation was pueriler and vapider than theirs, and upon the whole he was the foolishhest of them all.

He was of the most strictest sect of Religious fanatics.

Though none appeared feelinger than Clio, yet he was really the vicieusest, and was often angrier at trifles than the rest, and then his countenance put on the frightfullest appearance you can imagine.



Virtue confers the supremest dignity on man and should be his chiefest desire

The tongue is like a race horse, which runs the faster the lesser weight it carries.

His assertion was more true than that of his opponent ; nay the words of the latter were most untrue.

The pleasures of the understanding are more preferable than that of the imagination or of sense.

His work is perfect ; his brother's more perfect ; and his father's the most perfect of all.

The nightingale sings, hers is the most sweetest voice in the grove.

It is more easier to build two chimneys than to maintain one.

The most Highest hath created us for his own glory.

## RULE XXV.

Adjectives and Adverbs when comparatives, and the word *other* require *than* after them, but Superlatives have *of* and not *other*, and are used when more than two things are compared : as, "He is a better writer than I ;" "It was no other than he ;" "John is the wisest of the three."

Inaccuracies are often found in the way in which the degrees of comparison are applied and construed. The following are examples of wrong construction in this respect : 'This noble nation hath of all others admitted fewer corruptions.' The word *fewer* is here construed precisely as if it were the Superlative ; it should be, 'hath admitted fewer corruptions than any other.' The word *other* which belongs only to Comparatives, should never be used in a Superlative sense. The Comparative degree should generally be employed when only two things are compared : as, 'This is the weaker of the two ;' and the Superlative when more than two are compared : as, 'James is the strongest of them all.' Several good Grammarians, however, are of opinion that when two objects are not so much opposed to each other as to require *than* before the last, that the Superlative should be employed, and not the Comparative : as, 'Maria is the handsomest of the two.' The Super-

lative is often certainly more agreeable in sound, and in some cases a very strict adherence to a Comparative form, makes a sentence stiff and disagreeable.

A comparison in which more than two persons or things are concerned, may be expressed in as proper a manner by the Comparative as the Superlative. The Comparative considers the object of comparison as appertaining to different sorts; but the Superlative considers them as included under one species. Thus the Comparative: 'Homer is a better Poet than any other of the ancients.' Homer here stands alone, opposed to all other ancient Poets. He was none of them, and was better than they. The same thought may be expressed by the Superlative, when the word *other* is omitted: as, 'Homer is the best Poet of any of the ancients.' Homer has in this sentence the highest place in the species of objects with whom he is numbered.

The Conjunction *than* should be used after Comparatives whether Adjectives or Adverbs, and also after the word *other*, and not *but*. The following sentences are erroneous in this respect: 'To trust in him is no more *but* to acknowledge his power.' 'This is no other *but* the gate of Paradise.' In these sentences it should be *than* and not *but*.

### EXERCISES ON RULE XXV.

A talent of this kind would perhaps prove the likeliest of any other to succeed.

There were three Theatres in this city, and it was the smaller of these was burnt.

He spoke with so much propriety, that I understood him the best of all others, who spoke on the subject.

He has little more of the scholar but the name.

You whipped this bad boy and it is no more but what he deserves.

Eve was the fairest of all her daughters.

The sun was no sooner risen but they went on their journey.

He is the strongest of the two, but not the wisest.

He gained nothing farther by this cunning, but to be praised for his acuteness.

Those savage people seem to have no other element but war.

## RULE XXVI.

One Substantive governs another (signifying a different thing,) in the Possessive case : as, " My father's house ;" " Man's happiness." A Noun also governs a Pronoun, and the Imperfect Participle in the Possessive case : as, " Virtue has *its* reward ;" " This person's dismissing his servant is ungenerous."

When the annexed Substantive signifies the same thing as the first, there is no variation of case : as, ' Pompey contended with Cesar, the greatest general of his time.' ' Tully or Cicero, was one of the greatest orators, and also patriots, Rome ever possessed.' ' Religion the comfort of the mind, and support of adversity, adorns prosperity.' Nouns thus circumstanced are said to be *in apposition* to each other. Nouns or Pronouns *in apposition*, are not always in the Nominative case. They are sometimes in the Objective as in these sentences, ' They have forsaken *me* the fountain of living waters, and hewed them out *cisterns*, broken *cisterns* that can hold no water.' ' They elected *him* President and Commander in Chief.' When Nouns are connected by the Proposition *of*, or the mark of the Possessive *s*, or when separated by a Relative or Verb, they are not then *in apposition*, but in different cases. In this sentence, ' Pompey contended with Cesar *who was* the greatest General of his time.' The interposition of a Relative and Verb breaks the construction, and the word *General* is in the Nominative case. In this sentence, ' Julia was smit with the love of Varus, viz. of him I mentioned before.' The Relative and Verb when applied, take *him* out of the Possessive case : as, ' Julia was smit with the love of Varus, *who was* he I mentioned before.'

The Preposition *of* joined to a Substantive is not always equivalent to the Possessive case ; it is only so when the expression can be converted into a regular form of the Possessive case : we can say, ' The reward of virtue,' and ' Virtue's reward ;' but though it is proper to say, ' A crown of gold ;' we cannot convert the expression into the Possessive case, and say, ' Gold's crown.'

Sometimes a Substantive in the Possessive case stands alone, the latter one by which it is governed, being understood : as, ' I called at the bookseller's,' i. e. at ' the bookseller's shop.'

If several Nouns come together in the Possessive case, the apostrophe with *s* is annexed to the first, and understood to the

rest : as, ' John and Eliza's books ;' ' This is my father, mother, and uncle's advice.' But when any words intervene, the sign of the Possessive should be annexed to each : as, ' They are John's as well as Eliza's books ;' ' I had the Physician's, the Surgeon's, and the Apothecary's assistance.'

In Poetry the additional *s* is frequently omitted, but the apostrophe retained in the same manner as in Substantives of the plural number ending in *s* : as, ' Achilles' wrath so dire.' This seems not so allowable in prose ; which the following erroneous examples will demonstrate ; ' Moses' minister ;' ' Phinchas' wife ;' ' Festus came into Felix' room ;' ' These answers were made to the witness' questions.' But in cases which would give too much of the *hissing* sound, the omission takes place even in Prose : as, ' For righteousness' sake ;' ' For conscience' sake.' This *hissing* sound is caused by the letter *s* beginning the next word after one that ends in *s* or has the sound of it : as in the two examples above, and in such phrases as, ' For Francis' sake ;' ' Moses' servant Joshua ;' ' Jesus' saints shall rise first ;' ' For Herodias' sake ;' ' The wrath of Peleus' son.' It may seem strange that Murray should have committed an error with regard to, ' Herodias' sake ;' since there appears to be no difference between this phrase, and ' For righteousness' sake.'

A phrase in which the words are so connected and dependent, as to admit of a pause before the conclusion, (especially when this connexion is made by the Proposition *of*;) requires the sign of the Possessive at or near the end of the phrase : as, ' Whose prerogative is it ?' ' It is the King of Great Britain's.' ' That is the Duke of Bridgewater's canal ;' ' The Bishop of Landaff's excellent book ;' ' The Lord Mayor of London's authority ;' ' The Captain of the guard's house.'

When one or more epithets or titles appertaining to a Noun precede it, the Possessive sign ought to be prefixed to the Noun, and not to the epithets or titles : as, ' The great Emperor Leopold's territories ;' ' The grand Sultan Mahomet's palace.'

When only one epithet *in apposition* follows a Noun, the Possessive sign ought generally to be prefixed to it : as, ' Dionysius the tyrant's cruelty ;' ' For David my servant's sake ;' ' Give me John the Baptist's head ;' ' Paul the Apostle's advice.'

But when more than one epithet or title are *in apposition* placed after a Noun, it appears requisite that the Possessive sign should be applied only to the first or principal Noun, and be understood to the others : as, ' I reside at Lord Stormont's, my old friend and benefactor.' ' Whose glory did he emulate ?

He emulated Cesar's, the greatest General of antiquity.' 'These Psalms are David's, the King, Priest, and Prophet of the Jewish people.' 'We staid a month at Lord Lyttleton's, the ornament of his country, and the friend of every virtue.' We shall perceive the propriety of this rule, if we annex the Possessive sign, to the end of the last clause in the above examples: 'Whose glory did he emulate? He emulated Cesar, the greatest General of antiquity's; 'These Psalms are David, the King, Priest, and Prophet of the Jewish people's.' It appears in these sentences, that the connecting possessive sign is placed too remote to be either perspicuous or agreeable. It is much better to say, 'This is Paul's advice, the Christian Hero and great Apostle of the Gentiles;' than 'This is Paul the Christian Hero and great Apostle of the Gentile's advice.' The application of the Possessive sign, to more than one of the Nouns in apposition, would be very harsh and displeasing, and also often incorrect: as, 'The Emperor's Leopold's;' 'King Charles's the second's;' 'The parcel was left at Smith's the bookseller's and stationer's.'

Substantives govern Pronouns as well as Nouns in the Possessive case: as, 'Goodness brings *its* reward;' 'That desk is *mine*.'

The Pronoun *his* when detached from the Noun to which it relates, is to be considered not as a Possessive Pronoun, but as the Genitive case of the Personal Pronoun: as, 'Whose book is that? *His*.' If we used the Noun itself, we should say, 'This book is John's.' This position will be more evident when we consider that both the Pronouns in the following sentences must have a similar construction: 'Is it *her* or *his* honor that is tarnished?' 'It is not *hers* but *his*.'

A Substantive or Pronoun frequently governs the Imperfect or Present Participle in the Possessive case. Thus instead of saying, 'What is the reason of this person dismissing his servant so hastily;' we ought to say, 'What is the reason of this person's dismissing his servant so hastily.' So we also say improperly, 'I remember it being reckoned a great exploit;' but we ought to say, 'I remember *its* being reckoned, &c.' The following sentence is correct and proper: 'Much will depend on the *pupil's composing* but more on *his reading* frequently.' It would not be correct to say, 'Much will depend on the *pupil composing*, &c.' We also properly say, 'This will be the effect of the *pupil's composing* frequently;' instead of, 'Of the *pupil composing* frequently.'

The English Possessive has often an unpleasant sound; so that we often make use of the Particle *of* instead of it, to express the same relation. There is something awkward in

the following sentences, in which this method has not been taken : ' The General in the army's name published a declaration ;' ' The Commons' vote ;' ' The Lord's house ;' ' Unless he is very ignorant of the kingdom's condition.' It were certainly better to say, ' In the name of the army ;' ' The votes of the Commons ;' ' The house of Lords ;' ' The condition of the kingdom.' It is also rather harsh to use two Possessives with the same Substantive : as, ' Whom he acquainted with the Pope's and the King's pleasure ;' ' The pleasure of the Pope and of the King,' would have been better.

We sometimes meet with three Substantives dependent on one another, and connected by the Preposition *of* applied to each of them : as, ' The severity of the distress of the son of the King touched the nation.' We have a striking instance of this laborious mode of expression in the following sentence : ' Of some of the books of each of these classes of literature, a catalogue will be given, at the end of the work.'

In some cases we use both the Possessive termination and the Preposition *of* : as, ' It is a discovery of Sir Isaac Newton's.' Sometimes indeed, unless we throw the sentence into another form this method is absolutely necessary, in order to distinguish the sense and to give the idea of property, strictly so called, which is the most important of the relations expressed by the Possessive case : for the expressions, ' This Picture of my friend ;' and ' This Picture of my friend's ;' suggest very different ideas, the latter only is that of property in the strictest sense. The idea would doubtless be conveyed in a better manner by saying : ' This Picture belonging to my friend.'

When the double Genitive, as some Grammarians term it, is not necessary to distinguish the sense, and especially in a grave style, it is generally omitted. Except to prevent ambiguity, it seems to be allowable only in cases which suppose the existence of a plurality of subjects of the same kind. In these expressions, ' A subject of the Emperor's ;' ' A sentiment of my brother's ;' more than one subject and one sentiment are supposed to belong to the possessor. But when this plurality is neither intimated nor necessarily supposed, the double genitive, except as before mentioned, should not be used : as, ' This house of the Governor is very commodious ;' ' The crown of the King was stolen ;' ' That privilege of the scholar was never abused.' But after all that can be said for this double genitive, some Grammarians think that it would be better to avoid the use of it altogether, and to give the sentiment another form of expression.

In many cases it is better and more elegant to use *to*, than either *of* or the sign of the Possessive : as, ' He is brother to the King of France ;' instead of, ' He is brother of the King



of France,' or 'The King of France's brother.' It is better to say, 'I am an enemy *to* idleness,' than 'I am an enemy of idleness;' 'He was a witness *to* this deed,' rather than, 'He was a witness *of* this deed;' 'She is niece *to* the Governor,' rather than, 'She is niece *of* the Governor.' Little explanatory circumstances are particularly awkward between a Possessive case and the word which usually follows it: as, 'She began to extol the farmer's, as she called him excellent understanding;' it ought to be, 'The excellent understanding of the Farmer, as she called him.'

From the foregoing observations, we may learn, that we should use the sign of the Possessive, or the Prepositions *of* or *to*, as we judge they would render a sentence perspicuous and agreeable.

### EXERCISES ON RULE XXVI.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A man's manner's influence his fortune.  | The captain's and mate's and seamen's exertions, were the means under Providence of the ship's and cargo's being saved. |
| These Lady's formed themselves into a society called the Ladies's society.     | They are John as well as Maria's books.   |
| The boxes lid is broken.   | This measure gained the King as well as people's approbation.   |
| Both box's lids are broken.  | We should be subject to conscience sake.  |
| The anniversary of King William's and Queen Mary's accession to the throne.    | Alexander the Great, his history was written by Curtius.  |
| This house was Joseph's and Robert's property.                                 | He was reading King James's the first's history.  |
| On the trial the Judge and Jury's sentiments were at variance.                 | Augustus's Senate durst not deny him in any thing he desired.   |
| Not only the counsel and attorney, but the Judge's opinion favoured his cause. |   |

This tent was covered with ass's skins.

For Herodias's sake his brother Philips's wife.

I left the work at Jones' the printer's and book-binder's.

I was then at Lord Belville's, my friend, patron and benefactor's.

This palace was the Grand Vizir's Selim's.

He took refuge at the Governor the Kings representative.

Whose works are these ?

They are Cicero the most eloquent of men's.

The world's government is not left to chance.

She married my son's wife's brother's son.

This is my wife's brother's partner's house.

This estate of the corporation's is much incumbered.

It was necessary to have both the physician's and the surgeon's advice.

The extent of the prerogative of the King of England is sufficiently ascertained.

That picture of the King's does not much resemble him.

These pictures of the King were sent to him from Italy.

The time of William making the experiment at length arrived.

Such will ever be the bad effect of youth associating with vicious company.

The bomb shell burst, and it bursting caused the ship to take fire.

They obeyed the Protector's, as they called him, imperious mandates.

## RULE XXVII.

The Verb *to be* has a Nominative before and after it, except when it has a Possessive, and in the infinitive mood, and when a Verb or Preposition governs the Objective : " I am he ;" " It is his book ;" " I took it to be him ;" " It is me he struck ;" " It was him he gave this to."



When *to be* is understood it follows the same rule : as, 'He seems the leader of a party,' supply '*to be* the leader, &c.'

Murray has asserted that the two cases which are before and after the Verb *to be*, in all its variations, must be alike. But this will not hold always, as in this example : 'John is to marry her.' John is here a Nominative and her the Objective ; and in, 'It is Charles's book,' a Nominative is before it, and a Possessive after it.

There is perhaps no criterion by which to determine, whether we should say, 'It seems to have been *he*, who conducted himself so wisely,' or, 'It seems to have been *him* who, &c.' except that the Infinitive mood generally governs the Objective case, and should in the Verb *to be*, as in other Verbs.

Passive Verbs of naming, appointing, judging, &c. have generally a Nominative before and after them : as, 'He was called Cesar ;' 'The General was saluted Emperor ;' 'The professor is appointed tutor to the Prince ;' 'He was adjudged a thief.' Some Neuter Verbs have a Nominative after them : as, 'He became the *slave* of his depraved passion ;' 'He died a *martyr* for the true Religion.' The Verbs, to become, die, live, seem, appear, expect, go, grow, look, return, wander, roam, and some others, seem of this kind.

There are some words that form a Compound Verb with *to be*, that seem a kind of Adjective, as *aware* and *wont*. They are never used except with *to be* and should be esteemed Verbs ; and thus, '*Beware* thou,' and '*be* thou *aware*,' appear to have the same meaning.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XXVII.

It is me and not him.

You may be afraid for it  
is him indeed.

It was him and not them  
who did it.

If I were him I would  
take more care again.

She is so like her sister  
that at first sight I took  
it to be she.

It was not us, who did it.

After all their professions  
is it possible to be they  
who did that base action

I do not imagine it to have  
been thou, who stole  
my watch.

If it was not him, who do  
you imagine it to have  
been.

Who do you think him  
to be.

Whom do the people say  
that we are.

So then it is to be thou  
who is to build this  
edifice.

This is the man who it  
was said to have been.

The man who I under-  
stood it to have been is  
now come.

Search the Scriptures for  
they are them which  
testify of me.

### RULE XXVIII.

Active Verbs govern the Objective case : as,  
“ They support *us* ; ” “ Truth ennobles *her* ; ”  
“ *Whom* I love I serve ; ” “ Virtue rewards *her*  
*followers*. ”

In English the Nominative case, denoting the subject, usually goes before the Verb ; and the Objective case denoting the object, follows the Verb Active ; and it is this order that determines the case in *Nouns* : as, ‘ Alexander conquered the Persians. ’ But the *Pronoun* having a proper form for each of those cases, is sometimes, when it is in the Objective case, placed before the Verb, and when it is in the Nominative case follows the object and Verb : as, ‘ *Whom* ye ignorantly worship, *him* declare I unto you. ’

This position of the Pronoun sometimes occasions its proper case and government to be neglected as in the following instance : ‘ Who should I esteem more than the wise and good ; ’ ‘ Who should I see there but my old friend ; ’ ‘ Whosoever the event favors. ’ In these places it ought to be *whom*, the Relative being governed in the Objective case by the Verbs, esteem, see, favor : ‘ He who has the boldness to speak truth choose for thy friend ; ’ it should be *him* who, &c. ’

Verbs Neuter do not generally act upon or govern Nouns and Pronouns : ‘ He sleeps, they muse, ’ are not transitive. They are not therefore followed by an Objective case specifying the object of an action. But when this case or an object of action comes after such Verbs, though it may carry the appearance of being governed by them, it is affected by a Preposition or some other word understood : as, ‘ He resided there many years ; ’ [that is *for* or *during* many years.] ‘ He rode several miles ; ’ [that is *through* the space of several miles.]

In the phrases ‘ To dream a dream ; ’ ‘ To live a virtuous life ; ’ ‘ To run a race ; ’ ‘ To walk the horse ; ’ ‘ To dance the



You have reason to dread  
his wrath which will  
one day destroy both  
thou and she.

He who was so good to  
thee, thou hast killed.

He and they we know,  
but who are you.

He who committed the  
offence, thou shouldst  
correct, not I who am  
innocent.

He invited his brother and  
I to see and examine  
his library.

It is determined that Pub-  
lius is to kill only she.

Who can we so justly  
love, as they who have  
endeavoured to make  
us wise and happy.

They who he had most  
injured, he had the  
greatest reason to love.

Who I love I will choose,  
and thou only have I  
chosen.

Who did they entertain so  
freely ?

That is the friend who  
you must receive cor-  
dially, and who you  
cannot too highly es-  
teem.

Who should I meet but  
my old friend.

Whoever he meets, he  
accosts.

Who shall we send thi-  
ther ?

Whosoever the King fa-  
vours is safe.

Ambitious men, always  
strive to aggrandize.

I must premise with this  
circumstance.

He will one day repent  
him of such vile indul-  
gences.

I shall endeavour to agree  
the parties.

Being very weary he sat  
him down.

## RULE XXIX.

Certain Neuter Verbs denoting motion and change, admit of a Passive form, particularly come, go, become, grow, fall, and return : as, " I am come, I was gone, I am fallen," &c. but such Verbs as, " Cease, swerve, agree, amount, enter, desert," &c. should not be used in a Passive form.

The Neuter Verb is varied like the Active, but having in some degrees the nature of the Passive, it admits in many instances of the Passive form, retaining still the Neuter signification, chiefly in such Verbs as signify some sort of motion or change of condition. It would be improper therefore to say, 'I *have* fallen,' 'He *has* become, &c.' instead of 'I *am* fallen,' 'He *was* become, &c.' Yet we may say either, 'I *have* returned,' or 'I *am* returned.'

The following are some examples, which are erroneous, in giving the Neuter Verb a Passive form instead of an Active one, 'The rule of our holy religion from which we *are* infinitely *swerved*.' 'The obligation of that covenant *was* also *ceased*.' 'Whose number *was* now *amounted* to three hundred.' 'This Marshall *was entered* into a conspiracy against his master.' 'At the end of the campaign, when half the men *are deserted* or killed.' It should be *have swerved* ; *had ceased*, &c.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XXIX.

If such practices prevail, what has become of virtue.	I have come according to the time proposed ; but I have fallen upon an evil hour.
The influence of his bad example was then ceased.	He was entered into the connexion before the consequences were con- sidered.
The mighty rivals are now at length agreed.	

#### RULE XXX.

One Verb governs another in the Infinitive mood : as, "Cease *to do* evil ;" "We should be prepared *to render* an account of our actions."

The *to* of the Infinitive is omitted after the Verbs durst, dare, know, let, make, have, hear, see, need, bid, feel, please, behold, perceive and observe.

The English Infinitive mood, is made by prefixing *to*, to a Verb. Some writers seem to think the *to* an Adverb, but Lowth, Murray, and others, with more propriety, consider it

as a Preposition. Though the Infinitive is commonly an adjunct to some Finite Verb, yet it may be governed by all the other parts of speech or by another Infinitive.

By Substantives, Adjectives and Participles : as, ' This boy had great *anxiety to learn* fast ; ' ' He was *eager to improve*.'

By a Pronoun : as, ' I found *her* to be deceitful.'

By Conjunctions when it follows *as* and *than* : ' A question so intricate *as* to perplex him.' ' They wished for nothing more *than* to know his business.'

By Prepositions, Adverbs and Interjections : as, ' I was *about* to write ; ' ' He knows *how* to write very well ; ' ' O to forget her.'

By a Verb in the Infinitive : as, ' To cease to do evil.'

Among early English writers, the Infinitive was often preceded by *for* as well as *to* which is sometimes found in Shakespeare, and often in the Bible, as in Acts xxiv. ' I went up to Jerusalem *for* to worship.' It is sometimes in use even yet, though unnecessary. The Infinitive is often used independent of the rest of the sentence : as, ' To confess the truth, I was in fault.' ' To proceed,' ' To conclude,' &c. that is ' That I may confess, &c.'

The Infinitive of the Verb *be* is often understood : as, ' I supposed it *necessary*,' supply ' *to be necessary*.'

After please, the *to* should generally be omitted : as, ' Please give it to me ; ' ' Please excuse me ; ' not ' Please *to* give it to me,' &c.

The *to* of the Infinitive, is usually put after the Passives of the Verbs, *durst*, &c. excepted in the rule, except *let* : as, ' I was made *to* go there unwillingly.' ' He was *let* run his course of vice.' It is sometimes used after the Active voice in the Past Tense, especially of *have* : as, ' I had *to* give him money.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE XXX.

You ought not walk too hastily.	He did not wish obtrude his company on us.
I wish him not wrestle with his happiness.	I need not to solicit him to do a good action.
We ought forgive our enemies.	I dare not to proceed so hastily.

- I have seen some young persons to conduct themselves very discreetly.
- Did you not observe him to turn pale.
- She bade him to go away home.
- It is better live on a little than outlive a great deal.
- It is the difference of their conduct, which makes us to approve the one, and to reject the other.
- He made one to believe this fiction.
- Darest thou to leap into the tide, and to swim to yonder point.
- You beheld us to retreat from the field.
- I heard him to tell it yesterday;
- I have known him to kill two foxes in one day.
- He felt a numbness to creep over the arm that was hurt.
- Do you perceive it to move.
- Please to forbid this hasty marriage.
- Let me now to go home.

### RULE XXXI.

In the use of words which in point of time relate to each other, a due regard to that relation should be observed, and the proper tense used. Thus instead of saying, "I remember the family more than twenty years;" we should say, "*I have* remembered the family, &c."

It is not easy to give particular rules for the management of the Moods and Tenses of Verbs with respect to one another, so that they may be proper and consistent. The best rule that can be given is this very general one: "To observe what the sense necessarily requires."

It may however be of use to give a few examples of irregular construction: "The blind man said unto him Lord that *I might* receive my sight;" "If by any means *I might* attain unto the resurrection of the dead;" "may," in both these places would have been better. "I feared that I should have lost it before I arrived at the city;" "should lose it." "I had



rather walk ;' it should be, ' I would rather walk.' ' It would have afforded me no satisfaction if I could performed it ;' it should be, ' if I could *have* performed it ;' or ' It would afford me no satisfaction if I *could* perform it.' ' On the morrow because he should have known the certainty wherefore he was accused of the Jews he loosed him ;' it ought to be ' he *would* know,' or rather, ' *being* willing to know.'

To preserve consistency in the tenses of Verbs we must recollect that in the Subjunctive mood the Present and Imperfect Tense, often carry with them a Future sense ; and that the Auxiliaries *should* and *would*, in the Imperfect Tense, are used to express the Present and the Future as well as the Past.

Mistakes are often made in the use of the Future and other Tenses in cases of simple suppositions : as, ' I shall go to the country to morrow if it *shall* be fair weather ;' instead of, ' if it be fine weather.' ' You would have seen the King, if you would come ;' instead of, ' if you had come.' Therefore the following rules seem to be a guide in many cases, viz : That the Present Tense should follow the First Future : as, ' I shall go to morrow if it *be* fine weather.' The Perfect Tense, the Second Future : as, ' He will have had the advantage, if he *has followed* our directions.' The Imperfect of the Indicative, the Imperfect of the Potential Passive : as, ' I would be pleased, if I *saw* you industrious.' The Pluperfect of the Indicative, the Pluperfect Passive of the Potential : as, ' I should have been pleased, if I *had seen* you studious.'

In declarations which are *true* at all times, or supposed to be so, the Present Tense, and not the Past should be used : as, ' The Bishop declared virtue *is* always advantageous ;' not ' *was*.' But if the affirmation refers to something not always the same, the Past Tense should be applied : as, ' George said that he *was* happy ;' not ' *is*.' ' He protested that he believed what *was* said, because it *appeared* probable.'

Sentences may occur however, in which both the Past and the Present Tenses may be with propriety combined : as, ' He declared he *was* afraid of no man, because conscious innocence *gives* (not gave) firmness of mind.' Since two different tenses may in some cases be used with propriety in a sentence : the following line of Pope, which has been so much censured by many, appears not to be wrong :

' The Cretan *pierced* him as he *mounts* his car.'

The Perfect Tense is often improperly substituted for the Imperfect, as in speaking of a person dead, some say : ' He *has been* eminently useful,' instead of, ' He *was* eminently useful.' In the *Spectator* we find this tense improperly used : ' I have met with the epitaph of a charitable man, which *has*



much pleased me ;' it ought to be, ' which much pleased me ;' or ' did much please me.'

In cases where questions are answered, the Imperfect Tense should generally be used and not the Present : as, ' Jesus answered and said ;' not ' answers and says.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE XXXI.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Be wise and good that you might be happy.   | The work has been finished last week.   |
| I had rather stay than walk so far.   | In this Cathedral is preserved for upwards of 600 years, a dish, which they say is made of emerald. |
| Be that as it will, he cannot justify his conduct.  | They maintained that scripture conclusion, that all mankind rise from one head.                     |
| I should be obliged to him, if he will gratify me in that.                                | He has been at London a year, and seen the King last winter.  |
| The next new years day I shall be at school three years.                                  | John will earn his wages when his service is compleated.  |
| He has been formerly disorderly, but this year, as yet, he was very regular.              | After we visited London, we returned to our quiet cottage.  |
| And he that was dead sat up and began to speak.   | May it not be expected that he would have defended an authority so long exercised.                  |
| I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days.         | I should have been well pleased to see you successful in that business.                             |
| I did not think that he would have done this, but I am mistaken.                          | The Doctor said that fever always produced thirst.  |
| Her sea sickness was so great that I often feared she would have died before our arrival. |   |

## RULE XXXII.

All Verbs expressive of hope, desire, intention, or command, must be followed by the Present and not the Perfect of the Infinitive mood : as, "I intended *to write you*," not "*to have written you* ;" but some other Verbs may be followed by the Perfect : as, "He appeared *to have been* dead some time."

Verbs of the Infinitive mood in the following form : 'To write,' and 'to be written,' always denote something *contemporary* with the time of the governing Verb, or *subsequent to it* ; but when Verbs of that mood are expressed as follows : 'To have been writing,' 'To have written,' and 'To have been written ;' they always denote something *antecedent* to the time of the governing Verb. This remark is thought to be of importance ; for if duly attended to, it will in most cases, be sufficient to direct us in the Relative application of these sentences.

The following sentence is properly and analogically expressed : 'I found him better than I expected to find him.' 'Expected *to have found* him,' is irreconcilable alike to grammar and to sense. Every person would perceive an error in this expression : 'It is long since I commanded him *to have done it*.' Yet 'expected *to have found*,' is no better. It is as clear that the *finding* must be posterior to the expectation, as that the *obedience* must be posterior to the command.

In the sentence which follows, the Verb is with propriety put in the Perfect Tense of the Infinitive mood : 'It would have afforded me great pleasure as often as I reflected upon it *to have been* the messenger of such intelligence.' As the message in this instance was antecedent to the pleasure and not contemporary with it, the Verb expressive of the message must denote that antecedence, by being in the Perfect of the Infinitive. If the message and the pleasure had been referred to as contemporary, the subsequent Verb would, with equal propriety, have been put in the Present of the Infinitive : as, 'It would have afforded me great pleasure *to be* the messenger of such intelligence.' In the former instance the phrase in question is equivalent to these words : 'If I *had been* the messenger ;' in the latter instance to this expression : 'Being the messenger.'

In support of the positions advanced under this rule, we can produce the sentiments of eminent Grammarians, amongst whom are Lowth and Campbell. But there are some writers on Grammar who strenuously maintain, that the governed Verb

in the Infinitive ought to be in the Past Tense, when the Verb which governs it is in the Past Tense. Though this cannot be admitted in the instances which are controverted under this rule, or in any instances of a similar nature, yet there can be no doubt that, in many cases, in which the thing referred to, preceded the governing Verb, it would be proper and allowable. We may say : ' From a conversation I once had with him, he *appeared to have studied* Homer with great care and judgement.' It would be proper also to say, ' From his conversation *he appears to have studied* Homer with great care and judgement.' ' That unhappy man *is supposed to have died* by violence.' These examples are not only consistent with our rule, but they confirm and illustrate it. It is the Tense of the governing Verb only that marks what is called the Absolute time ; the Tense of the Verb governed, marks solely its Relative time, with respect to the other.

As many Verbs admit after them the Perfect as well as the Present of the Infinitive, the following rule may be a guide when it is to be used : ' When the action signified by a Verb in the Infinitive, is Present or Future with respect to the Verb to which it is related, the Present of the Infinitive is required ; when not Present or Future, the Perfect is necessary.' To apply this rule we have only to consider whether the Infinitive refers to a time antecedent Present or Future with regard to the governing Verb, and the form which the Infinitive should have will be easily ascertained. If I wish to signify that I rejoiced at a particular time in recollecting the sight of a friend, some time having intervened between the seeing and the rejoicing, I should express myself thus : ' I rejoiced to have seen my friend.' The seeing in this case was evidently antecedent to the rejoicing and therefore the Verb which expresses the former must be in the Perfect of the Infinitive. The same meaning may be expressed in a different form, ' I rejoiced that I had seen my friend,' or ' in having seen my friend ;' and the propriety of a doubtful point of this nature may be tried by converting the phrase into its correspondent forms of expression.

But if I wish to signify that I rejoice at the sight of my friend, and that my joy and his presence were contemporaneous, I should say, ' I rejoiced to see my friend ;' and the correctness of the form of the Imperfect may also be tried by a correspondent form of expression : as, ' I rejoiced in seeing my friend.'

As the Verbs ' to desire,' and ' to wish,' are nearly related, it may be supposed that the latter Verb like the former must be followed by the Present of the Infinitive. But if we reflect that the act of desiring refers always to the Future, and that the act of wishing refers sometimes to the Past, as well as to the Future, we will perceive that the following modes of

expression are justifiable : 'I wish that I had written sooner ;' 'I wished to have written sooner;' 'I wished that I had written sooner;' and that the following phrases are improper : 'I desire to have written sooner ;' 'I desire that I had written sooner.' In regard to the Verb *wish*, however, it would often be better to give the expression a different form. Thus instead of saying, 'I then wished to have written him sooner ;' 'He will one day wish to have written sooner ;' it would be more perspicuous and forcible, as well as more agreeable to the practice of good writers to say, 'I then wished that I had written him sooner ;' 'He will one day wish that he had written sooner.' Should the justness of these strictures be admitted there would still be numerous occasions for the use of the Past Infinitive ; as we may perceive by a few examples : 'It would ever after have been a source of pleasure, to have found him wise and virtuous ;' 'To have deferred his repentance longer would have disqualified him for repenting at all ;' 'They will then see, that to have faithfully performed their duty, would have been their greatest consolation.'

To assert as some writers do, that Verbs in the Infinitive mood have no Tenses, no Relative distinctions of Present, Past and Future is inconsistent with just Grammatical views of the subject. That these Verbs associate with Verbs in all the Tenses is no proof of their having no peculiar time of their own. Whatever period the governing Verb assumes, whether Present, Past or Future, the governed Verb in the Infinitive always respects that period, and its time is calculated from it. Thus the time of the Infinitive may be before, after, or the same as the time of the governing Verb, according as the thing signified by the Infinitive, is supposed to be before, after, or present, with the thing denoted by the governing Verb. It is therefore with great propriety that Tenses are assigned to Verbs of the Infinitive mood. The point of time from which they are computed is of no consequence ; since Present, Past and Future are completely applicable to them.

The Defective Verb *ought*, may be used either with the Present or Perfect of the Infinitive. We may say, 'He ought to do it,' or 'He ought to have done it.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE XXXII.

I hoped to have seen my friend before his departure, but did not.

I desired to have written him sooner.

His enemies were disappointed, whilst they expected to have found an opportunity to have betrayed him.

I always intended to have rewarded my son according to his merits.

He ordered me to have done this work before he returned.

We have done no more than was our duty to have done.

It was a pleasure to have received his approbation of my labors.

It would have afforded still greater pleasure to receive his approbation at an earlier period, but to receive it at all reflects credit upon me.

From his making Latin verses, he appeared to study Virgil with great attention.

To be censured by him would soon have proved an insuperable discouragement.

These prosecutions of William seem to be the most iniquitous measures pursued by the court, during the time of Parliaments being suspended.

It required so much care, that I thought I should have lost it before I reached home.

He would not have been permitted to have entered this mansion.

I commanded him to have written you a week ago.

If these persons had intended to deceive, they would have taken care to have avoided exposing themselves to the objections of their opponents.

From the conversation I had with him, he appeared to have been a man of letters.

### RULE XXXIII.

Participles like the Verbs from which they are derived, govern the Objective case, and are governed by Prepositions : as, "I am weary *with* hearing him ;" "She is instructing us ;" "The tutor is admonishing Charles."

Not only the Present Participle of Active Verbs govern the Objective case, as in the example in the rule, but the Per-

fect Participle also : as, ' He has wounded me and run off ;' or ' Having wounded me he ran off.'

Prepositions also govern the Present Participle, as in the example in the rule, and they are often understood : as, ' By promising much and performing little, we become despicable ;' i. e. ' by performing, &c.'

The Participle with a Preposition and when accompanied by the Infinitive mood, may be considered as a Substantive phrase in the Objective case : as, ' He studied to avoid giving offence, by expressing himself too severely.'

The Participle should be carefully distinguished from the case Absolute. This case has always a Nominative and never governs the Objective case, though it is sometimes preceded by a Preposition : as, ' In the sun rising the shadows flee away.' And as it is independent of the rest of the sentence, it might be called : ' The Nominative case Absolute independent.'

A strange use of the Participle *being*, has lately been introduced by some Newspaper writers : as, ' The wounded soldiers *are being* carried to the hospital ;' ' The tent *is being* erected.' It would be more elegant to say, ' They are now carrying the wounded soldiers to the hospital ;' ' The tent is now erecting.'

Some late writers have said the Perfect Participles of certain Redundant Verbs ending in *ed*, are to be preferred to their others of the Secondary Conjugation, viz : ' to Clad, hewn, knelt, lit, sawn, mown, riven, shaven, shorn, thriven, and wrought ;' and that the Participles of the following Verbs of the Secondary Conjugation are to be preferred to their others in *ed*, viz : ' Burnt, past, bent, built, caught, dealt, dreamt, gilt, girt, knit, slit, striven, strung, dug, and wrung.' This opinion however, seems not much regarded, as these Participles are often used indiscriminately. In verse however, caught, gilded, clad, knelt, lit, shorn, hewn, swollen, and some others, seem much more used than in prose.

It seems strange, that though Verbs ending in *y* ought to have *i* in the Past Participle : as, ' *Dry, dried* ;' yet in most of the Psalms and Hymns printed at present, the *y* is retained : as,

" Trust for life in one that dy'd,  
In a Redeemer crucily'd."—Watts.

For *died* and *crucified*—this error should be rectified.

It has been remarked by certain writers that the names Imperfect and Perfect Participle, are more proper than *Present* and *Past* Participle. But since these terms are so well established in Grammar, no difficulty can arise from their use.



We have therefore sometimes used one and sometimes another of all these terms, that the learner may become familiar with them.

This rule about the government of Participles, has been said by some Grammarians to be superfluous, as it seems to be included in the rule, that Active Verbs govern the Objective. Yet it seems necessary to be considered separately ; to show the proper use of the Participle ; its being governed by Prepositions ; its being distinguished from the case Absolute, &c.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XXXIII.

Esteeming themselves wise they became fools.	but they also, I was studious to avoid all intercourse.
Knowing he to be my superior, I cheerfully submitted.	He seemed surprised at seeing we there.
From having exposed his- self too freely in hot climates he lost his health.	I could not avoid consi- dering in some degree they as enemies, and he as a suspicious friend.
Suspecting not only ye,	

#### RULE XXXIV.

The Imperfect or Present Participle is sometimes changed into a Substantive and has an article before it, and of after it : as, “ *By the observing of this rule you will be wise ;* ” “ *This was a betraying of his trust.* ”

This Rule arises from the nature and idiom of our language and from as plain a principle as any on which it is founded ; namely that a word which has the article before it and the Possessive Preposition *of* after it, must be a Noun ; and if a Noun it ought to follow the construction of a Noun, and not to have the regimen of a Verb. It is the Participial termination of this sort of words that is apt to deceive us and make us treat them as if they were of an amphibious species, partly Nouns and partly Verbs.

The following are a few examples of the violation of the rule : “ *He was sent to prepare the way by preaching of repentance.* ”

ance ; it would not be proper to say ' by *the* preaching repentance ;' but the phrase without either article or Preposition would be right : as, ' by preaching repentance ;' or with them: as, ' by *the* preaching *of* repentance.' ' They laid out themselves towards *the* advancing and promoting the good of it ;' should be ' towards advancing and promoting the good.' ' Keeping of one day in seven, &c. ;' ought to be, ' *The* keeping *of* one day,' or ' Keeping one day.'

A phrase in which the article precedes the Present Participle and the Possessive Preposition follows it, will not in every instance convey the same meaning as would be conveyed by the Participle without the article and Preposition : ' He expressed the pleasure he had in the hearing of the philosopher ;' is capable of a different sense from, ' He expressed the pleasure he had in hearing the philosopher.' When therefore we wish for the sake of harmony or variety, to substitute one of these phraseologies for the other, we should previously consider whether they are perfectly similar in the sentiment they convey.

Nouns and Pronouns in the Possessive case sometimes, (though not always) convert the Participle into a Substantive when placed before it, by requiring *of* after it. Though *of* seems proper in this sentence, ' Much depends upon *their* observing *of* the rule ;' yet in the following, ' By *his* studying the Scriptures, he became wise and good ;' *of* seems improper if inserted after the Participle. In this sentence *of* also would be improper : ' The time of William's making the experiment at length arrived.' Such a sentence as, ' Much depends upon Tyro's observing *of* the rule,' may pass, though the construction sounds rather harshly. In general where, Possessives precedes the Participle, it would be better to express the sentiment in another form, instead of saying, ' Much depends upon Tyro's observing *of* the rule ;' say ' Much depends on the rule's being observed ;' or, ' on observing it.' When the Participle is followed by a Preposition, *of* seems not admissible : as, ' Not attending to his business ruined him.'

Some Verbs that have *of* (which makes part of the Verb) appear not to be subject to this rule : as, ' disapprove *of*,' ' hear *of*,' ' participate *of*.' Where the Participle of such Verbs are used, the *article* must not be placed before : as, ' In hearing of the King's death, &c.' ' In disappointing him *of* the money promised, &c.'

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XXXIV.

By exercising of our reason we acquire wisdom.      The not following this advice ruined him.



- A man cannot be wise and good without the acquiring knowledge.
- The changing times and seasons, the removing and setting up Kings belong to Providence alone.
- This was in fact a converting the deposit to his own use.
- She was unhappy from the marrying of a man of bad principles.
- Poverty turns our attention too much upon supplying of our wants ; and riches upon enjoying of our superfluities.
- By the being scrupulous in keeping of your word you will gain a good name.
- Pliny speaking of Cato the Censor's disapproving the Grecian orators, expressed himself thus.
- The not attending to this rule led him into error.
- It was from our misunderstanding the directions that we lost our way.
- By his reading of books written by the best authors, he was greatly improved.

### RULE XXXV.

The Perfect Tense should not be used for the Past or Perfect Participle, nor the Past Participle for the Perfect Tense : as, " He has *wrote* me ; " for " He has *written* me. " " I *begun* the speech ; " for " I *began* the speech. "

As the Perfect Participle and the Imperfect Tense are often of different forms, care must be taken that they be not indiscriminately used ; it is frequently said, ' I was chose, ' for ' I was chosen ; ' ' I have eat, ' for ' I have eaten ; ' ' His words were interwove with sighs, ' ' were interwoven ; ' ' He would hare spoke, ' ' spoken ; ' ' He hath bore witness, ' ' borne ; ' ' The sun has rose, ' ' risen ; ' ' His constitution has been greatly shook, ' ' shaken. '

It is frequently said, ' He begun, ' for ' he began ; ' ' He run, ' for ' he ran ; ' ' He drunk, ' for, ' he drank ; ' ' He over-run his guide, ' for ' overran his guide ; ' the Participle being used instead of the Imperfect Tense.

There are some Imperfect Tenses, that are often substituted for the Perfect Participle, and such are marked in the list of Verbs with a \*. Many of the Imperfect Tenses : as '*wrote broke, spoke, &c.*' have been used by our best writers of the 18th century, as Participles ; and from their example the propriety of this rule in many instances might be disputed ; but Murray and almost all late Grammarians seem of opinion that such words should not be so employed.

## EXERCISES ON RULE XXXV.

They wished to have  
wrote him on the sub-  
ject.

They have chose the path  
of virtue.

If these events had not  
fell out so, I would  
have come.

He returned the watch  
that he had stole.

His vices have broke his  
health.

He had mistook his true  
interests, and found  
himself forsook by his  
friends.

The bread that has been  
ate, is soon forgot.

His garment had no seam  
and was wove through-  
out.

He had not yet wore off  
his rough manners.

I was showed St. Peter's  
Church.

I wish I had never knew  
him.

He has bore a part of all  
your fatigue.

They have underwent  
great drstress.

The French language is  
spoke in all Europe.

Your land has rose in  
value.

The Thames was twice  
froze this winter.

This Lord was trod to  
death in the gate.

This business was not  
well execute.

You have took improper  
liberties.

He was heated and drunk  
with avidity.

A second deluge learning  
thus o'er run,

And the Mouke finished  
what the Goths began.

Industry is wanting to	and so he done it.
make you rich.	I seen him in town yes-
He has swore solemnly he	terday.
will be revenged.	He talkt and stampt with
He said he would do it,	great vehemence.

### RULE XXXVI.

Adverbs require a proper situation in a sentence viz : Mostly before Adjectives and the Passive Participle ; but after Active and Neuter Verbs, and frequently between the Auxiliaries, as well as between the Auxiliary and the Verb : as, " He made a *very* sensible discourse ; he spoke *unaffectedly* and *forcibly*, and was *attentively* heard by the whole assembly."

A few instances of erroneous positions of Adverbs may serve to illustrate the rule : ' It is truth *really* ;' ' It is *really* truth ;' ' We *always* find them ready when we want them ;' ' We find them *always* ready, &c.' ' If thou art blessed naturally with a good memory, continually exercise it ;' ' naturally blessed ;' ' exercise it continually.' ' Dissertations on the prophecies which have remarkably been fulfilled ,' ' which have been remarkably.'

The Adverb should generally be placed before the Passive Participle, though sometimes between its Auxiliaries, as in the following examples, ' I was kindly received,' not ' received kindly.' ' He has *always* behaved with propriety,' not ' behaved always.'

The place of the Adverb, between the Auxiliaries, seems not easily determined, ' He has *generally* been reckoned an honest man ;' ' The book may *always* be had at such a place ;' is preferable to ' has been *generally* ;' ' and may be always.' ' These rules will be *clearly* understood after they have been *diligently* studied ;' is preferable to, ' These rules will clearly be understood after they have *diligently* been studied.'

Sometimes the Adverb is placed at a considerable distance after the Active or Neuter Verb ; and sometimes though not often, with propriety before it : as, ' He encouraged the English Barons to carry their opposition *farther* ;' ' They compelled him to declare, that he would abjure the realm for

*ever* ;' is better than 'to carry *farther* their opposition ;' 'and to abjure *for ever* the realm.' In the following sentences the Adverb is placed with propriety before the Verb : ' *Vice* *always* creeps by degrees upon us ;' 'The women *voluntarily* contributed all their rings and jewels to assist Government.'

The Adverb *there* is often used as an expletive, or as a word that adds nothing to the sense ; in which case it precedes the Verb and the Nominative Noun : as, ' *There* is a person at the door ;' ' *There* are some thieves in the house ;' which would be as well or better expressed by saying, 'A person is at the door ;' 'Some thieves are in the house.' Sometimes it is made use of to give a small degree of emphasis to the sentence : as, ' *There* was a man sent from God whose name was John.' When it is applied in its strict sense, it principally follows the Verb and Nominative case : as, 'The man stands *there*.'

In imitation of the French idiom, the Adverb of place *where* is often used instead of the Pronoun Relative and a Preposition : 'They framed a protestation *where* they repeated all their former claims ;' i. e. 'in *which* they repeated.' The compound Adverb *wherein*, in such like sentences would be preferable to *where*, or it would be better to avoid this mode of expression.

The Adverb *never* seems erroneously used for *ever*, in the phrases : 'Ask me *never* so much dowry ;' 'Charm he *never* so wisely.' In some instances, however, *ever* seems improperly put for *never* : as, 'It seldom or *ever* rains at Lima ;' for 'never rains.'

From the preceding remarks and examples, it appears that no exact and determinate rule can be given for the placing of Adverbs on all occasions. The general rule may be of considerable use ; but the easy flow and perspicuity of the phrase, are the things which ought to be chiefly regarded.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XXXVI.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| William nobly acted though he was unsuccessful.       | It cannot be impertinent or ridiculous therefore to remonstrate. |
| We may happily live though our possessions are small. | So well educated a boy gives great hopes to his friends.         |
| He seldom or ever visited London.                     | It is impossible continually to be at work.                      |

Unless he have more government of himself, he will always be discontented.

He was determined to invite back the King and call together his friends.

We always should prefer our duty to our pleasure.

The heavenly bodies are in motion perpetually.

My opinion was given on rather a cursory perusal of the case.

It is too common with mankind to be engrossed and overcome totally by present events.

### RULE XXXVII.

Negative Adverbs are generally placed before the Verb ; except *not* and *no* in Imperative sentences, and when a thing is denied : as, " He *never* went to the city ;" " Go *not* thither ;" " I hurt him *not*."

The Adverbs here meant are *no*, *not*, *nay*, and *never*. *Not* is placed after the Verb, when combined with only : as, ' He found her not only employed but pleased and tranquil also.' *Never* may often be placed after the auxiliary, though always before the Verb. *Nay* is often placed after the Verb, especially after *tell* and *say*.

A Verb is *negatively* conjugated, by placing the Adverb *not* after the Verb in the simple tenses, and after the *first* auxiliary in the compound ones, in all the moods except the Infinitive : as, ' I loved him not ;' ' He could not have loved her.'

A Verb is *interrogatively* and *negatively* conjugated by placing *not* after the first auxiliary, and also after the first Noun and Pronoun : as, ' Do I *not* love him ?' ' Might she *not* have been loved ?' ' Do I *not* love her ?' ' If she will *not* be loved ?'

*Not* is placed before *to* in the Infinitive mood : as, ' Not to love ;' ' Not to have been loved ;' ' Is she not to be loved ?'

*Not* is put before the Present Participle : as, ' Not having heard of this affair.'

## EXERCISES ON RULE XXXVII.

He was pleasing not often  
because he was vain.

He offered an apology  
which being not admitted,  
he became submissive.

These things should be  
never separated.

Never Sovereign was so  
much beloved by the  
people.

Not only he found his  
children in health, but  
pleased and happy.

He comes never at a pro-  
per time.

Having not known, or  
having not considered  
the means proposed,  
he failed of success.

I run never any of these  
risques.

Knowing not of the am-  
buscade, he was de-  
feated.

Were these sinners above  
all men? nay I tell  
you.

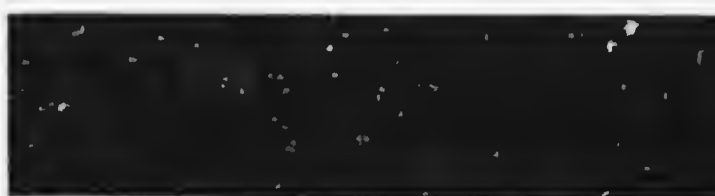
If I make my hands nev-  
er so clean, you will  
find fault.

## RULE XXXVIII.

Two Negatives in English are equivalent to an Affirmative, and generally improper: as, "He cannot read none;" means he can read some. They are however sometimes proper: as, "His language is not ungrammatical;" i. e. "it is grammatical."

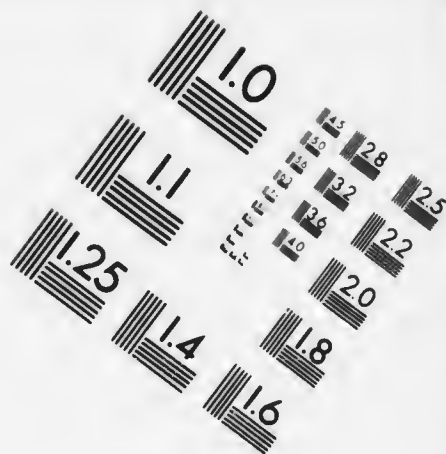
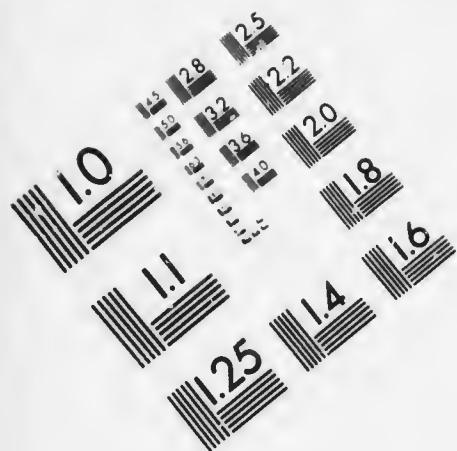
The repetition of such a negative: as, 'No, no, no;' strengthens a denial. But two different negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative: as, 'Nor did they not perceive their evil plight;' i. e. 'They did perceive it.' One of the negatives is often an initial syllable such as *im*, *in*, *un*, *dis*. The two negatives then commonly form a pleasing and delicate variety of expression.

Some writers however have improperly employed two negatives instead of one: as in the following instances, 'I never did repent of doing good, nor shall not now;' 'nor shall I now.' 'I cannot by no means allow him what his argument must prove;' 'I cannot by *any* means, &c.' or 'I can by no means.' 'Ariosto, Tasso, Galileo, *no more* than Raphael were *not* born in Republics;' 'Neither Ariosto, Tasso, nor Galileo, *any more* than Raphael was born in Republics.'

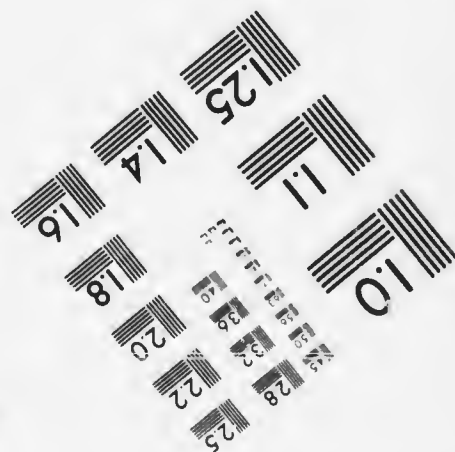
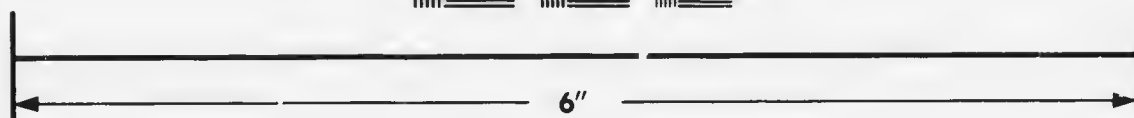
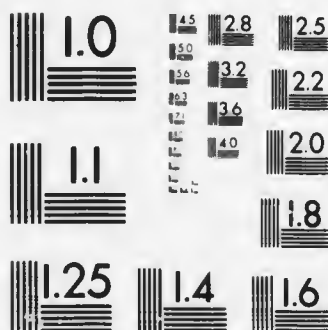








# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

8  
2.5  
2.2



## EXERCISES ON RULE XXXVIII.

- I cannot do no more work to day.
- I see you will never be no wiser.
- Love neither riches nor honors nor no such perishing things.
- Be honest nor take no shape nor semblance of disguise.
- After this notice, no claim will be admitted under no circumstances.
- I am resolved not to comply with the proposal neither at present nor at any other time.
- There cannot be nothing more insignificant than vanity.
- He shall get nothing no more than the rest.
- Nor let no comforter attempt to allay my grief.
- Nothing never affected her so much as this misconduct of her child.
- Do not interrupt me yourself, nor let no one disturb my retirement.
- We cannot by no means permit this measure to be done.
- Though my big dog looks fierce, yet he never bites nobody.
- Neither threatenings nor no promise could make him violate the truth.
- Precept nor discipline is not so forcible as example.
- I have received no information on the subject neither from him nor from his friend.
- They could not persuade him, though they were never so eloquent.

## RULE XXXIX.

When motion to or from a place is implied, the Adverbs *hither*, *thither*, and *whither* should be used, and not *here*, *there*, and *where* : as, "Whither are you going;" not, "where are you going." "Come hither quickly;" not "come here quickly."

When motion to a place is not implied, *here*, *there*, and *where* should be employed however, and not *hither*, *thither*,

and whither. Such expressions : as, ' Whither have you been ; ' are therefore improper, it should be ' where have you been. '

## EXERCISES ON RULE XXXIX.

The General is expected to come here to day. Bring those books here to me.

Where are you all running so fast. Whither have they all been.

James rode there in two hours. Where have they all gone.

I shall go there in a few days. Will he lodge thither.

He is expected hither to day.

Will he come here to day.

## RULE XL.

Adjectives should not be used for Adverbs, nor Adverbs for Adjectives : as, ' She reads *proper* ; ' for ' *properly*. ' ' He gave advice *suitably* to the occasion ; ' for ' *suitable*. '

Adjectives are sometimes improperly applied as Adverbs, which we shall give examples of, that the learner may see the impropriety of such application : as, ' Indifferent honest ; excellent well ; miserable poor ; ' for ' indifferently honest ; excellently well ; miserably poor. ' ' He behaved himself conformable to that great example ; ' ' conformably. ' ' Endeavour to live suitable to a person in your station ; ' ' suitably. ' ' I can never think so very mean of him ; ' ' meanly. ' ' He describes this river agreeable to the common reading ; ' ' agreeably. ' ' Agreeable to my promise I now write ; ' ' agreeably. ' ' He acted in this business bolder than was expected ; ' ' They behaved the *noblest* because they were disinterested ; ' these sentences should be, ' more boldly, ' ' most nobly. '

Murray says, when united to an Adjective, or Adverb, not ending in *ly*, the word *exceeding* has *ly* added to it : as, ' exceedingly dreadful ; exceedingly great ; exceedingly well ; exceedingly more active. ' But when it is joined to an Adverb or Adjective having that termination, the *ly* is omitted : as, ' some men think exceeding clearly and reason exceeding forcibly ; ' ' She appeared on this occasion exceeding lovely. ' Late Grammarians however dispute the propriety of this rule ;

for though it may often answer, in some instances it makes bad grammar : as in ' She appeared exceeding lovely ;' which should be, ' exceedingly lovely ;' for lovely is an Adjective, and should be qualified by the Adverb exceedingly. This sentence is as bad then, as to say : ' Extreme lovely,' for ' extremely lovely.' Two words succeeding each other ending in *ly*, are indeed disagreeable in sound, but it would be better to offend the ear, than write bad grammar, or rather avoid *exceedingly* altogether, and write *very* or some other word in its place.

Adverbs are likewise improperly used as Adjectives : as, ' The Tutor addressed him rather warmly, but in terms suitable to his offence ;' ' suitable.' ' They were seen wandering about solitarily and distressed ;' ' solitary.' ' He lived in a manner agreeably to the dictates of reason and religion ;' ' agreeable.' ' The study of Syntax should be previously to that of punctuation ;' ' previous.'

In many cases it is not easy for young persons to decide whether an Adjective or an Adverb should be used. To determine this, they ought to consider whether *quality* or *manner* is implied. An Adjective is proper in the former case, but an Adverb in the latter : the following examples will illustrate this ; thus, in the phrases, ' He is sincere,' quality is implied ; but ' He acts sincerely,' manner is denoted. In ' She always appears neat,' quality is intended ; but, ' She always dresses neatly,' manner is implied.

Adverbs may also be known from Adjectives, by their qualifying Verbs Adjectives and other Adverbs ; whereas Adjectives qualify Nouns and Pronouns only.

#### *Examples of Adverbs qualifying Verbs.*

The boys write well.  
John will soon learn.  
Maria sings sweetly.

They march quickly.  
Matthew reads finely.  
I walk fast.

#### *Adverbs qualifying Adjectives.*

You are quite busy.  
He is very grave.  
Peter is truly honest.

Jane is most amiable.  
Eliza is more amiable.  
James is often sad.

#### *Adverbs qualifying other Adverbs.*

This boy learns very well.  
I will come much oftener.  
Walter gives us money  
very freely.

John comes less seldom.  
He reads too fast.  
John acts most nobly.

Adverbs are sometimes used with Nouns and Pronouns : as, ' This is the very man ;' ' It was I truly who did it.'

Many of our best Poets use Adjectives for Adverbs in a manner that offends the Rules of Grammar, as in Milton, 'Thus the godlike angel answered *mild*;' for '*mildly*.' And in Thomson, '*Gradual* sinks the breeze into a perfect calm;' for '*gradually*.' They may plead perhaps the licence of a figure of Grammar, for such usages, but it would have been more synonymous with elegant writing, if they had not taken such liberties with language.

Adverbs have also been used by Poets and others as Substantives: as, 'An eternal *now* does always last;' — Cowley. In 1687 he formed it into a community of regulars, since *when* it has increased;' i. e. '*since which time*.' 'A little *while* and I shall not see you;' i. e. '*a short time*.' 'It is worth their *while*;' 'It deserves their time and pains.' 'To do a thing *any how*,' or '*some how*;' i. e. '*in any*,' or '*some manner*.'

## EXERCISES ON RULE XL.

She reads proper, writes very neat and composes accurate.

He was extreme prodigal and his property is now near exhausted.

They lived conformable to the rules of prudence.

He had many virtues, and was exceeding beloved.

He speaks very fluent, reads excellent, but does not think very coherent.

He was exceeding careful not to give offence.

The conspiracy was the more easier discovered from its being known to many.

He is like to be a very useful member of the community.

None could fight bolder, or behave nobler, than this young soldier did.

He could affirm no stronger than he did.

Few could speak nobler on the subject than he did.

Use a little wine for thine often infirmities.

Conformably to their vehemence of thought, was their vehemence of gesture.

We should infuse into the minds of youth such precepts of virtue as are likely to take soonest and deepest root.

We may now hope for a      We may credit him for  
soon and prosperous      he says express, that  
end to the war.      he saw the transaction.

## RULE XLI.

Prepositions govern the Objective case : as, " I have heard a good character *of her*." " Much shall be required *of them, to whom* much is given."

The following are examples of the Nominative case being used instead of the Objective : ' Who servest thou under ?' ' Who do you speak to ?' ' We are still much at a loss who civil power belongs to.' ' Who does thou ask for ?' ' I'll give the money to whosoever you please.' In all these places it ought to be *whom*.

The Preposition is often separated from the Relative which it governs : as, ' Whom will you give it to ?' instead of ' To whom will you give it ?' ' He is an author whom I am much delighted with ;' ' with whom I am, &c.' ' The world is too polite to shock authors with a truth, which generally their booksellers are the first that inform them of ;' ' of which generally, &c.' This is an idiom to which our language is strongly inclined ; it prevails in common conversation, and suits very well with the familiar style in writing ; but the placing of the Preposition after the Relative, is more graceful as well as more perspicuous, and agrees much better with the solemn and elevated style.

Some writers separate the Preposition from its Noun, in order to connect different Prepositions with the same Noun : as, ' To suppose the Zodiacal and Planets to be efficient *of* and antecedent *to* themselves.' One Preposition and an Active Verb are also often used to govern one Noun : as, ' I sent a message *to* and also *wrote* him of his danger ;' this sentence should be, ' I sent a message to him, and also wrote him of his danger.' This whether in the familiar or solemn style is always inelegant and should generally be avoided. In forms of law where fulness and exactness of expression must take place of every other consideration, such modes of speaking may however be admitted.

Different relations and different senses may be expressed by different Prepositions, though in conjunction with the same Verb or Adjective. Thus we say, ' To converse *with* a person, *upon* a subject, *in* a house, *at* the town, &c.' But two different Prepositions must be improper in the same construction,

and in the same sentence : as, ' The combat *between* thirty French, *against* twenty English ;' the sentence should be, ' *between* thirty French, *and* twenty English.' The Preposition *between* governing both *Nouns* in the Objective case.

## EXERCISES ON RULE XLI.

I hope it is not I he is displeased at.

We are all accountable creatures, each for himself.

They willingly and of themselves, offered to make up the difference.

He laid the suspicion upon some body, I know not who in the company.

To poor we, there is not much hope remaining.

Is it after he, or who else you come ?

Is it under Peter, or who that you now serve ?

It is not through James, but thou, I am to receive this benefit?

There is an equality of riches between him and I, but not between she and I.

I will walk with ye to the Park.

I shot beyond John, but Tom shot beyond me and he also.

Who is he so warmly concerned for?

Does that boy know who he speaks to ?

It was not he that they were so angry with.

What concord can subsist between those who commit crime, and they who abhor them.

Who did he receive that intelligence from ?

He is always angry with whosoever asks him for money.

They were refused entrance into, and forcibly driven from the house.

I wrote to and warned the general of his danger.

## RULE XLII.

Particular Prepositions must follow certain words or phrases, and others cannot with propriety be substituted for them, as in the following table.



## TABLE.

Abhorrence, of.	Different from.
Accused by, of.	Difficulty in.
Acquitted from, of.	Diminution to.
Acted with, through.	Disappointed in, of.
Adorned with.	Discouragement to.
Adapted to, for.	Disparagement to.
Aversion to.	Disposed to.
Agreeable to.	Dissent from.
Agree to, with.	Distinguished for.
Approve of.	Divide among, between
Averse to.	Dominion over.
Aspire at.	Eager of, for.
Astonished at.	Encouragement for.
Bestow upon.	Engaged in.
Bragged about, of.	Exception to, from, at.
Bridge over.	Exclaim against.
Brought into.	Expert at, in.
Boast of.	Extracted from, out of.
Built of, with.	Fall by, under.
Call on.	Famous for.
Changed into, for.	Formed into.
Communicated with.	Fell into, under.
Compare with, to.	Fined in, by.
Compliance } with.	Freed from, of.
Comply } with.	Glad of, at.
Confide in.	Get } over, above,
Conformable to, with.	Gone } beyond.
Conform } to.	Impregnated with.
Conformity } to.	Independent of.
Connived at.	Informed of, about.
Consonant to.	Insist on, upon.
Conversant with, in.	Leave off.
• Convic'ed of.	Long after, since.
Descended into, from.	Made of.
Depend upon.	Martyr for.
Derogation to, from.	Marry to.
Died for, by, of.	Meddle with.
Differ from, with, or } about. }	Meet at, in.
	Much of.

Navigable for  
Need of.  
Observer of.  
Ordained by.  
Overrun with, by.  
Prejudice against.  
Presume on.  
Profit by.  
Prevail upon, over.  
Provided with.  
Regard for, to.  
Reconcile to.  
Regulated by.  
Rejoice at.  
Replete with.

Repine at.  
Resemblance to.  
Reserve for.  
Resolve on.  
Sell at, for.  
Swerve from.  
Shoot at, beyond, besides.  
Taste of, for.  
Treatise on, upon.  
Thought of.  
True to.  
Vary from.  
Wait upon.  
Worthy of.

Several of these words may be followed by other Prepositions to express different meanings ; as, to fall off, to leave off ; to fall in, to comply with ; to fall out, to happen by chance, to disagree ; fall to, to begin eagerly ; to fall upon, to attack briskly.

Boast is sometimes used without of : as, ' If I have boasted any thing.' Approve and disapprove are often used without of. Of is sometimes omitted after worthy.

The Prepositions subjoined to Nouns are generally the same as those subjoined to Verbs or Adverbs, from which the Nouns or Adverbs are derived : as, ' A compliance *with* ;' ' to comply *with*.' ' A disposition *to* tyrannize ;' ' disposed *to* tyrannize.' ' Different *from*, differently *from*. In some cases, it is difficult to say to which of two Prepositions the preference is to be given, as both are used promiscuously, and custom has not decided in favor of either of them. We say, ' Expert at,' and ' expert in a thing.' Expert at finding a remedy for his mistakes ; expert in deception. We also say, ' We are disappointed *of* a thing,' when we cannot get it, and ' disappointed *in* it ;' when we have it and find it does not answer expectation.

Prepositions ought to be used accurately and appropriately ; *with* should not be used for *by*, *to* for *on*, *for* in place of *of*, &c. We shall therefore select a number of examples of impropriety in their application, that the learner may see the use of the foregoing table.

*By* and *with* though seemingly nearly of the same import, yet differ much, which is observable in such sentences as these:

'He walks *with* a staff by moonlight ;' 'He was taken *by* stratagem and killed with a sword.' Put the one Preposition for the other, and say, 'He walks *by* a staff *with* moonlight ;' 'He was taken *with* stratagem and killed *by* a sword ;' and their difference will be very obvious.

With respect to errors in the application of the Preposition *of* : 'He is resolved *of* going to the Persian Court ;' 'on going, &c.' 'He was totally dependent *of* the Papal crown ;' 'on the papal, &c.' 'He was eager *of* recommending it to others ;' '*in* recommending, &c.' 'It might have given me a greater taste *of* its antiquities.' A taste *of* a thing implies actual enjoyment of it, but a taste *for* it, implies only a capacity for enjoyment : 'This had a greater share *of* inciting him than any regard after his father's commands ;' 'share *in* inciting,' and 'regard *to* his father's, &c.'

With respect to errors in applying *to* and *for* : 'You have bestowed your favors to the most deserving persons ;' '*upon* the most deserving, &c.' 'He accused the ministers *for* betraying the Dutch ;' '*of* having betrayed.' 'His abhorrence to that superstitious figure ;' '*of* that, &c.' 'A great change to the better ;' '*for* the better.' 'Your prejudice to my cause ;' '*against* my cause.' 'The English were very different people *to* what they are at present ;' '*from* what, &c.' 'In compliance to the declaration ;' '*with* the declaration.' 'It is more than they thought *for* ;' 'thought *of*.' 'There is no need *for* it ;' '*of* it.' 'No discouragement *for* the authors to proceed ;' '*to* the authors, &c.' 'It was perfectly *in* compliance to some persons ;' '*with* some, &c.' 'The wisest princes need not think it any diminution to their greatness, or derogation to their sufficiency to rely upon counsel ;' 'diminution *of*,' and 'derogation *from*.'

With respect to the erroneous use of *with* and *upon* or *in* : 'Reconciling himself with the King.' 'Those things which have the greatest resemblance with each other frequently differ the most.' 'That such rejection should be consonant with our common nature.' 'The history of Peter is agreeable with the sacred texts.' In all the above instances it should be, '*to*,' instead of '*with*.' It is a use, that perhaps I should not have thought on ; 'thought *of*.' 'A greater quantity may be taken from the heap without making any sensible alteration upon it ;' '*in* it.' 'Intrusted to persons on whom the Parliament could confide ;' '*in* whom.' 'He was made much on at Arges ;' 'much *of*.' 'If policy can prevail upon force ;' '*over* force.' 'I do likewise dissent with the examiner ;' '*from* the examiner.'

With respect to the erroneous use of *in*, *from*, *by*, *into*, *after*. 'They should be informed in some parts of his charac-

ter ; ' *about*,' or ' *concerning*.' ' Upon such occasions as fell into their cognizance ;' ' *under*.' ' That variety of factions into which we are still engaged ;' ' *in which*.' ' To restore myself into the favor ;' ' *to the favor*.' ' Could he have profited from repeated experiences ;' ' *by repeated*.' ' A strict observer after times and fashions ;' ' *of times*.' ' The character which we may now value ourselves by drawing ;' ' *upon drawing*.' ' Neither of them shall make me swerve out of the path ;' ' *from the path*.'

The Proposition *among*, implies a number of things. It cannot properly be used in conjunction with the word *every*, which is in the singular number : as, ' The opinion seems to gain ground *among* every body.'

The Prepositions *to* or *unto* and *till* or *until* are often confounded in meaning. *To* is used with respect to boundaries; *till* with respect to time or degree of intensity : ' They sailed to the 80th degree of latitude ;' ' He sublimed the calomel to the 7th degree.' 80th degree, and 7th degree are here boundaries. But in this sentence, ' He walked in the snow till his feet were frozen ;' *till* marks the degree of intensity. ' He rented the house to Christmas ;' is therefore wrong, it should be, ' *till* Christmas.'

*Over* is often used improperly for *above* : as, ' His rent is over £500 a year ;' for ' *above* £500.'

As certain words and phrases require particular Prepositions after them ; so certain words and phrases require particular Prepositions before them, and some both before and after them as in this

## TABLE.

At the beginning.	During pleasure.	In regard of.
At the end.	For love of.	In place of.
At the death of.	In addition to.	Under penalty of.
At the distance of.	In arms against.	In the rear of.
At first, or last.	In conformity to.	Of the age of.
At the expence of.	In consequence of.	Of the size of.
At private sale.	In commemoration of.	On account of.
At public auction.	In consideration of.	On condition of.
At each end or side of.	In concert with.	On each side.
By means of.	In duress.	On the part of.
By a kind or sort of.	In the hands of.	Out of respect to.
	In front of.	

Prepositions seem sometimes to be used superfluously as in these sentences : ' The emulation who should serve their country best no longer subsists among them, but *of* who should

obtain the most lucrative command.' 'It is situation chiefly which decides of the fortunes and characters of men.' *Of* in these sentences would be better omitted.

*For* seems superfluous in the phrase, 'More than he thought *for*.'

*From* seems redundant after *forbear*, hence, thence and whence : as, 'He could not forbear from opposing the Pope.' 'An ancient author prophesies from hence ;' 'From thence, we may date his downfall ;' 'From whence come you.' These modes of phraseology though improper, seem however, so firmly rooted in the English Language that the omission of the Prepositions would render the phrases too stiff and formal.

### EXERCISES ON RULE XLII.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| He was totally dependent of the prince's favor.                                  | You seem to have no regard after your family.     |
| He was accused of Cesar before the Senate.                                       | I have no need for it now.                        |
| My abhorrence to this vice was great.  | He is now engaged with writing a history.         |
| He did not differ with us in opinion.  | You do not profit from all these lessons.         |
| I was a different man then to what I am now.                                     | He is very expert of the sword exercise.          |
| I have complied to your desire.  | I shall not insist more for your compliance.      |
| This is no discouragement for those men.   | He has a taste of painting and poetry.            |
| It was done consonant with your instructions and in conformity with your design. | We can confide on no person in this place.        |
| You seem eager of commanding yourself.   | This instrument is well adapted for that purpose. |
| He was eager to the fight.   | He was acquitted of all blame.                    |
|  | They now find a difficulty of allowing this.      |

I am conversant with botany.

You are an observer after charms and spells.

This is no exception from the general rule.

This forms one exception to the former proposition.

You may call of Charles to help you.

He said he would wait of me to the Theatre.

I hope you will take no exception from my freedom.

They were martyrs to the cause of liberty.

They formed themselves in a Phalanx.

She was preserved against such temptations.

The change in his disease is to the worse.

Proteus could change for what shape he pleased.

The antlion was changed to a fly.

Do you find great difficulty of doing this.

He boasts much about his noble friends.

You brag greatly in your wealth.

He seems averse from using these means.

We used to meet of an evening at the hotel

Those doctors differ among one another.

How long is it now after he died.

This was done not long since that time.

He is easily seen through of those who are inquisitive.

What do you sell this for per yard.

Your honor now lies in stake.

He began his history with Cyrus.

You are in no danger by me.

He went to the name of the idler.

He is descended of the Royal Family.

He acted thus entirely for revenge.

This Doctor cured all diseases that fell into his inspection.

A treatise of Grammar and Logic.

I have shot by the mark.

I was provided of a proper answer to this question.

He built a bridge on this broad river.

He deliberates of going.

We are now freed of the evils that hung on us.

This sum was divided between these three men.

The property was divided among James and Peter.

He was convicted in perjury.

They connived with his treachery.

France had then dominion on Spain.

This town is governed with a mayor.

This country is independent on China.

I now descended to the cellar.

This Palace is built with marble.

There is no encouragement to industry here.

She is adorned in every grace.

Their mean conduct reduced them quite under notice.

Cataline is famous by his conspiracy.

They were quite astonished with this news.

In bravery he may be compared with Cesar.

You seem glad of my calamities.

I am glad at your company.

This is a principle in unison to our nature.

He could not prevail with him to alter his mind.

I aspire to something better than that.

His sentiments are adverse with his actions.

I hope you will not vary with your word.

This field is overrun by thistles.

He rejoiced much in my success.

That country is now annexed with France.

They exclaimed violently at these conditions.

He was distinguished by his bravery.

You do not wish to infringe with your rules.

I have no prejudice to your Religion.

Rome reduced Carthage to her yoke. Alas ! Poor Celia died of love of Alonzo.

Reduce this vulgar fraction into a decimal. He died for grief.

He will not bestow his bounty to another. This man died by a fever.

I will not comply to this command. He died of this stroke on his head.

It was no disparagement for them to be only farmers. I must dissent with you in that idea.

To hear the complaints of the Poor, is no degradation to their high station. Nothing could be better adapted for this purpose.

The Noun is governed of the Verb. This River is only navigable to boats.

You make no exception from this proposal.

The Revenue of this state is over one million.

### RULE XLIII.

The Preposition *to* is elegantly omitted after Verbs of giving, showing, getting, buying, selling, paying, telling, teaching, bringing, denying, lending, writing, sending, and looking like : as, " I gave him a book ; " " He taught me Grammar ; " " He looks like his father ; " i. e. " gave *to* him, " " taught *to* me, " " he looks like *to*, " &c.

The *to* is inserted however, when two Pronouns or a Noun and Pronoun come after the Verb : as, ' Give *it to me* ; ' ' Send a pen *to him*. '

### EXERCISES ON RULE XLIII.

Ye gave to me no meat. Fetch to me the inkstand.

Let him give to me what is mine. Hand to me that book.

Tell to me the truth. He did lend to me five pounds.



They have sent to me the present.	Give to the horse his oats.
Sell to me your horse.	Lend to me your sword.
Bring to me a light.	Buy to him a copy book.
Get to him a book.	Pay to me what you owe.
I taught to thee to write.	Teach to them to read.
Write to him on this subject.	Shew to me the Church.
	He looks not like to Andrew his brother.

### RULE XLIV.

The Prepositions *to*, *at* and *in* are employed before Nouns of place, thus :

*To* follows Verbs of motion, (except arrive,) as, " I went to France ;" " He sailed to Lisbon."

*At* is set after the Verb *to be* : as, " I was at London ;" (except when *to be* is combined with a Verb of motion : as, " I am going to Spain.") *At* is also set before villages, towns, and large distant cities : as, " He resided at Richmond, at Portsmouth, and is now at Paris " *At* is put after arrive and touch : as, " They arrived at London, touching at Plymouth."

*In* is set before countries and large cities : as, " He lived in London, but he now lives in Russia."

From the above rule, it follows that we may say : ' He was born or lives *at* Paris, or *in* Paris ;' but we cannot with propriety say, ' He was born or lives *at* London, but *in* London.' But when a person is said to have died, *at* should generally be used : as, ' He died *at* London ; *at* Paris ; *at* Philadelphia, &c.'

In using names of Islands, it is sometimes not easy to determine whether *at* or *in* is proper ; in general however, if the Island is large *in* should be used ; but *at* if small : as, ' We arrived first *in* Sicily, and soon after set sail and arrived at Malta.'

With respect to names of streets, squares, &c. *in* should generally be used, except a number is mentioned. when we should use *at* : as, ' I live *in* Queen street *at* No. 5.'

## EXERCISES ON RULE XLIV.

He lives at France but  
intends soon to go for  
London.

I arrived in Plymouth at  
England.

He was born at London  
and now lives in Greta  
Green.

I have been to Paris al-  
ready, and intend to  
call in Geneva on my  
way for Italy.

We touched in Lisbon,  
and afterwards arrived  
in Elba, and from

there set sail and arriv-  
ed at Sicily.

He was in the appointed  
place of our meeting  
long before me.

We intend to reside some-  
time at America.

He has been to London,  
after residing a year at  
France, and now lives  
in Islington.

He lived at Grosvenor  
square, but now resides  
at Duke street in No.  
10.

## RULE XLV.

Conjunctions connect the same Moods and Tenses of Verbs, and cases of Nouns and Pronouns: as, "Candour *is* to be approved and practised;" "If thou sincerely *desire* and earnestly *pursue* virtue, she *will* assuredly *be found* by thee, and *prove* a rich reward." "He and she were school fellows;" "The master taught *her* and *me* to write."

A few examples of inaccuracy respecting this rule may further display its utility. 'If he prefer a virtuous life, and is sincere in his professions, he will succeed;' 'if he *prefers*.' 'To deride the miseries of the unhappy, and wanting compassion towards them is unchristian;' 'and *to want* compassion.' 'The Parliament addressed the King and has been prorogued the same day;' 'and *was* prorogued.' 'His wealth and him bid adieu to each other;' 'and *he*.' 'He entreated my comrade and I, to live harmoniously;' 'comrade and *me*.' 'My sister and her were on good terms;' 'and *she*.'

Conjunctions are indeed made to connect different moods and tenses of Verbs: but in these instances the Nominative

must generally be repeated, which is not necessary (though it may be done) under the construction to which the rule refers. We ought to say, 'He *lives* temperately, and he should *live* temperately.' 'He *may* return, but he *will* not continue.' 'She *was* proud, though she is now humble.' For it is obvious that in such sentences, the Nominative should be repeated; and that by this means, the latter members of these sentences are rendered not so strictly dependent on the preceeding, as these are, which come under the rule.

When in the progress of a sentence, we pass from the Affirmative to the Negative form, or from the Negative to the Affirmative, the subject or Nominative is always resumed: as, 'He is rich, but he is not respectable;' 'He is not rich, but, he is respectable.'

There appears to be in general equal reason for repeating the Nominative, and resuming the subject, when the course of the sentence is diverted by a change of the mood or tenses: 'Anger glances into the breast of a wise man, but will rest only in the bosom of fools;' 'but rests only,' or 'but it will rest only.' 'Virtue is praised by many, and would be desired also, if her worth were really known;' 'and she would.' 'The world begins to recede and will soon disappear;' 'and it will.'

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XLV.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| He spoke Latin and writes<br>Greek well.  | To be moderate in our<br>views, and proceeding<br>temperately in the pur-<br>suit of them, is the best<br>way to ensure success. |
| Did he not tell thee his<br>fault, and entreated<br>thee to forgive him.                      | My brother and him are<br>tolerable grammarians.   |
| Professing regard and to<br>act differently discover<br>a base mind.                          | You and us enjoy many<br>privileges.   |
| If he understand the sub-<br>ject and attends to it,<br>he can scarcely fail of<br>success.   | She and him are very un-<br>happily connected.   |
| Between him and I, there<br>is some disparity of<br>years; but none be-<br>tween him and she. | We have met with many<br>disappointments; and<br>if life continue shall<br>probably meet with<br>many more.                      |

Rank may confer influence, but will not necessarily produce virtue.

He does not want courage, but is defective in sensibility.

These people have great riches, but do not command esteem.

Though Charles is sometimes hasty yet is not ungenerous.

### RULE XLVI.

Some Conjunctions require the Indicative and some the Subjunctive mood. When something contingent and future is implied, the Subjunctive should be used : as, "He will not be pardoned unless he repent." The Indicative should be used when neither contingency nor futurity is implied : as, "He is healthy because he is temperate ;" or when doubt is implied without futurity : as, "If he is as sincere as he pretends, he is really a good man."

The Conjunctions, *if, though, unless, except, whether*, &c. generally require the Subjunctive mood after them : as, 'If thou *be* afflicted repine not.' 'Though he *slay* me yet will I trust in him.' 'He cannot be clean *unless* he wash himself.' 'No power *except* it were given him.' 'Whether it were I or they.' But even these Conjunctions when the sentence does not imply doubt, admit of the Indicative : as, 'Though he is poor, he is contented.'

*Lest* and *that* annexed to a command preceding necessarily require the Subjunctive mood : as, 'Love not sleep, *lest* thou *come* to Poverty.' 'Take heed *that* thou speak not to Jacob.' *If* with *but* following it, when futurity is denoted, requires the Subjunctive : as, 'If he *be but* discreet, he will succeed.' But the Indicative ought to be used when future time is not signified : as, 'If she *is but* sincere I am happy.' The same distinction applies to the following forms of expression : 'If he *do* submit *it* will be from necessity ;' 'Though he *does* submit he is not convinced.' 'If thou *dost* heartily forgive him, forget the offence.'

That part of the Verb which Grammarians call the Present tense of the Subjunctive mood, has a future signification ; this is effected by varying the terminations of the second and third

person singular of the Indicative ; this will be evident from the following examples : ‘ If thou *prosper* thou shouldst be thankful ;’ ‘ Unless he *study* more closely, he will never be learned.’ Some writers however would express these sentiments without these variations : ‘ If thou *prosperest* ;’ ‘ unless he *studies*.’ And as there is diversity of practice in this point, it is proper to offer the learner a few remarks, to assist them in distinguishing the right application of these different forms of expression. It may be considered as a rule, that the changes of termination are necessary when these two circumstances occur ; 1st. when the subject is of a dubious and contingent nature ; and 2nd. when the Verb has a reference to future time. In the following sentences both these circumstances will be found to unite : ‘ If thou *injure* another, thou wilt hurt thyself ;’ ‘ He has a hard heart, and if he *continue* impenitent he must suffer ;’ ‘ He will maintain his principles though he *lose* his estate ;’ ‘ Whether he *succeed* or not his intentions is laudable ;’ ‘ If he *be* not prosperous, he will not repine ;’ ‘ If a man *smite* his servant and he *die*.’ In all these examples the things signified by the Verbs are uncertain, and refer to future time. But in the instances that follow, future time is not referred to, and therefore a different construction takes place : ‘ If thou *livest* virtuously thou art happy ;’ ‘ Unless he means what he says he is doubly faithless ;’ ‘ Though he *seems* to be simple, he has deceived us ;’ ‘ Whether virtue is better than rank or wealth, admits not of dispute ;’ ‘ If thou believest sincerely thou mayst.’

There are many sentences introduced by Conjunctions, in which neither contingency nor futurity is denoted : as, ‘ Though he excels her in knowledge, she exceeds him in virtue ;’ ‘ If he believes the truths of religion he does not act according to them.’ In the examples following, contingency is denoted, but not futurity : ‘ If he *thinks* as he speaks he may safely be trusted ;’ ‘ He acts uprightly unless he *deceives* me ;’ ‘ If he *is* disposed to it, I will perform the operation ;’ ‘ If thou *art* the King of the Jews save thyself and us.’ In the following sentences futurity is signified but not contingency : ‘ As soon as the sun *sets*, it will be cooler ;’ ‘ As the autumn *advances* these birds will gradually emigrate.’

From the preceding observations it appears that with respect to what is termed the Present tense of any Verb, when the circumstances of contingency and futurity concur, it is proper to vary the terminations of the second and third person singular ; that without the concurrence of these circumstances, the terminations should not be altered, and the Verb and the Auxiliaries of the three Past tenses, and the Auxiliaries of the first Future undergo no alterations whatever, except the *Im-*

*perfect* of the Verb *to be* which when used subjunctively is varied in all the persons of the singular number from that which it has in the Indicative, as the learner will perceive by turning to the Conjugation of that Verb.

It appears from the tenor of the examples adduced, that in cases wherein contingency and futurity do not concur, it is not proper to turn the Verb from its signification of present time, nor to vary its formation or termination. The Verb would then be in the Indicative mood, whatever Conjunction might attend it. If these rules which seem to form the true distinction between the Subjunctive and the Indicative moods in this tense, were adopted and established, we should have on this point, a principle of decision, simple and precise, and readily applicable to every case that might occur. It might sometimes happen, that on this occasion, a strict adherence to Grammatical Rules, would render the language stiff and formal; but when cases of this sort occur, it is better to give the expression a different turn, than to violate Grammar for the sake of ease, or even of elegance.

We shall notice some of the errors many have fallen into, in the use of the Subjunctive mood. Some writers express themselves, in the Perfect tense as follows: 'If thou *have* determined, we must submit.' The proper form is, 'If thou *hast* &c.' conformably to what we generally meet with in the Bible. 'I have surnamed thee, though thou *hast* not known me.'—Isa. xi.

In the Pluperfect and Future Tenses we sometimes meet with such expressions as, 'If thou *had* applied thyself diligently thou wouldst have reaped the advantage;' 'Unless thou *shall* speak the whole truth, we cannot determine.' This mode of expressing the Auxiliaries, is not warranted by the practice of correct writers. They should be *hadst* and *shalt*, as we find them used in the Scriptures: 'If thou *hadst* known, &c.'—Luke xix. 'If thou *wilt* thou canst, &c.'—Mat. vii.

The second person singular of the Imperfect Tense in the Subjunctive mood, is frequently varied in its termination: as, 'If thou *loved* him, thou wouldst obey him;' 'Though thou *did* conform thou gained nothing by it.' This variation is improper, and our version of the Scriptures decides against it: 'If thou *knowest* the gift, &c.'—John iv. 'If thou *didst* receive it why dost thou glory.'—1 Cor. iv.

It may not be superfluous to observe that the Auxiliaries of the Potential mood when applied to the Subjunctive, do not change the termination of the second person singular. We properly say, 'If thou *mayst* or *canst* go;' 'Though thou *mightst* live;' 'Unless thou *couldst* read;' and not 'If thou

*may* or *can* go ;' &c. It seems sufficient on this point to adduce the authorities of Johnson and Lowth, in their Grammars, though the Scriptures also follow the same rule : as, ' *That thou mayst* be their king.'—Neh. vi. ' *That thou mayst* be feared.'—Psalm. cxxx.

The same Conjunction governing both the Indicative and the Subjunctive moods in the same sentence, and in the same circumstances—seems to be a great impropriety : as, 'If there *be* but one body of Legislators, it is no better than tyranny ; if there *are* only two, there will not be a casting vote.'

Some persons contend, that the Indicative and not the Subjunctive should be used with the word *about*, though futurity is implied : as, 'If the stocks *are* about to rise, there will be peace ;' but it would be better to say, 'If the stocks *be* about to rise, &c.'

After perusing what has been said on this subject, the student will naturally enquire, 'what is the extent of the Subjunctive mood ?' Some Grammarians think it extends only to what is called the Present Tense of Verbs generally, under the circumstances of contingency and futurity, and to the Imperfect Tense of the Verb *to be* when it denotes contingency &c. because in these tenses only, the form of the Verb admits of variation ; and they suppose that it is variation alone which constitutes the distinction of moods. It is the opinion of other Grammarians, (in which opinion we concur,) that besides the two cases mentioned, all Verbs in the three Past, and the two Future Tenses, are in the Subjunctive mood, when they denote contingency, though they have not any change of termination ; and that when contingency is not signified, the Verb through all these five tenses belongs to the Indicative mood, whatever Conjunction may attend it. They think that the definition and nature of the Subjunctive mood have no reference to change of termination, but that they refer merely to the manner of the being, action, or passion signified by the Verb ; and that the Subjunctive mood may as properly exist without a variation of the Verb, as the Infinitive mood, which has no termination different from the Infinitive. The decision of this point may not be thought of much consequence. But the rules which ascertain the propriety of varying, or not varying, the terminations of the Verb will certainly be deemed important. These rules may be well observed without a uniformity of sentiment respecting the nature and limits of the Subjunctive mood.

The Conjunction is frequently omitted, and the Verb is then said to have a Conjunctive form : as, 'Were there no difference there would be no choice.' A double Conjunctive in two correspondent clauses of a sentence, is sometimes made



use of : as, ' *Had* he done this, he *had* escaped.' The sentence in the common form would read thus, ' If he had done this, he would have escaped.'

## EXERCISES ON RULE XLVI.

Whether he confesses or not, the truth will be discovered.

If he acquires riches, they will corrupt his mind.

Though he urges me yet more earnestly, I shall not comply ; unless he advances stronger reasons.

I shall walk in the fields to day, unless it rains.

I shall walk in the fields to-morrow if it is fair.

He disapproved of the measure, because it were improper.

Though he be high, he hath respect to the lowly.

Whether he improve, or not I cannot determine.

O ! that his heart was tender to feel for my woes.

If he promises, he will perform.

Despise not any condition, lest it happens to be your own.

Let him that is sanguine take heed lest he falls.

If he be, but, in health, I am content.

If I was you, I would do as you did.

If thou do believe the truths of Religion act virtuously.

Though he do praise her, it is only for her beauty.

He is so conscious of deserving the rebuke, that he dare not reply.

If thou dost not forgive, thou mayst not be forgiven.

However the affair terminates, my conduct is unimpeachable.

Till repentance composes his mind, he will be a stranger to praise.

Though virtue appear severe, she is truly amiable.

If thou knew of this affair why did thou not tell ?

If thou would improve, thou should be diligent.



If thou had succeeded, thou wouldst not be happier.	Though thou might have foreseen the danger, thou could not have a- voided it.
Thou cannot deny the fact though thou will not acknowledge it.	Though success be very doubtful, it is proper that he endeavors to succeed.
If thou have promised, be faithful to thy engage- ment.	

### RULE XLVII.

Certain Conjunctions pair, and should be accompanied by their associates, as follows :

1st. *Whither—or* : as, “ Whither he will go or not, I cannot tell.”

2nd. *Either—or* : as, “ I will either send it, or bring it myself.”

3rd. *Neither—nor* : as, “ Neither he nor I am able to do it.”

4th. *As—as*, expressing a comparison of equality : as, “ She is *as* amiable *as* her sister, and *as* much respected.”

5th. *As—so*, expressing a comparison of equality : as, “ *As* the stars, *so* shall thy seed be.”

6th. *As—so*, expressing a comparison of quality : as, “ *As* the one dieth, *so* dieth the other.”

7th. *So—as*, with a Verb expressing a comparison of quality : as, “ To see thy glory, *so as* I have seen thee, in the sanctuary.”

8th. *So—as*, with a Negative and an Adjective expressing a comparison of quantity : as, “ Pompey was not *so* great a General *as* Cesar, nor *so* great a man.”

9th. *So—that*, expressing a consequence : as, “ He was *so* fatigued, *that* he could scarcely move.”

10th. *Both—and* : as, "We have *both* original and actual sin."

11th. *Though—yet—nevertheless* : as, "Though he was rich, *yet* for our sakes he became poor ;" "Though powerful, *nevertheless* he was meek."

Conjunctions are often improperly employed, both in pairs and singly.

*Who* is sometimes used for *as* : as, 'There was none so sanguine *who* did not apprehend ill consequences ;' it ought to be, 'so sanguine *as* not to apprehend, &c.'

*As* is sometimes used improperly for *which*, or *with which* : as, 'The Duke had not behaved with that loyalty *as* he ought to have done ;' 'with *which* he ought, &c.'

*As* for *so* : as, 'So soon *as* it was day they arose ;' for 'as soon *as*, &c.'

*As* for *that* : as, 'I was so vexed, *as* I could not speak ;' 'that I could not speak.'

It seems doubtful whether *as* or *so* should be used before *far*, since many of our best writers use *as*, as in Psalm. ciii. 'As *far* as east, &c.' and in 26th Paraphrase on Lv. Isaiah, 'As far my thoughts, as far my ways, &c.' though Murray and others think it should always be '*so far*, &c.' *So* should generally however be used before *candid*, and not *as* : as, 'I must be so candid *as* to say, &c.'

Conjunctions are sometimes used superfluously, as, *as* before *that* in the sentence : 'The relations are so uncertain *as* that they require a great deal of examination.' *That* is often properly omitted and understood : as, 'I beg you would come to me ;' 'See thou do it not ;' for, '*that* you would, &c.' '*that* you do it not.' But in the following and similar phrases it were much better inserted : 'Yet it is reason, the memory of their virtues remain to posterity ;' it should be, 'yet it is just *that* the memory, &c.' *As* is improperly omitted in the following phrases : 'Which nobody presumes or is so sanguine to hope ;' 'I must however be so just to own ;' it should be, 'as to hope ;' 'as to own.'

*As* is often used by itself : as, 'He offered himself *as* a teacher, though unable to read.'

*As* when connected with the Pronoun *such* seems to have the force of a Relative Pronoun.

*Yet* and *nevertheless* are often properly omitted and understood after *though* : as, 'Though powerful he was meek.'

Conjunctions are sometimes crowded improperly together : as, ' *But and if that evil servant say in his heart ;*'—Matt. xxiv. *But and* are improper and redundant.

Some writers are of opinion, that *lest* should not be employed in such phrases : as, ' He was afraid *lest* I would beat him ;' and that, *that* should always be used in its place ; but the opinion seems not to have many advocates.

Some Grammarians have given it as a rule, that *not* should be accompanied by *nor* and *neither* in such sentences : as, ' They shall *not* go, neither James nor John ;' but this seems to encourage the improper use of two Negatives, and may as properly be expressed thus, ' They shall not go, *either* James or John.' *Or* and *nor* may often however be used with equal propriety, as in this sentence : ' The King whose character was not sufficiently vigorous *nor* decisive, assented to the measure ;' or would perhaps have been better, but in general in such sentences, *nor* seems to repeat the Negative with propriety, and therefore gives more emphasis to the expression.

*Or, or*, in Poetry is generally used, rather than, either, or.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE XLVII.

He was neither cold or fervid in friendship.

We should or be true to the trust committed to us, or relinquish it.

The sky was so red as blood.

One is so deserving as the other.

I must be as exact, as to keep precisely to the line.

This is an event, which nobody is as sanguine as to hope for.

He is not as much esteemed, as he thinks himself.

There was something so amiable, and yet so piercing in his look, as affected me at once with love and terror.

I must be as candid as to own, I have been mistaken.

Our conduct so far, as it respects others, is unexceptionable.

No errors are so trivial, as they do not deserve to be mended.

Will this assertion receive so much credit, as he intended.

This business is so plain,      He will not do it himself  
as I need not ex-      nor let me do it.  
plain it.

You must carry this your-      He behaved well so as  
self, or send a person      his conduct was ap-  
with it.      proved of.

### RULE XLVIII.

When things are compared by the Conjunctions *as* or *than*, the latter Pronoun agrees with the Verb, or is governed by the Verb or a Preposition expressed or understood : as, "Thou art as wise as I ;" i. e. "as I am." "They loved him more than me ;" i. e. "than they loved me." "The sentiment is well expressed by Plato, but much better by Solomon than him ;" i. e. "than by him."

The propriety or impropriety of many phrases in the preceding as well as in some other forms, may be discovered by supplying the words that are not expressed, which will be evident from the following instances of erroneous construction : 'He can read better than me ;' 'He is as good as her ;' 'Whether I be present or no ;' 'Who did this ? me.' By supplying the words understood in each of these phrases, their impropriety and governing rule will appear : as, 'Better than I can read ;' 'As good as she is ;' 'Present or not present ;' 'I did it.'

The Conjunction *but* seems to require as much attention as *than* or *as* ; in such sentences : as, 'No person was present but he ;' 'I saw nobody but him.' If the Ellipsis is supplied in these sentences, it will be, 'But he was present ;' 'but him I saw.'

Notwithstanding this rule, *than* and *as* have generally the same case before and after them, which will appear from the following examples ; first the Nominative : as, 'He is richer than I ;' Secondly the Possessive : as, 'His riches is greater than mine ;' and lastly, the Objective : as, 'He beat *him* as well as me.'

When the Relative *who* immediately follows *than* it seems to form an exception to this rule ; for in that connexion the Relative is put in the Objective case : as, 'Belzebub *than*

*whom* Satan excepted none higher sat.'—*Millon*: In such instances, if the Personal Pronoun were used, it would be, 'Belzebub *than* he, &c.' The phrase '*than whom*,' is however avoided by the best modern writers, and the propriety of using it at all, has been much controverted of late.

From *as*, *than* and *but*, having so often the same case before and after them, and from *than* seemingly governing the Objective case *whom*, some have thought, they were Prepositions, but this opinion seems incorrect.

### EXERCISES ON RULE XLVIII.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| I am as learned as him.   | Who related falsehoods  |
| He can speak better than me.  | to screen herself and   |
| The undertaking was much better executed by them than we.                       | to bring an odium on others ? not me it was her.  |
| They know how to write as well as him, but he is a better grammarian than them. | Charles 12th. King of Sweden, than who, a more courageous man never lived.                        |
| Though he is not so learned as her, he is as much respected.                    | Salmasius, (a more learned man than him has seldom appeared,) was not happy at the close of life. |
| Who betrayed her companion ? not me.  | There is but one in front and that is me.   |
| Who revealed the secrets he ought to have concealed ? not him.                  | Nero caused them all to be slain but he and she.  |

### RULE XLIX.

In a comparative sentence *as* or *than* should not be used improperly, the one for the other ; this sentence is therefore incorrect : " He was more beloved, but not so much admired as Cinthio ;" it should be, " He was more beloved than Cinthio, but not so much admired."

The example in this rule, presents a most irregular construction, namely, 'He was more beloved *as* Cinthio.' The words *more* and *so much* are very improperly stated as having the same regimen.

In correcting such sentences, the Ellipsis may or may not be supplied. If it conduces to the elegance of the construction it should be done ; as in the following sentence : ' Will it be urged that these books are as old, or even older than tradition.' Corrected thus, ' Will it be urged, these books, are as old as tradition, or even older than it.' *It* is here supplied and conduces to the elegance of the sentence.

## EXERCISES ON RULE XLIX.

He is more bold and active, but not so wise and studious as his companion.

She is more talkative and lively, but not so well informed, nor so uniformly cheerful as her brothers.

Those people were suddenly raised from a state as low, if not lower than adject poverty, to affluence.

Sincerity is as valuable, and even more valuable than knowledge.

He had many more fascinating qualities, but none so agreeable, as the art of flattery.

Lysander was placed in a higher station and had more authority, yet was not so much respected, nor so popular as Junius.

## RULE L.

Interjections must have after them the Objective case of a Pronoun in the first person Singular ; but the Nominative in all the other persons, except *we*, which requires the Objective in all the persons: as, " Ah ! me ;" " O ! ye sinners repent ;" " O ! happy we ;" " Woes thee wretched man."

The first person singular of Pronouns has often not an Interjection before it, as in that line of Milton :

' Me miserable ! what way shall I fly.'

R

Why the first person singular of Pronouns after Interjections is in the Objective, appears to proceed from a Preposition or Verb understood. 'Oh me ! miserable ;' seems to have *upon* implied : as if it was said, ' Oh ! upon me miserable.'

Murray has asserted that the Interjections O, oh, ah, &c. require the Objective Plural after them, as in, ' O ! unhappy *us* ;' but this is surely erroneous. If we use the third person singular and say, ' O ! unhappy *him* ;' it is evidently improper ; and it is also so in the plural. In the phrase, ' Oh ! unhappy *we* ;' the word *are* should be supplied, as if it was said, ' O ! unhappy men *that we are*.'

The Preposition *to* seems to be understood after *wo* : as in, ' woes me ;' i. e. ' wo is to me.'

The Vocative, (or as it has lately been called by some, the Nominative Independent,) has generally the Interjection O before it, though it may be, and sometimes is, without it. O ! is used in an address, or in an exclamation of wonder, joy, or wishing ; oh ! when sorrow or pain is indicated.

#### EXERCISES ON RULE L.

Ah ! unhappy thee, so unfortunate.	Oh ! unhappy us, what shall we do.
O ! wretched us, so mis- erable.	Woes I, who am in so bad a state.
Ah ! hapless I, so un- done.	Woes they poor wretches.
O ! wicked thee, to act so basely.	Hurra ! happy thee so lucky.
Alas ! poor I, have no hope left.	O what fortunate men they are.

#### RULE LI.

To avoid disagreeable repetitions, an Ellipsis or omission of some words is admitted. Instead of saying, ' He was a learned man, he was a wise man, and he was a good man ;' we say, " He was a learned, wise, and good man." But when the omission of words would obscure the sense, or be

attended with an impropriety, they should be expressed : as in this sentence, " We are apt to love who love us ;" the word *them* should be supplied.

Almost all compounded sentences are more or less Elliptical, some examples of which may be seen under the different parts of speech. The following instances contain much of the Ellipsis : ' To let blood ;' i. e. ' to let out blood.' ' To let down ;' i. e. ' to let fall or slide down.' ' To walk a mile ;' i. e. ' to walk through the space a mile.' ' To go a fishing ;' i. e. ' to go on a fishing voyage or business.' ' I dine at two o'clock ;' i. e. ' at two of the clock.'

The Ellipsis of the *article* is thus used : ' A man, woman and child ;' i. e. ' a man, a woman, and a child.' ' A house and garden ;' i. e. ' a house and a garden.' ' The sun and moon ;' i. e. ' the sun and the moon.' In all these instances, the article being once expressed the repetition of it becomes unnecessary. There is however an exception to this observation, when some peculiar emphasis requires a repetition ; as in the following sentence : ' Not only the year, but the day and the hour.' In this case, the Ellipsis of the last article would be improper. When a different form of the article is required, the article is also properly repeated : as, ' A house and *an* orchard ;' instead of, ' a house and orchard.'

The *Noun* is frequently omitted in the following manner : ' The laws of God and man ;' i. e. ' the laws of God and the laws of man.' ' The wise, the good, and great, sin as well as others ;' i. e. ' the wise *men*, &c.'

The Ellipsis of the *Adjective* is used in the following manner : ' A delightful garden and orchard ;' i. e. ' a delightful garden and a delightful orchard.' ' A little man and woman ;' i. e. ' a little man and a little woman.' In such Elliptical expressions as these, the Adjective ought to have exactly the same signification, and to be quite as proper, when joined to the latter Substantive as to the former ; otherwise the Ellipsis should not be admitted.

Sometimes the Ellipsis is improperly applied to Nouns of different numbers : as, ' A magnificent house and gardens.' In this case it is better to use another Adjective : as, ' A magnificent house and fine gardens.'

The following is the Ellipsis of the *Pronoun* : ' I love and fear him ;' i. e. ' I love him, and I fear him.' ' My house and lands ;' i. e. ' My house and my lands.' In these instances the Ellipsis may take place with propriety ; but if we would be more express, it must not be used : as, ' His friends and his foes ;' ' My sons and my daughters.'



In some of the common forms of speech, the Relative Pronoun is omitted : as, ' This is the man they love ;' instead of, ' This is the man *whom* they love.' ' These are the goods they bought ;' for, ' these are the goods *which* they bought.'

In complex sentences it is better to have the Relative Pronoun expressed : as it is more proper to say, ' The posture in which I lay ;' than, ' in the posture I lay.' ' The horse on which I rode, fell down ;' than, ' the horse I rode, fell down.'

The Ellipsis of the *Verb* is used in the following instances : ' The man was old and crafty ;' i. e. ' the man was old, and the man was crafty.' ' She was young and beautiful and good ;' i. e. ' She *was* young, she was beautiful, and she was good.' ' Thou art poor and wretched, and miserable, and blind, and naked.' If we would fill up the Ellipsis in the last sentence, *thou art* ought to be repeated before each of the Adjectives.

If in such enumeration, we choose to point out one property above the rest, that property must be placed last, and the Ellipsis supplied : as, ' She is young and beautiful, and *she is good.*' ' I went to see and hear him ;' i. e. ' I went to see him, and I went to hear him.' In this instance there is not only an Ellipsis of the governing Verb *I went*, but likewise of the sign of the Infinitive mood which is governed by it.

*Do, did, had, shall, will, may, might,* and the rest of the Auxiliaries of the Compound Tenses, are frequently used alone, to spare the repetition of the Verb : as, ' He regards his word, but thou dost not ;' i. e. ' dost not regard it.' ' We succeeded but they did not ;' i. e. ' did not succeed.' ' I have learned my task, but thou hast not ;' i. e. ' hast not learned.'

The Ellipsis of the *Adverb* is used in the following manner : ' He spoke and acted wisely ;' i. e. ' he spoke wisely, and he acted wisely.' ' Thrice I went and offered my services ;' i. e. ' thrice I went and thrice I offered my services.'

The Ellipsis of the *Preposition* as well as of the Verb is seen in the following instances : ' He went into the abbey, halls, and public buildings ;' i. e. ' he went into the abbey, he went into the halls, and he went into the public buildings.' ' He spoke to every man and woman there ;' i. e. ' to every man and to every woman.' ' This day, next month, last year ;' i. e. ' on this day, in the next month, in the last year.'

The Ellipsis of the *Conjunction* is as follows : ' They confess the power, wisdom, goodness and love of their Creator ;' i. e. ' the power, and wisdom, and goodness, and love, &c.' ' Though I love him, I do not flatter him ;' i. e. ' though I love him, yet I do not flatter him.'

The Ellipsis of the *Interjection* is not very common ; it however is sometimes used : as, ' Oh ! pity and shame ! ' i. e. ' Oh ! pity, Oh ! shame ! '

The examples that follow are produced to shew the impropriety of the Ellipsis in some particular cases. The Antecedent and Relative connect the parts of a sentence together, and to prevent obscurity and confusion, should answer to each other with exactness : ' We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen.' Here the Ellipsis is manifestly improper, and ought to be supplied : as, ' We speak that *which* we do know, and testify that *which* we have seen.' ' The land was always possessed by those intrusted with the command ; ' it should be ' those *who were* intrusted,' or ' those *persons* intrusted.' ' If he had read farther, he would have found, his objections might have been spared ; ' i. e. ' he would have found *that* his objections, &c.' ' There is nothing men are more deficient in, than knowing their own characters ; ' it ought to be, ' nothing *in which* men,' and ' *in* knowing.' ' In the temper of mind, he was then ; ' i. e. ' *in which* he then was.' ' The little satisfaction and consistency, to be found in most systems of Divinity I met with, made me betake myself to the sole reading of the Scriptures ; ' it ought to be, ' *which are* to be found,' and ' *which* I met with.' ' He desired they might go to the altar together, and jointly return thanks, to *whom* only they were due ; ' should be, ' *to him* to whom, &c.'

It seems necessary to inform the learner, that fine oratory often requires a repetition of words, such as : ' Christ the Power of God, Christ the Wisdom of God ; ' is much more emphatic, than, ' Christ the Power and Wisdom of God.' ' His conduct is noble ! he is temperate ! he is disinterested ! he is benevolent ! ' when used by an ardent orator, is much more impressive than, ' he is temperate, disinterested, and benevolent.' ' Since concord was lost ! friendship was lost ! liberty was lost ! all was lost ! ' is more forcible and emphatic, than saying, ' Since concord, friendship, and liberty was lost, all was lost.'

### EXERCISES ON RULE LI.

A crow and owl have fought.	Old age will prove joyless, if we come to it, with unimproved or corrupted mind.
Do not kill flies, do not employ yourself in such cruel amusement.	He is writing an essay on interests of body and mind.
The more I see of his conduct I like him better.	

These rules are addressed to none but the intelligent and the attentive.

These counsels were the dictates of virtue, and the dictates of honor.

Avarice and cunning may gain an estate, but avarice and cunning cannot gain friends.

Without firmness, nothing that is great can be undertaken, that is difficult can be accomplished.

The anxious man is the votary of riches ; the negligent of pleasure.

His favor or disapprobation was governed by the failure of an enterprise.

He has an affectionate brother, and an affectionate sister.

His crimes had brought him into extreme distress, and extreme perplexity.

We must guard against too great severity or facility of manners.

In the circumstances I was at that time, my troubles pressed heavily upon me.

That species of commerce will produce great gain or loss.

His reputation and his estate were both lost by gaming.

This intelligence excited not only our hopes, but fears also.

He is not only sensible and learned but is religious too.

Who would learn this science, must have a great memory.

By vanity we provoke enmity, and we incur contempt.

He saluted every man and every woman there.

This ship had several men died of the scurvy.

All those possessed of any office resigned their commission.

This may afford some profit and amusement.

Perseverance in laudable pursuits, will reward our toils and will produce unexpected good events.

The sacrifices of virtue will not only be rewarded hereafter, but recompensed in this life.

By these happy labours  
they who sow and reap  
will rejoice together.

Charles was a man of  
learning, knowledge  
and benevolence, and  
what is still more a  
true christian.

They are serious and  
they are very studious.

We arrived safely but  
they did not.

The temper of him who is  
always in the bustle of  
the world will be often  
ruffled and be often dis-  
turbed.

We often commend im-  
prudently, as well as  
answer imprudently.

How a seed grows up in-  
to a tree, and minds  
acts upon body, are  
mysteries to us.

I was engaged in that  
business, but I shall  
never be engaged in it.

By this habitual indelica-  
cy, the virgins smiled  
at what they blushed at  
before.

They are reconciled to  
what they could not be  
formerly prompted, by  
any inducement.

Censure is the tax a man  
pays the public, for be-  
ing eminent.

Instead of aspiring higher  
bring your mind to your  
estate.

Reflect on human life,  
and the society of men  
mixed with good and  
evil.

The state of human life,  
is mixed with good and  
with evil.

In all conditions, the im-  
portant relations take  
place, of masters, and  
servants, and husbands  
and wives, and parents  
and children.

Destitute of principle he  
regarded neither his  
family, nor his friends,  
nor his reputation.

Nor life, death, angels,  
principalities or powers  
shall separate us from  
his love.

Religious persons are of-  
ten unjustly represent-  
ed as romantic or visi-  
onary, or ignorant of  
the world, or unfit to  
live in it.

O my father ! my friend,  
how great has been my  
ingratitude.

No rank, station, possessions, exempt a man from contributing to the lic good.

The embarrassment of these artificers rendered the work very slow.

What is human life but a mixture with various crosses and troubles.

He is a clergyman and is possessed with a true sense of his functions.

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES OF FALSE SYNTAX.

1. Israel loved Joseph more than all his children. 2. His ancestors were less nobler than Cesar's. 3. You will not have another such a chance. 4. I have several ; you are welcome to them two. 5. What dost thou mean by shaking your head. 6. The Jews are Abraham's, Isaac's and Jacob's offspring. 7. The excuse was admitted of by the company. 8. Our sect differ with them in opinion. 9. Maria always appears amiably ; she always behaves mild. 10. This officer was punished for the not exccenting the law. 11. I am exceeding joyful in all our tribulation. 12. Take you this pledge, and give me thine. 13. Me being but a child, was unnoticed. 14. Let you and I, be not at variance. 15. This magazine blowing up caused the town to surrender. 16. This story is related fuller by Livy than he. 17. Since she so loved, I cannot find, I will always grieve. 18. Their riches are decreasing and come to an end. 19. He rallied me so, as not in the least offend me. 20. I had often swam over this river. 21. The Jewish dispensation was now ceased. 22. Great crimes never end in old honored age. 23. Mankind will not be forced into or out of true Religion. 24. This is the same person whom we saw before. 25. He never has nor never shall be allowed that freedom. 26. This Prince acted so weak as to make the people hate him. 27. His power is so small, as you need not

fear him. 28. He was much easier led astray than me. 29. Every people on the Earth, has its peculiar customs. 30. The assured consequence of such conduct shall be that we will become unhappy. 31. Pekin is now the place in which is centered the learning and knowledge of China. 32. Which spirit was that, who the witch of Endor raised. 33. The constantly attending to this business, night and day caused a fever. 34. The concourse of these people were very great. 35. She has not yet put off all the regard for decency. 36. It is the Supreme Being which governs the world, and not man. 37. All the women, jewels and money, which were in the Seraglio, are now the Sultan's. 38. Though the scene was so affecting, she shewed a little emotion. 39. Year after year pass away without improvement. 40. Much of the good and evil that happen, seem the effect of chance. 41. It is not I who he wishes to wed. 42. Now not only his friends, but his wife too leaves him. 43. After living many years at London, he died in Rome. 44. The poor always ye have with ye. 45. He was raised from a state as bad, if not worse than bankruptcy. 46. I then intended to have sent a message to him. 47. Every one that lappeth of the water as a dog, him shalt thou set by himself. 48. He was so altered, that I was in doubt whether it could be him or not. 49. We admired the officer's, as we thought him, dress and noble air. 50. The Senate was divided in opinion on this subject. 51. I cannot believe but what they are free of this crime. 52. Was you present at this great spectacle? 53. If he be honest, I care little for his other qualities. 54. I looked and saw no man but he only. 55. When shall I see him ever again. 56. It is not the uttering or hearing pious words, that constitute the true worship of God. 57. If the heart accompany not the words, we offer a sacrifice of fools. 58. The idleness and ignorance of these men, if it be allowed to proceed will ruin us. 59. No human happiness is so complete, as it does not contain imperfection. 60. Either of these three

extremes shall be pernicious to virtue. 61. All must die, whether they will or no. 62. We are in a perilous situation ; on the former side are the army of our enemies, and on the latter, numbers of wild beasts. 63. When we have once fixed the line of our moral conduct, we ought not to transgress the line. 64. If I had known my friend's distress, it would be my duty to have relieved him. 65. A rose, a tulip, or a hyacinth, please the eye by their fine colours, as beautiful flowers. 66. This conduct was equally unjust as dishonorable. 67. Something more than gentleness and affability, complacency and modesty, are necessary to form a good man. 68. In his conduct was treachery, and in his words faithless professions. 69. Prosperity and adversity may be improved equally, both this and that proceeds from the same author. 70. If he sincerely acknowledges his fault, I will forgive him. 71. On these causes depend all the happiness or misery which exist among men. 72. Virtue and mutual confidence is the soul of friendship. 73. By these attainments are the master honored, and the scholars encouraged. 74. She was really in that sad condition, that her friends represent her. 75. The enemies who we have most to fear, are those of our own hearts. 76. Thou art the Messiah, who was to come to save the world, and hast been so long promised. 77. This machine was not more complete, yet not less inferior than the one before described. 78. Then this officer lay hold of him, and immediately executed him. 79. If you please to think of our disaster, you would easily conceive our miserable state. 80. This is one of these cases that require peculiar attention. 81. There were in the metropolis much to amuse them, as well as many things to excite disgust. 82. Riches might give us respect in vulgar eyes, but shall not recommend us to wise and good men. 83. Time and chance happeneth to all men. 84. Desires and wishes are the first spring of action. 85. Though this affair be mysterious, it is worthy of investigation. 86. His conduct shewed him little less



61. All  
e are in  
e the ar-  
nbers of  
the line  
gress the  
ress, it  
A rose,  
their fine  
duct was  
ng more  
and mo-  
68. In  
faithless  
may be  
eds from  
owledges  
causes  
exist a-  
ce is the  
ents are  
ouraged.  
that her  
who we  
ts. 76.  
save the  
77. This  
s inferior  
this offi-  
ted him.  
on would  
This is  
attention.  
o amuse  
st. 82.  
yes, but  
en. 83.  
84. De-  
n. 85.  
hy of in-  
ittle less

than a fool. 87. Which of the mountains of the Andes, is the loftier? 88. Of their more posterior designs I know not. 89. We do not know who to trust, them who seem true or false. 90. This is the prison where we were confined. 91. These prisoners are being taken to jail. 92. Art thou he that camest from Rome? 93. Several alterations and additions had been made to the work. 94. He took every advantage to make money, and by these means became rich. 95. O piety! virtue! how have I neglected you. 96. Let us trust in God, which raiseth the dead. 97. Since he summons me, I must the others. 98. The climate of England is not so pleasant as those of France, Spain or Italy. 99. John's ball is rounder than mine. 100. The going not to school every day, was the cause of this boy being flogged. 101. He wishes the whole human race's salvation. 102. They were purposed to visit the city but are not arrived yet. 103. Celia is a vain woman, whom if we do not flatter, she will be offended.

## OF PARSING AND CONSTRUCTION.

As we have now finished the explanation and Rules of the different parts of speech, it may be proper to give some examples of the manner in which Learners should be exercised, in order to prove their knowledge, and to render it familiar to them. The nature of the subject requires that it should be divided into two parts; viz: Parsing as it respects Etymology alone; and Parsing as it respects both Etymology and Syntax, which is also called Construction.

### SPECIMENS OF ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING.

“Virtue ennobles us.”

*Virtue* is a common Substantive, of the Neuter gender, the third person, the singular number, and in the Nominative case. (*Decline the Noun.*) *Ennobles* is an Active Verb, of the first variety, of the first Conjugation, Indicative Mood, Present Tense, and the third person Singular. (*Repeat the Present Tense, the Imperfect Tense, and the Perfect Par-*



*tiptle* ) *Us* is a Personal Pronoun of the first person Plural, and in the Objective case. (*Decline it.*)

“ Goodness will be rewarded.”

*Goodness* is a common Substantive, of the Neuter gender, in the Nominative case. (*Decline it.*) *Will be rewarded*, is a Verb of the first Conjugation, and second variety, in the Passive Voice, the Indicative Mood, the First Future Tense, and the third person Singular.

“ Gratitude is a delightful emotion.”

*Gratitude* is a common Substantive, of the Neuter gender, in the Nominative case. *Is*, an Auxiliary Verb Neuter, of the first variety of the secondary Conjugation, (but irregular, and therefore the Conjugation is shewn in full,) Indicative Mood, Present Tense and third person Singular. *A*, is the Indefinite article. *Delightful*, is an Adjective in the positive state. (*Repeat the degrees of comparison.*) *Emotion*, is a common Substantive of the Neuter gender, the third person, the Singular number, and the Nominative case.

“ They who forgive act nobly.”

*They*, is a Personal Pronoun, of the third person, the Plural number, and in the Nominative case. (*Decline it.*) *Forgive*, is an Active Verb, of the first variety, of the secondary Conjugation, Indicative Mood, Present Tense, and the third person Plural, whose preterite and Past Participle are different, and that forms this Participle in *n*. *Act* is a Verb Active, of the second variety of the first Conjugation, Indicative Mood, Present Tense, and the third person Plural. *Nobly* is an Adverb of quality. (*Repeat the Adjective from which it is derived ; and the degrees of comparison, both of the Adjective and Adverb.*)

“ Time flies, O ! how swiftly flies.”

*Time*, is a common Substantive of the Neuter gender, and in the Nominative case. *Flies*, is a Neuter Verb of the first variety, of the secondary Conjugation, in the Indicative Mood, Present Tense, and the third person Singular. (*Repeat the Present and Imperfect Tenses, and Past Participle.*) *O* ! is an Interjection. *How* and *swiftly* are Adverbs.

“ Time cuts down all with his scythe.”

*Time* is here not a common Substantive, it is personified in the Masculine gender. *Cuts*, is a Verb Active, of the third

variety, of the secondary Conjugation, Indicative Mood, and third person Singular. (*Having the same termination t, in all the Tenses and Past Participle, and forming its Imperfect properly, only by the Auxiliary did.*) *Down* is a Preposition. *All* is an Adjective, put Substantively, signifying 'all things.' *With* is a Preposition. *His* is a Pronoun in the Possessive case. *Scythe* is a common Substantive of the Neuter gender, the third person, and the Singular number.

### SPECIMENS OF CONSTRUCTION, OR OF SYNTACTICAL PARSING, AS WELL AS ETYMOLOGICAL.

"How wonderful are the works of the great Creator, who made all things of nothing, and supports us every moment by his power."

*How wonderful*, *how* an Adverb qualifies *wonderful* an Adjective, and is generally placed before it, by Rules xxxvi. and xl. *The works*, the Definite article is placed before either Singular or Plural Nouns, by Rule ii. *Of* governs *Creator* in the Objective case by Rule xli. *Great* belongs to its Noun *Creator* by Rule xvii. *Who* a Relative, agrees with its Antecedent *Creator* by Rule xvi. and is the Nominative to the Verb *made*, as also to *supports* to which Verb it is understood by Rule iii. *Supports* an Active Verb governs *us* in the Objective case, agreeably to Rule xxviii. *Every* a Distributive Pronoun, that agrees in the Singular with *moment* by Rule xix. The Preposition *during* is understood before *every*, as he supports us, *during every moment*. *By* governs *power* in the Objective case.

"Peace and joy are virtue's crown."

*Peace and joy* are common Substantives joined by the Copulative *and*, by Rule xlv. that says like cases are coupled by Conjunctions. *Peace and joy* are Nominatives to the Plural Verb *are* by Rule vi. *Virtue* governs *crown* in the Possessive case by Rule xxvi.

"Strive to improve."

*Strive* is a Verb Neuter, of the first variety of the secondary Conjugation, in the Imperative Mood, and of the second person Singular. (*Repeat the Imperfect Tense and Past Participle.*) *To improve* is a Neuter Verb of the first variety of the first Conjugation in the Infinitive Mood, and governed by *strive* according to Rule xxx.

"Who preserves us?"

*Who* is a Relative Pronoun of the Interrogative kind, and is in the Nominative case Singular. The word to which it relates (its subsequent) is the Noun or Pronoun containing the answer to the question, which must be a Nominative like *who*, as '*Who preserves us?*' *Preserves* is an Active Verb of the first variety of first Conjugation, Indicative Mood, Present Tense, agreeing with its Nominative *who*. *Us* is a Personal Pronoun governed in the Objective by *preserves*.

"We are not unemployed."

*We* is a Personal Pronoun and is the Nominative to the Verb *are*. *Not* is a Negative Adverb. *Unemployed* is a Participial Adjective in the positive state. The two Negatives *not* and *un* form an affirmative by Rule xxxviii.

"He is as wise as I."

*He* is Nominative to the Verb *is*. *As* is a Conjunction that pairs with the other *as* according to Rule xlvii. *I* is a Pronoun in the Nominative case, agreeing with the Verb *is* and understood according to Rule xlvi.

"It was no other than he."

*It* is a Neuter Pronoun connected to the Masculine *he*, according to the English idiom explained in Rule xiv. *Other* is a Pronoun that requires *than* after it by Rule xxv. *He* is a Pronoun in the Nominative case, understood by Rule xlviii.

"Woes thee, O ! wretched man."

*Woes* is an Interjection that always governs the Objective and so has *thee* after it, by Rule i. *O !* an Interjection generally prefixed to the Vocative. *Wretched* an Adjective belonging to *man*, a Noun in the Vocative case.

"It is not me, whom he designs to hire."

*It* a Neuter Pronoun. *Is* has a Nominative before it, and after it, except when followed by an Infinitive, &c. by Rule xxvii. *Not* a Negative Adverb. *Whom* a Relative in the Objective, governed by the Active Verb *designs*, by Rule xxviii. *He* a Pronoun, Nominative to *designs*. *To hire* an Active Verb in the Infinitive governing *me*, (after the Verb *to be*.) in the Objective, by Rule xxvii. If the Ellipsis supplied the sentence will stand thus, "It is not to hire *me* but another, whom he designs to hire."

"He will not be pardoned unless he repent."

*He* is a Personal Pronoun, of the third person Singular, Masculine gender, and in the Nominative case. *Will be pardoned* is a Passive Verb, of the second variety, of the first Conjugation, Indicative Mood, First Future Tense, agreeing with its Nominative '*he*,' and composed of the Auxiliaries '*will be*,' and the Perfect Participle pardoned. *Not* is a Negative Adverb, placed before the Verb, by Rule xxxvii. *Unless* is a Disjunctive Conjunction. *Repent* is a Neuter Verb of the first Conjugation, and second variety, in the Subjunctive Mood, the Present Tense, and agrees with its Nominative '*he*.' It is in the Subjunctive Mood, because it implies a future sense, and denotes uncertainty, signified by the Conjunction '*unless*,' agreeably to Rule xLvi.

"Good works being neglected, devotion is false."

*Good works being neglected*, being independent of the rest of the sentence, is the case Absolute according to the observation under Rule iii. *Devotion* is a common Substantive. (*Repeat the person. &c*) *Is*, is a Verb Neuter. *False* is an Adjective in the Positive state, and belongs to its Substantive '*devotion*,' understood agreeably to Rule xxii.

"The Emperor Marcus Aurelius, was a wise and virtuous Prince."

*The* is the Definite Article. *Emperor* is a common Substantive, the Masculine gender, and in the Nominative case. *Marcus Aurelius*, is a proper name or Substantive, and in the Nominative case, because it is put in apposition with the Substantive '*Emperor*,' agreeably to the observation under Rule xxvi. *Was* is a Verb Neuter, Indicative Mood, Imperfect Tense, agreeing with its Nominative case, '*Emperor*.' *A* is the Definite article, and agrees only with Singular Nouns by Rule ii. *Wise* is an Adjective and belongs to its Substantive '*Prince*.' *And* is a Conjunction. *Virtuous* is an Adjective and belongs to its Substantive '*Prince*,' which is a common Substantive, and in the Nominative case, as being after *to be* agreeably to Rule xxvii.

"The King wishes me to write them, that he has bound their enemies in chains."

*The* is the Definite Article. *King* is a common Substantive. *Wishes* is an Active Verb of the second variety of the first Conjugation, that when *s* is added puts an *e* before it, and agrees with its Nominative *King*, and governs the Pronoun

*me* in the Objective case. *To write* is an Active Verb of the first variety of the secondary Conjugation, in the Infinitive Mood, that omits *to* after it, but understood before the Pronoun *them* agreeably to Rule XLiii. *That* is a Copulative Conjunction. *He* is a Pronoun in the Nominative case, and agrees with *has bound*, which is an Active Verb of the fourth variety of the secondary Conjugation, that forms its Present and Past Participle in *nd*. *Their* a Possessive Pronoun. *Enemies* is the Plural of enemy, governed by *bound* in the Objective. *In* a Preposition governs *chains* in the Objective case.

“ To countenance persons who are guilty of bad actions, is scarcely one remove from actually committing them.”

*To countenance persons who are guilty of bad actions*, is part of a sentence which is the Nominative case to the Verb ‘*is*,’ agreeably to Rule v. *Scarcely* and *actually* are Adverbs. *One* is a Numeral Adjective agreeing with the Substantive ‘*remove*,’ in the Singular, agreeably to Rule xxii. *Remove* is a common Substantive of the Neuter gender, the third person, Singular number, and in the Nominative, as being after the Verb *to be*, agreeably to Rule xxvii. *From* is a Preposition. *Committing* is the Present Participle of the Verb Active to ‘*commit*,’ which is a Verb of the third variety of the first Conjugation, which doubles the last Consonant when *ing*, *ed*, &c. are added. *Them* is a Personal Pronoun, of the third person, the Plural number, and in the Objective case, governed by the Participle committing agreeably to Rule xxxiii.

“ Let me proceed.”

This sentence according to the idiom of the English, is in the Imperative Mood, of the first person, and Singular number. Some languages however have no first person. The sentence may be thus analyzed : *Let* is an Active Verb of the second variety of the secondary Conjugation, that forms its Present and Past Participle in *t*, in the Imperative Mood, of the second person, Plural number, and agrees with its Nominative case ‘*you*,’ understood : as, ‘*do you let*.’ *Me* is a Personal Pronoun, of the first person, the Singular number, and in the Objective case, governed by the Active Verb ‘*let*.’ *Proceed* is a Verb Neuter in the Infinitive Mood ; but omits *to* by being after *let*, agreeably to Rule xxx. and is governed also by *let* in the Objective, as if it was a Substantive.

"Living expensively and luxuriously destroys health."

"By living frugally and temperately health is preserved."

*Living expensively and luxuriously* is the Nominative case to the Verb *destroys*, agreeably to Rule v. *Destroys* is a Verb of the second variety of the first Conjugation, and governs health in the Objective case.

*By living frugally and temperately* is a Substantive phrase in the Objective case, governed by the Preposition 'by,' according to Rule xxxii.

The preceding specimens of Parsing and Construction, seem sufficiently explicit and diversified, to enable the learner to understand the nature of this employment; and to qualify him to point out, and apply the remaining Rules, principal or subordinate.

## QUESTIONS IN PARSING AND CONSTRUCTION

NECESSARY FOR THE EXAMINATION OF PUPILS.

Into how many parts is Grammar divided?

Of what does Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody treat?

How many parts of speech are there, and what are they?

### ARTICLE.

What is an Article and how many are there?

What is the Definite Article; what the Indefinite?

### SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

What is a proper, common, collective, abstract, or verbal Noun?

How many Genders have Nouns?

Is not the Feminine known from the Masculine by different words as King, Queen, &c.?

Do not the terminations *ess, a, ine, ix, elle, etta, ina*, also distinguish the Feminine from the Masculine ?

Are there not four cases in Nouns, and what are they ?

Decline the Nouns *man, fly, and fox*, in all the cases ?

How is the Nominative known from the Vocative and Objective ?

Is *s* the usual sign of the Possessive case ?

Have Nouns two numbers, the Singular and Plural ?

Is the Plural mostly made from the Singular by adding *s* ?

How do Nouns ending in *y* after a Consonant form the Plural ?

Do some Nouns ending in *f* or *fe* make the Plural in *ves* ?

How do Nouns ending in *s, ch, sh, o, and x*, form the Plural ?

Do some Nouns form the Plural in *en, ine*, and change *oo* into *ee* ; as *ox, cow, tooth, &c* ?

How do such Nouns as *Ellipsis, Emphasis, Index*, form the Plural ?

Do not some Nouns form the Plural in *a* and *i*, as, *stratum strata, bandit banditti* ?

Are some Nouns, as *deer, sheep*, used both as Singular and Plural ?

Have *gold, wheat, &c.* a Plural ?

Have *ashes, scissors, breeches*, a Singular ?

#### ADJECTIVE.

What is an Adjective common or numeral ?

How many degrees of comparison are there ?

How are the Comparative and Superlative re-



gularly formed from the Positive by *er* and *est*, and *more* and *most* ?

How are good, bad, less, far, &c. compared ?

How are Adjectives of three or more syllables compared ?

## PRONOUN.

What is a Personal, Possessive, Relative, Interrogative, Distributive, Indefinite or Demonstrative Pronoun ?

What are the Personal Pronouns, Singular or Plural ?

Which are Masculine, Feminine and Neuter ?

Are there not four cases in Pronouns as well as Nouns ?

Decline the Pronouns I, thou, he, she, it, we, ye, they, and who.

How are the Nominative and Possessive cases in Pronouns known from the Objective ?

Is who applied to things and which to persons ?

Is what and that applied to both ?

What sort of a relative is what ?

Are such Pronouns as themselves, yourselves, &c. Nominatives or Objectives ?

What are the Possessive Pronouns ?

What are the Distributive and Indefinite Pronouns ?

## VERB.

What is an Active or Transitive, Passive and Neuter Verb ?

What is a Defective Verb, and which are they ?

What is an Impersonal Verb, and how is it formed ?



What is a Mood, and how many Moods are there, and what are their names ?

What is the difference between the Indicative and Subjunctive Mood ?

What is the difference between the Indicative and Potential Mood ?

What is the difference between the Imperative and Infinitive Mood ?

What is a Tense, and how many Tenses are there, and what are their names ?

Have the Indicative and Subjunctive each six Tenses ?

Has the Potential more than four Tenses ?

Has the Infinitive more than two Tenses ?

Has the Imperative more than one Tense ?

What are the Auxiliary Verbs ?

In what Tenses are *do* and *did* used ?

What are the Auxiliaries used in the Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive ?

What are the Auxiliaries used in the first and second Future Tenses ?

What are the Auxiliaries used in the Potential Mood ?

How is a Passive Verb formed ?

What is the difference between the Imperfect or Present Participle, and the Perfect or Past ?

Is *ing* always the termination of the Imperfect Participle ?

In the first Conjugation, does the first person of the Imperfect Tense, and Past Participle end always in *ed* ?

When a Verb ends in *e*, such as *love*, is the *e* omitted when *ing* is added ?

When a Verb ends in *ee*, as *decree*, when *ing* is added is *e* omitted ?

Is *e* put before *s* when *s* is added, in such Verbs as *watch*, *box*, *press* ?

Is the last Consonant doubled of such Verbs as *differ*, *open*, *visit*, when *ing*, *ed*, &c. are added ?

Is the last Consonant doubled of Verbs having the accent on the last syllable, as *deter*, *compel*, *remit*, *blot*, when *ing*, *ed*, &c. are added ?

How do Verbs ending in *y* after a Consonant, as *try*, form the Past Tenses and Past Participle ?

Do such Verbs as *lead*, *breed*, *flee*, lose an *a* or *e* when they form the Past Tense and Past Participle ?

Does the Past Participle of the secondary Conjugation end in *n*, *t*, *g* and *k*, and also *d* with another letter before it than *e* ?

How is the Imperfect Tense of such Verbs as *rise*, *give*, *take*, *hide*, and *know* formed ?

Is *ed* changed into *t* in the Past Tense and Past Participle of some Verbs, as *dream*, *burn*, *pass*, *toss* ?

Is *d* in the Present, in *send*, *build*, *gild*, *gild*, &c. changed into *t* in the Past Tense and Past Participle ?

Have such Verbs as *shed*, *put*, *hit*, *thrust*, *durst*, *rid*, the same form in all the Tenses and Past Participle ?

Is the Past Tense or Past Participle of Verbs ending in *g* and *k*, as *sing*, *sink*, *drink*, formed by *a* and *u* ?

Do some Verbs lose a vowel of the Present in making the Past Tense or Past Participle; as, *choose*, *chose*, *chosen* ; *weep*, *wept* ?

Have some Verbs ending in *t*, *gh* before it, in the Past Tense and Past Participle : as, *fought*, *bought*, *taught* ?

Do such Verbs as *pay, bind, stand, tell*, form the Past Tense and Past Participle in *d* without *e*?

Is a Redundant Verb, one that has two terminations : as, *sawed, saen* ; *digged, dug* ?

#### ADVERB.

What is an Adverb, and is it absolutely necessary ?

Are Adverbs divided into those of number, order, place, time, manner, quality, affirmative, negative, &c. ?

May Adverbs be generally known by asking the questions, how, when, whither, &c. ?

How are Adverbs formed from such Adjectives as *able, ample, single*, &c. by adding *ly* ?

How are Adverbs of one or two syllables compared ?

How are Adverbs ending in *ly* and of three or more syllables compared ?

Compare *ill* or *badly*, *well*, *much*, *less*, and *far* ?

#### PREPOSITION, CONJUNCTION, AND INTERJECTION.

What is a Preposition, and what are the principal ones ?

How many kinds of Conjunctions are there ?

Repeat the Copulative and Disjunctive ?

What is an Interjection ?

What are those of joy, grief, contempt, calling, &c. ?

#### WORDS USED AS DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

Are some words, sometimes one part of speech and sometimes another : as, *grave, serious* ; *grave a tomb* ?

Is *that* a Relative, and a Demonstrative Pronoun ; and a Conjunction ?

Is *either* and *both* Distributive Pronouns and also Conjunctions ?

Is *for* both a Preposition and Conjunction ?

Is *much* both an Adjective and Adverb ?

Is *then* both an Adverb and Conjunction ?

#### QUESTIONS RESPECTING SYNTAX ALONE.

Is *a* or *an* put before a Consonant ?

Is *a* or *an* put before long *u*, *eu*, *ew*, and *one* ?

Is *a* or *an* put before *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, short *u*, and an *h* mute ?

Does the Indefinite article agree with Singular Nouns only ?

Does the Definite article agree with either Singular or Plural Nouns ?

Does an Abstract Noun, as, "*nothing*," take an article before it ?

Is an Article put before names of persons and places in the Singular or Plural ?

Is an Article put before an Adverb ?

Must a Verb agree with its subject or nominative, in number and person ?

Is the Infinitive Mood, or part of a sentence ever the Nominative to a Verb ?

Is it also sometimes the Objective to a Verb ?

When Nouns are coupled by Conjunctions, must the Verb be Singular or Plural ?

When Nouns are separated by Disjunctive Conjunctions, must the Verb be Singular ?

When Singular and Plural Nouns are separated by a Disjunctive, must the Verb be Plural ?

When a Verb is preceded by two Nominatives of different persons, may it agree with either ?

Is the Relative ever Nominative to a Verb ?

When a Noun conveys plurality or unity of idea, must it have a Singular or Plural Verb and Pronoun?

Must Personal Pronouns and Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person?

Must *ye* or *you* be followed by *you* and *your*, &c. and *thou* by *thee*, *thine*, *thyself*, &c.?

Can a Noun and its Pronoun be Nominatives or Objectives to one Verb?

Is the Neuter Pronoun *it* used with Singular and Plural, male and female Nouns?

When should the Relative *that* be used in place of *who*, *which*, and after *same*?

Must *either*, *neither*, *each*, *every*, and *one* agree with Singular Nouns?

When is *that* or *as* put after *such*?

Must Adjective Pronouns as *other*, or Numeral Adjectives agree with Nouns in number?

How are *this* and *these* used with *means*, *arguments*, &c.?

How are *this* and *these*, *former* and *latter*, used as Demonstratives?

Do Comparatives and the word *other* require *than* after them?

Do Superlatives require *of* and not *other*?

Is it proper to say the weaker of the three?

Is it proper to say the wisest of the two?

Does one Noun govern another, as also a Pronoun and the Present Participle in the Possessive case?

When has the Verb *to be* a Nominative, and when an Objective after it?

Do Active Verbs govern the Objective case?

Do some Neuter Verbs denoting motion, and change admit a Passive form?

Does one Verb govern another in the Infinitive?

What Verbs have the *to* of the Infinitive omitted after them ?

Should words have a due relation to each other in point of time ?

Must Verbs of hoping, desiring, intention, or command, be followed by the Present or Perfect of the Infinitive ?

Do Participles as well as Verbs govern the Objective ?

Are Participles governed by Prepositions ?

Is the Present Participle sometimes changed into a Noun with an article before it, and *of* after it ?

Are Adverbs placed mostly before Adjectives and Passive Verbs, but after Active and Neuter ?

How are Negative Adverbs mostly placed ?

Do two Negatives make an Affirmative and are they ever improper ?

When motion to or from a place is implied, should *where* or *whither* be used ?

Do Adverbs qualify only Adjectives, Verbs, or other Adverbs ?

Do Prepositions govern the Objective case ?

Must particular Prepositions follow certain words and phrases ?

Before what Verbs is *to* elegantly omitted ?

Do Conjunctions connect the same Moods and Tenses of Verbs, and cases of Nouns and Pronouns ?

What Conjunctions are chiefly used with the Subjunctive Mood ?

When is the Indicative to be used, and when is the Subjunctive ?

What are the Conjunctions that pair ?

When things are compared by *as* and *than*, how must the last Pronoun agree ?

What case of the first person should follow an Interjection ?

What case should follow *wo* ?

What is an Ellipsis ?

How must it be supplied in such a sentence as "Do not indulge in such cruel amusement !"

What words must be omitted in this, "He is a good man, he is a wise man ?"

## PROSODY.



PROSODY consists of two parts, the former teaches the true PRONUNCIATION of words, comprising, ACCENT, QUANTITY, EMPHASIS, PAUSES, and TONES ; and the latter the laws of VERSIFICATION.

### OF ACCENT.

Accent is the laying of a peculiar stress of the voice, on a certain letter or syllable, in a word, that it may be better heard than the rest, or distinguished from them ; as in the word *presùme*, the stress of the voice must be on the letter *u*, and second syllable *sume* which takes the accent. This is called the common accent.

Accent is either Principal or Secondary. The Principal Accent is that which necessarily distinguishes one syllable in a word from the rest. The Secondary Accent is that stress which we may occasionally place upon another syllable, besides that which has the principal accent ; thus, ' Complaisant, caravan,' and ' violin,' have frequently an accent on the first, as well as on the last syllable, though a somewhat less forcible one. The same may be observed of ' Repartee, referee, privateer, domineer, &c.' But though an accent is allowed on the first syllable of these words, it is by no means necessary. They may all with propriety be pronounced with one accent on the last syllable. It may be further observed, that though the syllable on which the principal accent is placed, is fixed and certain, yet we frequently make the secondary principal, and the principal secondary : thus, ' Caravan, complaisant, violin, repartee, referee, privateer, domineer,' may all have the greater stress on the first, and the less on the last syllable, without any violence to the ear : nay, it may be asserted, that putting the principal accent on the first syllable of these words, and none at all on the last, though certainly improper, has nothing in it grating or discordant ; but placing an accent on the



second syllable of these words would entirely derange them, and produce great harshness and dissonance. The same observations may be applied to 'Demonstration, provocation, navigator, alligator,' and every similar word in the language.

Accent seems to be regulated in a great measure by Etymology. In words from the Saxon, the accent is generally on the root ; in words from the learned languages, it is generally on the termination ; and if to these we add the different accents we lay on some words to distinguish them from others, we seem to have the three great principles of Accentuation ; namely, the *Radical*, the *Terminational*, and the *Distinctive*. The *Radical* : as, " Lóve, lóvely, lóveliness ;" the *Terminational* : as, " Hármony, harmónious ;" the *Distinctive* : as, " Cónvert, to convért."

#### ACCENT ON DISSYLLABLES.

Words of two syllables have necessarily one of them accented and but one. It is true, for the sake of emphasis, we sometimes lay an equal stress upon two successive syllables : as, " Dírect sómétimes ;" but when these words are pronounced alone, they have never more than one accent. The word *ámén* is the only word which is pronounced with two accents when alone.

Of Dissyllables formed by affixing a termination, the former syllable is commonly accented : as, " Childish, kingdom, actest, acted, toilsome, lover, scoffer, fairer, foremost, zealous, fulness, meekly, artist."

Dissyllables formed by prefixing a syllable to the radical word, have commonly the accent on the latter : as, " To beseeem, to bestow, to return, to revenge, to revile."

Of Dissyllables which are at once Nouns and Verbs, the Verb has commonly the accent on the latter, and the Noun on the former syllable : as,

"To cément, a cément ; to contráct, a cóntract ; to présage, a présage."

This rule has many exceptions. Though Verbs seldom have their accent on the former, yet Nouns often have it on the latter syllable : as, "Delight, perfume." Those Nouns which in the common order of language, must have preceded the Verbs, often transmit their accent to the Verbs they form, and inversely. Thus the Noun "water," must have preceded the Verb "to water ;" as the Verb "to correspond," must have preceded the Noun "correspondent ;" and "to pursue," claims priority to "pursuit." So that we may conclude, wherever Verbs deviate from the rule, it is seldom by chance, and generally in those words only where a superior law of accent takes place.

All Dissyllables ending in *y, our, ow, le, ish, ck, ter, age, en, et* : as, "Cranny, labour, willow, wallow," except "allow, avow, endow, below, bestow ;" "battle, banish, cambrick, batter, courage, fasten, quiet ;" accent the former syllable.

Dissyllable Nouns in *er* : as, "Canker, butter, powder," have the accent on the former syllable.

Dissyllable Verbs, terminating in a consonant and *e* final : as, "Comprise, escape ;" or having a diphthong in the last syllable : as, "Appease, reveal ;" or ending in two consonants : as, "Attend ;" have the accent on the latter syllable.

Dissyllable Nouns, having a diphthong in the latter syllable, have commonly their accent on the latter syllable : as, "Applause ;" except some words in *ain* : as, "Villain, curtain, mountain."

Dissyllables that have two Vowels, which are separated in the pronunciation, have always the accent on the first syllable : as, "Lion, riot, quiet, liar, ruin ;" except "create."

## ACCENT ON TRISYLLABLES.

Trisyllables formed by adding a termination, or prefixing a syllable, retain the accent of the radical word : as, " Loveliness, tenderness, contemner, waggoner, physical, bespatter, commenting, commending, assurance."

Trisyllables ending in *ous*, *al*, *ion* : as, " Arduous, capital, mention ;" accent the first.

Trisyllables ending in *ce*, *ent*, and *ate*, accent the first syllable : as, " Countenance, continence, armament, imminent, elegant, propagate ;" unless they are derived from words, having the accent on the last : as, " Connivance, acquaintance ;" and unless the middle syllable has a Vowel before two Consonants : as, " Promulgate."

Trisyllables ending in *y* : as, " Entity, specify, liberty, victory, subsidy ;" commonly accent the first syllable.

Trisyllables ending in *re* or *le*, accent the first syllable : as, " Legible, theatre ;" except " Disciple ;" and some words which have a Preposition : as, " Example, indenture, investure."

Trisyllables ending in *ude*, commonly accent the first syllable : as, " Plenitude, habitude, rectitude."

Trisyllables ending in *ator*, have the accent on the middle syllable : as, " Spectator, creator, &c." except, " Orator, senator, barrator, legator."

Trisyllables which have in the middle syllable a diphthong : as, " Endeavour ;" or a Vowel before two Consonants : as, " Domestic, elastic ;" accent the middle syllable.

Trisyllables that have their accent on the last syllable, are commonly French : as, " Acquiesce, repartee, magazine ;" or they are words formed by prefixing one or two syllables to a long syllable ; as, " Immature, overcharge, underrate."

## ACCENT ON POLYSYLLABLES.

Polysyllables, or words of more than three syllables, generally follow the accent of the words from which they are derived : as, "Arrogating, continency, incontinently, commendable, communicableness ;" though in some instances, they do not follow this rule : as, "commend," is not accented the same : as, "recommendation."

Words ending in *ator*, have the accent generally on the penultimate or last syllable but one ; as, "Liberátor, emendátor, gladiátor, equivocátor, prevaricátor."

Words ending in *le* commonly have the accent on the first syllable : as, "Amicable, despicable ;" unless the second syllable has a Vowel before two Consonants : as, "Combustible, condemnable."

Words ending in *ian*, *ion*, *ous*, and *ty*, *gy*, and *my*, *cy*, have their accent on the antepenultimate, or last syllable but two : as, "Musician, salvation, victorious, activity, longevity, astrology, astronomy, emergency."

Words which end in *ia*, *io*, *cal*, *ial*, *phy*, *try* and *quy*, have the accent on the antepenult : as, "Encyclopédia, punctilio, despótical, characterístical, artificial, mártial, philosophy, geometry, soliloquy."

The Rules respecting Accent are not advanced as complete or infallible. They are rather proposed as useful. Almost every language has its exceptions, and in English as in other tongues, much must be learned by example and authority.

## OF QUANTITY.

The quantity of a syllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. It is considered as long or short.

A syllable is long, when the accent is on the Vowel, which occasions it to be slowly joined in pre-

nunciation with the following letters : as, " Fall, bale, mood, house, feature."

A syllable is short, when the accent is on the Consonant, which occasions the Vowel to be quickly joined to the succeeding letter : as, " Ant, bonnet, hunger."

A long syllable generally requires double the time of a short one in pronouncing it: thus, " Mate," and " Note," should be pronounced as slowly again as " Mat," and " Not."

Unaccented syllables are generally short : as, " ädmäire, böldnäss, sinnär." But to this rule there are many exceptions : as, " älsö, éxile, gángrene, úmpire, fórestäte, &c."

When the accent is on a Consonant, the syllable is often more or less short, as it ends with a single Consonant, or with more than one : as, " sädly, róbber, persíst, máchless."

When the accent is on a Semi-Vowel, the time of the syllable may be protracted, by dwelling upon the semi-vowel : as, " éär, éän, fulfil ;" but when the accent falls on a mute, the syllable cannot be lengthened in the same manner : as, " Bubble captain totter."

The quantity of Vowels has in some measure been considered in treating of the different sounds of the letters : and therefore we shall dismiss this subject with a few general Rules and observations.

1st. All Vowels under the principal accent, before the terminations *ia*, *ie*, and *ion*, preceded by a single Consonant are pronounced long : as, " Regalia, folio, adhesion, explosion, confusion ;" except the Vowel *i*, which in that situation is short : as, " Militia, punctilio, decision, contrition." The only exceptions to this rule seems to be, " Discretion, battalion, gladiator, national, and rational."

2nd. All Vowels that immediately precede the terminations *ily* and *ety*, are pronounced long : as,

"Deity, piety, spontaneity." But if one Consonant precedes these terminations, every preceding accented Vowel is short, except *u*, and the *a* in "searcity," and "rarity;" as, "Polarity. severity, divinity, curiosity, impunity." Even *u* before two Consonants contracts itself: as, "Curvity, taciturnity."

3rd. The Vowels under the principal accent before the terminations *ic* and *ical*, preceded by a single Consonant, are pronounced short: thus, "Satanic, pathetic, elliptic, harmonic," have the Vowel short; while, "Tunic, runic, cubic," have the the Accented Vowel long: and "Fanatical, poetical, levitical, canonical," have the Vowel short; but, "Cubical, musical, &c." have the *u* long.

4th. The Vowel in the antepultimate syllable of words with the following endings, is always pronounced short.

Loquy; as, obloquy.	Parous; as, oviparous.
Strophe; as, apostrophe.	Cracy; as, aristocracy.
Meter; as, barometer.	Gony; as, cosmogony.
Gonal; as, diagonal.	Phony; as, symphony.
Vorous; as, carnivorous.	Nomy; as, astronomy.
Ferous; as, somniferous.	Tomy; as, anatomy.
Fluous; as, superfluous.	Pathy; as, antipathy.
Fluent; as, mellifluent.	

### OF EMPHASIS.

By Emphasis is meant a stronger and fuller sound of voice, by which we distinguish some words, or words on which we design to lay particular stress, and to shew how it affects the rest of the sentence; as in the words practise, and preach, in this sentence, "Practise virtue, rather than preach it."

On the right management of the Emphasis depends the life of Pronunciation. If no emphasis be placed on any word, not only will discourse be rendered heavy and lifeless, but the meaning often left ambiguous. If the emphasis is placed

wrong we shall pervert and confound the meaning. To give a common instance : such a simple question as this, “ Do *you* ride to town to day ? ” is capable of no fewer than four different acceptations, according as the emphasis is differently placed on the words. If it be pronounced thus : “ Do *you* ride to town to day ? ” The answer may naturally be, “ No, we send a servant in our stead.” If thus : “ Do you *ride* to town to-day ? ” Answer, “ No, we intend to walk.” “ Do you ride to *town* to day ? ” “ No, we ride into the country.” “ Do you ride to town to *day* ? ” “ No, but we shall to-morrow.” In like manner in solemn discourse, the whole force and beauty of an expression often depends on the emphatic word, and we may present to the hearers quite different views of the same sentiment, by placing the emphasis differently.

As accent dignifies the syllable on which it is laid, so emphasis ennobles the word to which it belongs. Were there no accents, words would be resolved into their original syllables ; were there no emphasis sentences would be resolved into their original words ; and in this case the hearer would be under the painful necessity, first of making out the words and afterwards their meaning. The emphasis often lies on the word that asks a question : as, “ Who said so ? ” “ When will he come ? ” “ What shall I do ? ” “ Whither shall I go ? ” “ Why dost thou weep ? ” And when two words are set in contrast or opposition to one another, they are both emphatic : as, “ He is the *tyrant* not the *father*, of his people ; ” “ His subjects *fear* him, but they do not *love* him.” Some sentences are so full and comprehensive that almost every word is emphatic, as in that pathetic expostulation in Ezekiel, “ Why will ye die.”

Emphasis has been divided into simple and complex, and superior and inferior. The meaning of such divisions seems to be chiefly, that emphasis may be stronger or weaker. The following sentence contains an example of simple emphasis : “ And Nathan said to David, Thou art the man.” The emphasis on *thou*, seems only to point out the meaning of the speaker. But in this sentence, “ Why

"Will you die," we perceive emotion of the speaker superadded to the simple meaning.

Emphasis besides its other offices, is the great regulator of quantity. Though the quantity of our syllables is fixed in words separately pronounced, yet it is mutable when these words are ranged in sentences. The long being changed into short, the short into long, according to the importance of the words with regard to meaning, and as it is by emphasis only that the meaning can be pointed out, emphasis must be the regulator of quantity ; an example will make this evident.

Pleased thōu, shalt hēar—and learn the secret power, &c.

Pleased thou, thōu shalt hear—and thou alone shalt hear.

In the first of these instances the words *pleased* and *hear* being equally emphatic are both long, whilst the two intermediate words *thou* and *shalt* being rapidly passed over as the sense demands are reduced to a short quantity. In the second instance, the word *thou* by being the most important, obtains the chief or rather the sole emphasis, and thus it is not only restored to its natural long quantity, but obtains from emphasis a still greater degree of length, than when pronounced in its separate state. Their greater degree of length is compensated by the diminution of quantity, and the words *pleased* and *hear* which are sounded stronger than in the preceding instances. The word *shalt* still continues short. Here we may also observe that though *thou* is long in the first part of the verse, it becomes short when repeated in the second, on account of the more forcible emphasis belonging to the word *alone* which follows it.

Emphasis changes not only the quantity of words and syllables, but also the seat of the accent, as in the following examples, "He shall *increase*, but I shall *decrease* ;" "There is a difference between



giving and forgiving ;” “ In this species of composition, *plausibility* is much more essential than *probability*.” In these examples the emphasis requires the accent to be placed on syllables to which it does not commonly belong.

In order to acquire the proper management of the emphasis, the great rule is that the speaker or reader study to attain a just conception of the force and spirit of the sentiments which he is to pronounce. It is proper to caution the reader against the error of multiplying emphatic words too much. To crowd every sentence with emphatic words is like crowding all the pages of a book with *Italic* characters, which, as to the effect is just the same as to use no such distinctions at all.

#### OF PAUSES.

Pauses or rests in speaking and reading are a cessation of the voice during a perceptible and sometimes a measurable space of time : as, “ He died for our sins—But he rose again from the dead.”

There are two kinds of Pauses : first, emphatic pauses ; and next such as make the distinction of sense. An emphatic pause is made after something has been said of peculiar moment, and on which we desire to fix the hearer’s attention. Such pauses have the effect of a strong emphasis, and are subject to the same rules, especially to the caution of not repeating them too frequently. For as they excite uncommon attention and raise expectation, if the importance of the matter is not fully answerable to such expectation, they occasion disappointment and disgust. But the most frequent use of pauses is to mark the divisions of the sense, and at the same time allow the speaker to draw his breath ; and the proper and delicate adjustment of such pauses is one of the most nice and difficult articles of delivery. In all reading and public speaking the management of the breath requires a good deal of care, so as

not to oblige us to divide words from one another, which have so intimate a connexion, that they ought to be pronounced with the same breath, and without the least separation. Many sentences are miserably mangled, and the force of the emphasis totally lost, by the division being made in the wrong place. It is a great mistake to imagine that the breath must be drawn only at the end of a period, when the voice is allowed to fall. It may easily be gathered at the intervals of the period, when the voice is only suspended for a moment ; and by this management one may always have a sufficient stock for carrying on the longest sentence, without interruptions.

To render pauses pleasing and expressive, they must not only be made in the right place, but also accompanied with a proper *tone* of voice, by which the nature of these pauses is intimated ; much more than by the length of them which can seldom be exactly measured. Sometimes it is only a slight and simple suspension of voice that is proper ; sometimes a degree of cadence in the voice is required ; and sometimes that peculiar tone and cadence which denotes the sentence to be finished. In all these cases we ought to regulate ourselves, by attending to the manner in which nature teaches us to speak, when engaged in real and earnest discourse with others. It is a general rule, that the suspending pause should be used when the sense is incomplete, and the closing pause when it is finished. But there are sentences in which though the sense is not completed, the voice takes the closing rather than the suspending pause ; and others in which the sentence finishes by the pause of suspension. The closing pause must not be confounded with the fall of the voice or *cadence*, with which many readers uniformly finish a sentence. Nothing is more destructive to propriety and energy than this habit. The tones and inflections of the voice at the close of a sentence, ought to be diversified according to the general nature of the discourse, and the particular construction and meaning of the

sentence. In plain narrating, and especially in arguing, it is frequently more proper to raise the voice than let it fall at the end of a sentence. Some sentences are so constructed that the last words require a stronger emphasis than any of the preceding, while others admit of being closed with a soft and gentle sound. Where there is nothing in the sense which requires the last sound to be elevated or emphatic, an easy fall, sufficient to shew that the sense is finished, will be proper.

### OF THE TONES OF ELOCUTION.

Tones are different both from emphasis and pauses, consisting in the modulation of the voice, the notes or variations of sound, which we employ in the expression of our sentiments.

Accent and Quantity affect the due pronunciation of words; Emphasis and pauses the meaning of them; but Tones are various according to the feelings of the speaker. Emphasis affects particular words and phrases with a degree of tone or inflection of the voice; but tones properly so called, affect sentences, paragraphs, and sometimes even the whole of a discourse.

To shew the use and necessity of Tones, we need only observe, that the mind in communicating its ideas, is in a continual state of activity, emotion, or agitation, from the different effects, which those ideas produce in the speaker. Now the end of such communication, being not merely to lay open the ideas, but also the different feelings which they excite in him who utters them, there must be other signs than words, to manifest those feelings; as words uttered in a monotonous manner, can represent only a similar state of mind, perfectly free from all activity or emotion. The whole Animal world express their various feelings by various tones. But the nature of man, from the superior rank that he holds, are in a high degree more comprehensive; as there is not an act of the mind, an exertion of the fancy, or an emotion of the heart, which has not its

peculiar tone, or note of the voice, by which it is to be expressed ; and which is suited exactly to the degree of internal feeling. It is chiefly in the proper use of these tones, that the life, spirit, beauty, and harmony of delivery consists.

The first thing to be considered in Elocution, then, is *Inflection* of the voice. Inflection, is the varying of this tone in discourse, from one note to another. The variation of the voice from a lower to a higher note, is called the *rising* inflection. That from a higher to a lower is called the *falling* inflection. These inflections may be understood from the following examples :

1st. The *rising* inflection, “ So then you will go ? ”

2nd. The *falling* inflection, “ When do you mean to go ? ”

It would appear that questions that may be answered with *yes* or *no* require the *rising* inflection, but those that demand any other answer, the *falling*.

The figures in Rhetoric, *Antithesis*, *Climax*, *Anticlimax*, *Exclamation*, and *Interrogation*, claim particular attention when spoken. In this sentence, “ He is of pure Roman blood,—I am of mean foreign extraction ; He is a Patrician,—I am a Plebeian ; He is rich,—I am poor.” The opposition of meaning requires that the first part of the Antithesis should be pronounced in a higher tone than the second. The Climax requires the voice to rise, as if by steps, as in this passage, “ From Tribune he was made Consul, from Consul Dictator, from Dictator Emperor.” The Anticlimax requires the voice both to rise and fall, as in the following passage, “ From Tribune he was made Consul, from Consul Dictator, from Dictator Emperor ;—but he shall now be degraded lower than the meanest slave.” The voice *falls* from the words “ but he shall, &c.” In Exclamation the voice is raised at the pronunciation of any Interjection—or Noun when one is un-

derstood : as, “ O Death ! where is thy sting ! O Grave ! where is thy victory ! ” In Interrogation the voice rises at the end of a question—but is low in the answer : as in the following, “ Will you basely betray your country ? Will you sell your precious liberty for gold ? No my noble Citizens, you never will.”

An extract from the beautiful lamentation of David over Saul and Jonathan, may serve as an example of a composition requiring variety of tones : “ The beauty of Israel is slain upon thy high places. How are the mighty fallen ! tell it not in Gath ; publish it not in the streets of Askalon ; lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice ; lest the daughters of the uncircumcised triumph. Ye mountains of Gilboa let there be no dew nor rain upon you, nor fields of offerings ; for there the shield of the mighty was vilely cast away ; The shield of Saul, as though he had not been anointed with oil.” The first of these divisions expresses sorrow and lamentation ; therefore the note is low. The next contain a spirited command and should be pronounced much higher. The other sentence in which he makes a pathetic address to the mountains where his friends were slain, must be expressed in a note quite different from the two former ; not so low as the first, nor so high as the second, in a manly firm and yet plaintive tone.

In the foregoing examples, the proper variation of voice seems not very difficult to be discriminated, but in many impressive pieces accurate directions for inflection of tones cannot easily be given, as in the following piece.

“ But O how vast must be the Saviour’s love !  
How great beyond the reach of human thought !  
Who from Philanthropy alone did leave,  
A throne of Glory for the pangs of Death.  
To die for sinners,—Nay, to die for enemies,  
*To more than die,—to bear the wrath divine,*

Till *Nature* suffer thro' her wide domain.  
 Now adamantine rocks are rent asunder,  
 And now *Earth* trembling to her centre shakes ;  
 And now the splendid *Sun* himself, grows dark ;  
 And even the *Dead*, whom Death had firmly bound,  
 In his low dungeon of the loathsome Grave,  
 Thousands of years, awake to second life,  
 Break their strong bonds, and issue from the  
 "Tomb."

In the above verses the *Pathetic*, the *Wonderful*, and the *Terrible Sublime*, are equally blended, and require a variety of tones to recite them. Perhaps different Orators might speak them quite differently and yet with the same impressive effect. *Hamlet's Meditation on Death*, and *Cato's Soliloquy*, are also examples which different Orators are known to have spoken differently, yet with the same animated impression.

There is no composition in the English language that requires such diversified tones, as *Collins's Ode on the Passions*. Whoever would wish to be fully acquainted with all the varieties of Inflection, should particularly study this Ode. By properly studying this, and other pieces of merit, the correct and natural *language of the emotions*, may not be so difficult to be attained, as many may imagine. If we enter into the spirit of the author's sentiments, as well as into the meaning of his words, we shall not fail to deliver the words in properly varied tones.

A *Monotony*, or uniform *Cadence*, is in general to be avoided. The best way to correct it, is frequently to recite pieces in which *antitheses* abound, and argumentative pieces with *Interrogatives*, or earnest *exclamation*. But though a dull *Monotony* is to be avoided, yet a plain simple narrative, is often better spoken in the same tone, than by fantastic attempts at *Theatrical embellishments*, of which the simplicity of the subject will not admit.

## OF VERSIFICATION.

Versification is the arrangement of a certain number and variety of syllables according to certain Laws.

Verse is either with, or without rhyme. Verse without rhyme is called blank verse.

Rhyme is the correspondence of the last sound of one word to the last sound or syllable of another.

Rhyme has been divided into, first, Legitimate, as *Greece* and *fleece*, *bind* and *find*, *plain* and *reign*, and even *joys* and *flies*, are legitimate. Secondly, French Rhymes when they have the same sound but differ in sense : as, *assent* and *dissent*, *whole* and *hole*, *vein* and *vain*. Thirdly, false Rhymes : as, *form* and *torn*, *durst* and *thrust*, *sleep* and *feet*. French and false Rhymes, abound in old English Poetry even among the best Poets, as Spencer, Butler, and old Psalms in metre, &c.

Feet and Pauses are the constituent parts of Verse.

#### OF POETICAL FEET.

A certain number of syllables connected, form a foot. They are called *feet*, because it is by their aid, that the voice, as it were, steps along through the verse, in a measured pace, and it is necessary that the syllables which mark regular movement of the voice, should in some manner be distinguished from the others. This distinction was made among the Ancients, by dividing their syllables into long and short, and ascertaining their quantity, by an exact proportion of time in sounding them ; the long being to the short, as two to one ; and the long syllables, being thus the more important marked the movement. In English, syllables are divided into accented and unaccented ; and the accented syllables being as strongly distinguished from the unaccented, by the peculiar stress of the voice upon them, are equally capable of marking the movement, and pointing out the regular paces of the voice, as the long syllables were by their quantity, among the ancients.

By having both quantity and accent, we have all the ancients had, and something which they had



Verse

sound  
another.

Greece  
en joys  
es when  
ent and  
ly, false  
eep and  
h Poetry  
and old

arts of

, form  
by their  
through  
ecessary  
ment of  
guished  
among  
to long  
by an  
he long  
he long  
ked the  
ed into  
d sylla-  
e unac-  
n them,  
ut, and  
as the  
ong the

ve have  
hey had

not. We have in feet duplicates of each foot, yet with such a difference, as, to fit them for different purposes, to be applied at our pleasure.

All feet used in English Poetry, consist either of two or three syllables, and are reducible to nine kinds ; four of two syllables, and five of three, as follows :

DISSYLLABLE.

A Trochee — ˘

An Iambus —

A Spondee — —

A Pyrrhic ˘ ˘

TRISYLLABLE.

A Dactyl — ˘ ˘

An Amphibrach ˘ — ˘

An Amphimacer — ˘ —

An Anapæst ˘ ˘ —

A Tribrach ˘ ˘ ˘

A Trochee has the first syllable accented, and the last unaccented : as, ‘ *Hateful, pottish.* ’

An Iambus has the first syllable unaccented, and the last accented : as, ‘ *Betray, consist.* ’

A Spondee has both the words or syllables accented : as, ‘ *Pale moon.* ’

A Pyrrhic has both the words or syllables unaccented : as, ‘ *On the tall tree.* ’

A Dactyl has the first syllable accented, and the two latter unaccented : as, ‘ *Lăbăurěr, pōssiblē.* ’

An Amphibrach has the first and last syllable unaccented, and the middle one accented : as, ‘ *Dēlightfŭl, dōmēstic.* ’

An Amphimacer has the first and last syllables accented, and the middle unaccented : as, ‘ *Rēlă-tive, măgăzine.* ’

An Anapæst has the two first syllables unaccented, and the last accented : as, ‘ *Cōntrăvêne, ăcquiesce.* ’

A Tribrach has its syllables unaccented : as, ‘ *Ţă it sŏ ;* ’ or the three last syllables of ‘ *Numără-blē, conquērăblē.* ’



*Iambic Verse is of different lengths.*

The shortest Iambic consists of two Iambuses :  
as,

Tō mē thē rōse,  
No longer glews.

The second form consists of three Iambuses : as,

Oūr rāce will sōon bē rûn ;  
Our days will soon be done.

The third form is made up of four Iambuses :  
as,

And māy āt lāst mÿ wēārÿ āge,  
Find out the peaceful Hermitage.

The fourth species of Iambic measure consist<sup>s</sup>  
of five Iambuses : as,

Ā hēap of dūst ālōne rēmāins of thēe,  
'Tis all thou art, and all the prond shall be.

This is called Heroic measure, in its simplest form, it consists of five Iambuses ; but it often admits of other feet intermixed, particularly Trochees, to prevent monotony.

The fifth form of the Iambic is commonly called the *Alexandrine* measure. It consists of six Iambuses, as in the last line of the following verses :

But fix'd his word his saving pow'r remains ;  
Thÿ rēalm fōr ēvēr lāsts, thÿ ōwn Mēssīāh rēigns.

The Alexandrine is rarely used, but in heroic rhyme, and when used sparingly and with judgement, occasions an agreeable variety.

We need not notice other combinations of Iambic measure, as of four and three feet, called common metre ; or of four and four feet called long metre.

*Trochaic Verse is of several lengths.*

The first form of the Trochee consists of two feet : as,

Oñ thē mōuntāin,  
By a fountain.

The second form consists of three Trochees : as,

Or, where Hēbrūs wāndērs,  
Rolling in meanders.

The third consisis of four Trochees : as,

Wār hē sūng īs tōil ānd trōublē,  
Honor but an empty bubble.

The fourth Trochee is composed of five feet : as,

Āll thāt wālk ōn fōot ōr rīde īn chārīots,  
All that dwell in palaces or garrets.

The fifth form consists of six Trochees : as,

Ōn ā mōuntāin, strētch'd bēnēath ā hōarȳ willōw,  
Lay a shepherd swain, and view'd the rolling  
billow.

*Amphibrachic Verse seems chiefly of four different lengths.*

The shortest verse is of one foot : as,

Dīsdāinīng,  
Complainīng.

The second form consists of two feet : as,

Dēspāirīng cōnfōundēd,  
With furies surrounded.

The third form consists of three feet : as,

Šhe līves ōn thē bānks ōf Kīllārnēy.

The fourth and longest form of the Amphibrach consists of four feet : as,

Ālōne tō thē bānks ōf thē dārk rōllīng Dānūbe.

*Anapæstic Verse is of different lengths.*

The shortest must be a single Anapæst : as,

Būt īn vāin,  
They complain.

The second form is made up of two Anapæsts :  
as,

Bùt hīs cōūrāge 'gān fāil,  
Fōr nō arts cōuld āvail.

The third form consists of three Anapæsts : as,

Ō ye woōds sprēād yoūr brānchēs āpaeē ;  
I wōuld hīde wīth the beasts of the chaeē.

The longest Anapæst consists of four feet : as,

Māy Ī gōvērn mī pāssīōns wīth ābsōlūte swāy ;  
And grōw wīser and better as līfe wears āway.

*The shortest Amphimacer in English, consists of one  
foot : as,*

Tūmūlt cēase,  
Sink to peace.  
Fīres thāt glōw,  
Shrieks of woe.

The second form consists of two Amphimacers :  
as,

Lēt ōūr lōve cōnstant bē ;  
I wīll prōve, true to thee.

There is not perhaps in English an example of  
verse of this measure of more than two feet.

The Spondee, Pyrrhic and Tribrach, form no  
entire verses, each by themselves, but mixed with  
other feet, diversify the measure, and a Pyrrhic in  
one part of a verse, may be compensated, by a  
Spondee in another part.

The same observations may be made of the  
Dactyl, which seems to be chiefly used, mixed with  
other feet ; for entire verses composed of Dactyls  
are not common in the English language.

Above we have given examples of the different  
measures of verses in their simple form ; but they  
are capable of numerous variations, by the intermix-  
ture of different feet, as in the following instances.

pæsts :

Ūpōn ā moūntain,  
Beside a fountain.

In this couplet, the first foot is an Iambus, the second an Amphibrach.

ts : as,

Īn the dāys ōf ōld,  
Fables plainly told.

ē ;  
ace.

The first foot is here an Iambus, the last an Amphimacer.

et : as,

Rēstlēss mōrtāls toil fōr noūght.

wāy ;  
way.

In this verse, the first two feet are Trochees, the last an Amphimacer.

s of one

Thēn hīs cōmāge 'gān faīl hīm.

In this verse the first foot is an Anapæst, the second a Pyrrhic, and the last a Trochee.

O dismal night she said and wept,  
O night of pain and sorrow.

macers:

In these verses the first six feet are Iambuses, the last an Amphibrach.

Ābōve thōugh ōpprēst bȳ mȳ fāte.

ample of

In this verse, the two first feet are Amphibrachs, the last an Iambus.

form no  
xed with  
rrhic in  
d, by a

Thē Ārchāngēl's trūmpēt soūnds sōlēmn ōn hīgh;  
With bodies immortal the saints mount the sky.

Here the three first feet are Amphibrachs, the last an Iambus.

e of the  
xed with  
Dactyls

Āh mē ! Ī've lōst mȳ trūe lōve,  
My Phillida adieu love.

The two first feet here, are Iambuses, the last is an Amphibrach.

different  
but they  
ntermix-  
ances.

Thē faīr Mālvīnā wēeps,  
While shē sīngs thē deāth ōf Ōscār.

In these verses, the first line is three Iambuses, the last line is four Trochees.

Shě tŭrn'd hĕr rōund ānd rōund,  
 Shě wās dīstrāctĕd.  
 She knew not what she said,  
 Nor what she acted.

In these verses, the first foot is an Amphibrach, the second an Amphimacer, the third an Iambus, and the last an Amphibrach.

He will anticipate—squander and dissipate,  
 All you have hoarded with anxious care ;  
 And in his foolishness,—caprice and mulishness,  
 Charge you with avarice,—spurning your prayer.

In these verses the first and third lines contain each three Dactyls ;—the second and fourth lines contain each three Dactyls and a Spondee.

More examples of different combinations of feet, might be given ; but these seem sufficient, to show the variety of measures, that has been introduced into English Rhyme.

Blank Verse is generally supposed to be the same measure as Heroic rhyme, viz. five Iambuses ; but to prevent monotony, and improve the melody other feet are often introduced into it, in greater variety than is generally done in Heroic rhyme, though many of the following examples and observations, are as applicable to it, as to Blank Verse.

Fāvoŭrs tō nōne tō āll shĕ smīles ĕxtĕnds.

The first foot is here a Trochee, and the rest Iambics.

Trochees in many instances, seem to improve Heroic rhyme more than any other feet.

'Tis Heāven ĭtsĕlf thāt pōints ōūt ān hĕrĕāftĕr.

The last foot here is an Amphibrach.

Mŭrmŭrīng and with him fled the shades of night

The first foot in this line is a Dactyl, the rest Iambics.

Innūmērāblē before the Almighty's throne.

Here in the second foot we find a Tribrach.

Thāt ōn wēak wīngs from far, pursues your flight

In this line the first foot is a Pyrrhic, the second a Spondee.

Sēe thē bōld yōuth strāin ūp thē thrēat'nīng stēep.

In this line, the first foot is a Trochee, the second a genuine Spondee by quantity, the third a Spondee by accent.

O'ēr măný ā frōzēn, măný ā fiērý ālp.

This line contains three Amphibrachs, a Trochee, and an Iambus.

Stōod rūl'd, stōod vāst infinītude cōnfīn'd.

In this line the first two feet are Spondees, the next other two Pyrrhics, and only one foot an Iambus. The contrast of Spondees and Pyrrhics, creates an agreeable variety of measure.

Many Verses can be scanned double, and this shews the effect of accent on English verse, more than any other example : as in this couplet.

Fame let thy trumpet sound ;

Tell all the world around.

Which if scanned as verse usually is, each line would consist of three Iambics ; but by the way in which it has been set to music in the King's Anthem, each line is made three Trochees, by placing the accent on the first, instead of the second syllable.

The most part of verse of Anapæstic measure, may be scanned as Amphibrachs, by cutting off the first syllable ; as in these verses beginning, " O ! ve woods, &c." " May I govern, &c."

Yē wōods sprēad yōur brānchēs āpāce.

Ī gōvērn mý pāssions with ābsōlūte swāy.

The first verse thus altered, contains two Am-

phibrachs and an Iambus. and the second three and an Iambus. These verses thus modified, have a more pleasing melody than before, and the measure is much more common.

#### OF POETICAL PAUSES.

There are two sorts of pauses, one for sense, and one for melody, perfectly distinct from each other. The former may be called *Sentential*, the latter *Harmonic* pauses.

The *Sentential*, are those which are known by the name of stops, and which have names given them ; as the Comma, Semicolon, &c.

The *Harmonic* may be divided into the *final*, and the *Cæsural* pauses. These sometimes coincide with the *Sentential*, and sometimes exist where there is no stop in the sense.

The *Final Pause* takes place at the end of the line, closes the verse, and marks the measure : The *Cæsural* divides it into equal or unequal parts.

It is the final pause which alone, on many occasions, marks the difference between *Prose* and *Verse* ; which will be evident from the following arrangement of a few poetical lines.

“ Of man’s first disobedience, and the fruit of  
that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste, brought  
death into the world, and all our wo, sing heavenly  
muse.”

A stranger to Milton’s poem, would not easily discover that this was verse ; but would take it for poetical prose. By properly adjusting the final pause, we shall restore the passage to its true state of verse.

Of man’s first disobedience, and the fruit  
Of that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste  
Brought death into the world, and all our wo,  
Sing heavenly muse !

The Cæsura is commonly on the fourth, fifth, or sixth syllable of Heroic Verse.

On the fourth syllable, or at the end of the second foot : as,

The silver eel" in shining volumes rolled,  
The yellow carp" in scales bedropp'd with gold.

On the fifth syllable, or in the middle of the third foot : as,

Round broken columns" clasping ivy twined,  
O'er heaps of ruin" stalk'd the stately hind.

On the sixth syllable, or at the end of the third foot : as,

Oh say what stranger cause" yet unexplor'd,  
Could make a gentle belle" reject a lord.

A line may be divided into three portions by two Cæsuras : as,

Out stretch'd he lay" on the cold ground" and oft"  
Look'd up to heaven.

That the Final and Cæsural Pauses contribute to melody, cannot be doubted, by any person who reviews the instances given of those pauses



## PUNCTUATION.



PUNCTUATION is the art of dividing a written composition into sentences, or parts of sentences, by points or stops, for the purpose of making the different pauses which the sense, and an accurate pronunciation require.

The Comma represents the shortest pause ; the Semicolon a pause double that of the Comma ; the Colon double that of the Semicolon ; and the Period double that of the Colon.

The points are marked thus :

The Comma,	The Colon :
The Semicolon ;	The Period.

In order more clearly to determine the proper application of the points, we must distinguish between an *imperfect phrase*, a *simple sentence*, and a *compound sentence*.

An Imperfect Phrase contains no assertion, or does not amount to a proposition or sentence : as, " In haste ;" " studious of praise."

A Simple Sentence has but one subject, and one finite Verb, expressed or implied : as, " Temperance preserves health."

A Compound Sentence has more than one subject, or one finite Verb, either expressed or understood ; or it consists of two or more simple sentences connected together : as, " Good nature, mends and beautifies all objects ;" " Virtue refines the affections, but vice debases them."

### OF THE COMMA.

The Comma usually separates those parts of a sentence, which though very closely connected in sense and construction, require a pause between them.

**RULE 1.** In a simple sentence, the several words of which it consists have so near a relation to each other, that in general, no points are requisite, except a full stop at the end of it : as, "Every part of matter swarms with living creatures."

A simple sentence however, when it is a long one, and the Nominative case accompanied with Adjuncts, as the Infinitive mood, &c. may admit of a pause immediately before the Verb : as, "To be indifferent to praise or censure, is a real defect in character."

**RULE 2.** When the connexion of the different parts of a simple sentence is interrupted by an imperfect phrase or an address, it is separated from the rest of the sentence by a Comma : as, "I remember, *with gratitude*, his goodness to me." "I am obliged to you, *my friends*, for your favours."

**RULE 3.** A simple member of a sentence, contained within another, or following another, must be distinguished by a Comma : as, "Very often, while we are complaining of the vanity, and the evils of human life, we make that vanity, and we increase those evils."

**RULE 4.** When two or more Nouns, two or more Adjectives, two or more Verbs, two or more Participles, two or more Adverbs, succeed one another, they must be separated by Commas ; as, "Reason, virtue, honour, forbid it ;" "He was brave, wise, and pious ;" "I advise, exhort, and request you, to desist ;" "He was a man, fearing, loving, and serving his Creator." "Success depends, on acting, prudently, steadily, and vigourously."

**RULE 5.** But two Nouns, two Adjectives, two Verbs, two Participles, two Adverbs, joined by a Conjunction are not separated : as, "Virtue and vice, form a contrast." "Truth, is fair and artless." "Study, expands and elevates, the mind."

"He was esteemed and respected." "Some men sin, deliberately and presumptuously."

But if two Nouns, are separated by several intervening words, before the Conjunction, the Comma ought to be inserted : as, "Intemperance destroys our bodies, and also our minds."

**RULE 6.** The Verb *to be*, followed by an Adjective or the Infinitive mood, should generally be set off by a Comma : as, "To be charitable, is commendable."

When *to be* is followed by an Infinitive, it may generally be its Nominative, and it then requires a Comma : as, "It is, a grand virtue, to love our enemies." "To love our enemies, is a grand virtue."

**RULE 7.** When a Verb in the Infinitive mood follows its governing Verb with several words between them. Those words should generally have a Comma at the end of them : as, "It ill becomes good and wise men, to oppose and degrade one another."

Several Verbs in the Infinitive mood having a common dependence and succeeding one another, are also divided by Commas : as, "To comfort the afflicted, to relieve the indigent, are humane employments."

**RULE 8.** A Comma is to be inserted when a Verb is understood : (especially before *but*, *though*, and *not*,) as, "From law arises security ; from security, (arises) curiosity ; from curiosity, knowledge." "I will obey the King, not you." "He is a good man, but severe."

**RULE 9.** Nouns in apposition, that is, Nouns added to other Nouns in the same case, by way of explicative or illustration, when accompanied with adjuncts, are set off by Commas : as, "Paul, the Apoatle of the Gentiles, was eminent for his zeal and

knowledge." "The butterfly, child of the summer, flutters in the sun."

But if such Nouns are single, or only form a proper name, they are not divided : as, "Paul the Apostle." "The Emperor Antoninus wrote an excellent book."

**RULE 10.** An inverted sentence, should generally have a Comma, though it requires none when not inverted : as, (Inverted) "By threads innumerable, our interests are interwoven" (Natural order,) "Our interests are interwoven by innumerable threads."

**RULE 11.** Words emphatically repeated, should be divided by Commas : as, "Ah ! it can never, never, be." "Happy, happy, pair."

**RULE 12.** The Case Absolute, or the Infinitive mood absolute, or Participles placed independently of the rest of the sentence, must be separated by a Comma : as, "Their ministry performed, they left the world in peace" "To confess the truth, I was in fault." "The King, approving the plan, put it in execution."

**RULE 13.** A comparative sentence, if short and not compared by *as* or *so* : as, "Mankind act oftener from caprice than reason ;" requires no Comma ; if longer or compared by *as* or *so*, it requires it : as, "As the heart panteth after the water brooks, so doth my soul pant after thee." If very long it requires the semicolon.

**RULE 14.** When words are placed in opposition to each other, or with some marked variety, they require to be distinguished by a Comma, as well as sometimes by the Semicolon : as,

"Tho' deep, yet clear ; tho' gentle, yet not dull ;  
Strong, without rage ; without o'erflowing, full."  
"Good men in this frail state, are found not only in

union with, but in opposition to, the views of one another."

**RULE 15.** A remarkable expression, or a short observation in the manner of a quotation, may be marked with a Comma : as, "Plutarch calls lying, the vice of slaves."

**RULE 16.** Relative Pronouns, generally admit a Comma before them : as, "He preaches sublimely, *who* lives a sober pious life." "There is no charm in the female sex, *which* can supply the place of virtue."

But when two numbers or phrases are closely connected by a Relative, restraining the Antecedent to a particular sense, the Comma should be omitted : as, "A man *who* is of a detracting spirit, will misconstrue the most innocent words." In this example, the assertion is not of "a man in general," but of "a man who is of a detracting spirit ;" and therefore they should not be separated. When a Preposition precedes a Relative, a Comma is not commonly used : as, "He is a man, to whom I am obliged."

**RULE 17.** The words *now, first, secondly, formerly, lastly, finally, once more, above all, on the contrary, in the next place, in short,* and words and phrases of the same kind, must generally be separated from the context by a Comma.

An attention to the sense of any passage, will it is presumed, with the aid of the preceding rule, enable the student, to adjust the proper places for inserting the Comma.

#### OF THE SEMICOLON.

The Semicolon is used for dividing a compound sentence into two or more parts, not so closely connected as those which are separated by a Comma, nor yet so little dependent on each other, as those which are distinguished by a Colon.

The Semicolon is used, when the preceding number of a sentence does not give a complete sense, but depends on the

following clause : and it is also used, when the sense of that member would be complete without the concluding one : as in the following instances : " Experience teaches us, that an entire retreat from worldly affairs, is not what religion requires ; nor does it even enjoy a long retreat from them." " Straws swim upon the surface ; but pearls lie at the bottom."

The Semicolon is used to distinguish the opposition of a long comparative sentence : as, " As the desire of approbation, when it works according to reason, improves the amiable part of our species in every thing that is laudable ; so nothing is more destructive to them when it is governed by vanity and folly."

Three or four Semicolons may follow one another, before a Period : as, " Philosophers assert, that Nature is unlimited in her operations ; that she has inexhaustible treasures in reserve ; that knowledge will always be progressive ; and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries, of which we have not the least idea."

The Semicolon is often placed before a Conjunction : as, " but, nor, that, &c."

#### OF THE COLON.

The Colon is used to divide a sentence into two or more parts, less connected than those which are separated by a Semicolon ; but not so independent as separate distinct sentences.

The Colon may be properly applied in the three following cases.

1. When a member of a sentence is complete in itself, but followed by some supplemental remark, or further illustration of the subject : as, " Nature confessed some atonement to be necessary : the Gospel discovers that the necessary atonement is made."

2. When several Semicolons have preceded, and a still greater pause is necessary, in order to mark the connecting or concluding sentiments : as, " A Divine Legislator uttering his voice from Heaven ; an Almighty Governor stretching forth his arm to punish or reward ; informing us of perpetual rest for the Righteous, and indignation and wrath awaiting the wicked : these are the considerations which support integrity and check guilt."

3. The Colon is commonly used, when an example, a quotation, or a speech is introduced : as, " The Scriptures

give us an amiable representation of the Deity in these words : " God is love." " He was often heard to say : I have done with the world, and I am willing to leave it."

The propriety of using a Colon or Semicolon, is sometimes determined by a Conjunction's being expressed or not expressed : as, " Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness : There is no such thing in the world." " Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness ; *for* there is no such thing in the world."

### OF THE PERIOD.

When a sentence is complete and independent, and not connected in construction with the following sentence, it is marked with a Period.

Some sentences are independent of each other, both in their sense and construction : as, " Fear God. Honour the King. Have charity towards all men." Others are independent only in their Grammatical construction : as, " One light always shines upon us from above. One clear and direct path is always pointed out to man."

A Period may sometimes be admitted between two sentences, though they are joined by a Disjunctive or Copulative Conjunction. For the quality of the point does not always depend on the connective principle, but on the sense and structure of sentences : as, " He who lifts himself up to the observation and notice of the world, is, of all men, the least likely to avoid censure. For he draws upon himself a thousand eyes, that will narrowly inspect him in every part."

The Period should be used after every abbreviated word : as, " M. S. ; P. S. ; N. B. ; A. D. ; O. S. ; N. S. ; A. M."

### OF THE DASH, NOTES OF INTERROGATION AND EXCLAMATION, &c.

#### THE DASH.

The Dash though often used improperly, may be introduced with propriety where the sentence breaks off abruptly ; where a significant pause is required ; or where there is an unexpected turn in the

sentiment : as, " If thou art he, so much respected once—but, oh ! how fallen ! how degraded ! "

" Here lies the great—— False marble where ? Nothing but sordid dust lies here."——

Besides the points which mark the pauses in discourse, there are others which denote a different modulation of voice in correspondence to the sense. These are,

The Interrogation point, ?

The Exclamation point, !

The Parenthesis, ( )

### INTERROGATION.

A note of Interrogation is used at the end of a sentence, when a question is asked : as, " Who will accompany me ? " Questions which a person asks himself, ought to be terminated by points of Interrogation : as, " Who adorns the heavens with such exquisite beauty ? "

A point of Interrogation is improper after sentences which are not questions, but expressions of admirations or some other emotion : as, " How many instances have we of excellence in the fair sex. " It should not be employed, in cases when it is only said a question has been asked, and where the words are not used as a question : as, " The Cyprians asked me why I wept. " To give this sentence the Interrogative form, it should be expressed thus : " The Cyprians said to me, ' Why dost thou weep ? ' "

### ON AND

### EXCLAMATION.

The note of Exclamation is applied to expressions of sudden emotion, surprise, joy, grief, &c. and also to invocations or addresses : as, " Oh ! had we remained but humble ! " " Hear me O Lord ! for thy loving kindness is great ! " " My friend ! this conduct amazes me ! "



It is difficult in some cases, to distinguish between an Interrogative and Exclamatory sentence ; but a sentence in which any wonder or admiration is expressed, and no answer expected, may always be properly terminated by a note of Exclamation : as, " How much vanity in the pursuits of men ! " " What is more amiable than virtue ! "

The utility of the points of Interrogation and Exclamation appears from the following examples, in which the meaning is signified and discriminated solely by the points.

" How great was the sacrifice ! "

" How great was the sacrifice ? "

The quantity of time required for the points of Interrogation and Exclamation, is about equal to a Colon or Period. They mark an elevation of the voice.

There are other characters, made use of in composition, viz :

An Apostrophe, marked thus ' is used to abbreviate or shorten a word : as, 'tis, for it is ; tho' for though ; e'en for even ; judg'd for judged. Its chief use is to shew the Possessive case of Nouns : as, " A man's property."

A Caret marked thus ^ is placed where some word happens to be left out in writing, and which is inserted over the line.

A Hyphen marked thus - is employed in connecting compound words : as, " Lap-dog, tea-pot, pre-existence, to-morrow, mother-in-law "

It is also used when a word is divided, and the former part is written or printed at the end of one line, and the latter part at the beginning of another. In this case, it is placed at the end of the first line, not at the beginning of the second.

There are three Accents, the Common that denotes the stress of the voice, as in *presúme* ; the Acute, marked thus ' : denotes a short vowel, as in *Fáncy* ; and the Grave, thus ` : a long one, as in *Fàvour*.

In English the Accentual marks are chiefly used in Spelling Books and Dictionaries, to mark the

vowel or syllables which require a particular stress of the voice in pronunciation.

The stress is laid on long and short syllables indiscriminately. In order to distinguish the one from the other, some writers of Dictionaries have placed the Grave on the former, and the Acute on the latter, in this manner : *Mînor, mîneral, rîval, rîver.*

The proper mark to distinguish a long syllable is this  $\bar{\text{~}}$  : as in " *Rôsy* ;" and a short one this  $\text{~}$  : as in " *ôppose.*" This last mark is called a breve. Another mark viz. this  $\wedge$  has sometimes been placed over a particular vowel, to denote a long syllable : as in " *Euphrâtes.*"

A Diæresis thus marked  $\cdot\cdot$  consists of two points placed over one of the two vowels, that would otherwise make a diphthong, and parts them into two syllables : as, " *Creâtor, coâdjutor, aërial.*"

A Section marked thus §, is the division of a discourse, or chapter, into less parts or portions.

A Paragraph ¶ denotes the beginning of a new subject, or a sentence not connected with the foregoing. This character is chiefly used in the Old and New Testaments.

A Quotation " ". Two inverted Commas are generally placed at the beginning of a phrase or a passage, which is quoted or transcribed from the speaker or author in his own words ; and two Commas in their direct position are placed at the conclusion : as,

" The proper study of mankind is man."

Crotchets or Brackets [ ] serve to inclose a word or sentence, which is to be explained in a note, or the explanation itself, or a word, or a sentence, which is intended to supply some deficiency. or to rectify some mistake.

A Brace or Circumflex } is used in Poetry at


the end of a triplet or three lines, which have the same rhyme.

Braces are also used to connect a number of words with one common term, and are introduced to prevent a repetition in writing or printing.

An Asterisk or little star \*, directs the reader to some note in the margin, or at the bottom of the page. Two or three Asterisks generally denote the omission of some letters in a word, or of some bold or indelicate expression, or some defect in the manuscript.

A Ellipsis ——— is also used, when some letters in a word, or some words in a verse, are omitted : as, “ The K—g,” for “ the King.”

An Obelisk, which is marked thus †, and Double Dagger ‡, and Parallels thus ||, together with the letters of the Alphabet, and figures, are used as references to the margin, or bottom of the page.

An Index or Fland  points out a remarkable passage, or something that requires particular attention.

## OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

The following words should begin with Capitals.

1st. The first word of every book, chapter, letter, paragraph, or any other piece of writing.

2nd. The first word after a Period , and if the two sentences are *totally independent*, after a note of Interrogation, or Exclamation ; but they are improper unless independent.

3rd. The appellations of the Deity : as, “ God, Jehovah, the Almighty, the Supreme Being, the Lord, Providence, the Messiah, the Holy Spirit.”

4th. Proper names of persons, places, streets, mountains, rivers, ships : as, “ George, York, the Strand, the Alps, the Thames, the Seahorse.”

5th. Adjectives derived from the proper names of places : as, " Grecian, Roman, English, Italian, &c."

6th. The first word of an example, and of a quotation in a direct form : as, " Always remember this ancient maxim : ' Know thyself.' " But when a quotation is brought in obliquely, a capital is unnecessary : as, " Solomon observes, ' that pride goes before destruction.' "

7th. The first word of every line in Poetry.

8th. The Pronoun I, and the Interjection O !

9th. Every Substantive and principal word in the title of books : as, " Johnson's Dictionary ;" " Thomson's Seasons ;" " Rollin's Ancient History."

10th. Words of particular importance : as, " the Reformation, the Restoration, the Revolution, &c "

11th. When personification takes place of inanimate things : as, " O ! Death where is thy sting."

## EXERCISES IN PUNCTUATION.

### C O M M A.

#### RULE I.

The tear of repentance  
brings its own relief.  
It is honorable to be a  
friend to the unfortu-  
nate.

Too many of the pretend-  
ed friendships of youth  
are mere combinations  
of pleasure.

#### RULE II.

Gentleness is in truth the  
great avenue of mutual  
enjoyment.  
To you my worthy bene-  
factor am I indebted

under Providence for  
all I enjoy.  
Continue my dear child  
to make virtue thy  
study.

## RULE III.

His conduct upon the whole was virtuous though he had many failings he gained public esteem.

By whatever means we may at first attract the

attention we can hold the esteem and secure the hearts of others only by amiable dispositions and the accomplishments of the mind.

## RULE IV.

Discomposed thoughts agitated passions and ruffled tempers poison every pleasure of life.

In his domestic sphere he was harsh jealous and irascible.

We ought to respect es-

teem honor and praise the good man.

He was esteemed loved and admired by all who knew him.

We ought to live soberly righteously and piously in the world.

## RULE V.

Time and tide wait on no man.

Between passion and lying there is not a finger's breadth.

Vicissitudes of good and evil trials and consolations fill up the lot of man.

The wise and good the honest and virtuous will

surely attain felicity in another world.

He spoke and acted wisely and properly.

Repent and amend your wicked life and be seriously and religiously inclined.

He accomplished his base designs by lying and deceiving.

## RULE VI.

The greatest misery is to be condemned by our own hearts.

To be condemned by our own hearts is the greatest misery.

Charles's highest enjoyment was to relieve the distressed.

To relieve the distressed was Charles's highest enjoyment.

## RULE VII.

It shews a mind naturally  
wicked to persecute  
good men.

It is an evil disposition  
indeed to despise all  
advice.

To be humble in opinion  
to be attentive in con-  
duct to restrain rash  
desires are surely vir-  
tues.

## RULE VIII.

As a companion he was  
severe and satirical as  
a friend captious dan-  
gerous and untrue.

He was a good preacher  
yet a bad man.  
The Sun is risen though  
he is invisible.

## RULE IX.

Cicero the great Roman  
Orator was a virtuous  
man.

The Patriarch Joseph is  
an illustrious example

of chastity and filial af-  
fection.

Hope the balm of life  
soothes us under every  
misfortune.

## RULE X.

Him that is weak in the  
faith receive ye.

Receive ye him that is  
weak in the faith.

He sacrificed his reputa-

tion to enjoy present  
pleasure.

To enjoy present pleasure  
he sacrificed his repu-  
tation.

## RULE XI.

Ah no no I cannot agree  
to such a proposal.

Verily verily I say unto  
you.

He is fallen fallen fallen  
from his high estate  
and weltering in his  
blood.

## RULE XII.

Peace of mind being se-  
cured we may smile at  
misfortunes.

To say the least they have  
betrayed great want of  
prudence.

Virtue abandoned and  
conscience reproaching  
us we become terrified  
with imaginary evils.

Paul beholding the coun-  
cil said I have lived in  
all good conscience till  
this day.

#### RULE XIII.

Frederick is a wiser and  
better man than Philip.  
She is much more capri-  
cious than her sister.

As the tree falleth so it  
lieth and as a man  
liveth so he commonly  
dieth.

#### RULE XIV.

For whom he did fore-  
know he did predesti-  
nate whom he did pre-  
destinate them he also  
called and whom he  
called them he also  
justified.

Though humble yet he  
was dignified though  
simple firm though rich  
yet generous and  
though religious not  
bigoted.

#### RULE XV.

We are strictly enjoined  
'not to follow a multi-  
tude to do evil.'  
Would you be great be  
wise and virtuous.

Vice is not of such a na-  
ture that we can say to  
it 'Hitherto shalt thou  
come and no further.'

#### RULE XVI.

The gentle mind is like  
the smooth stream  
which reflects every ob-  
ject in its just proporti-  
on and fairest colours.  
Many of the evils which

we complain of are ima-  
ginary.  
They who raise envy will  
easily incur censure.  
Give honor to whom it is  
due.

#### RULE XVII.

I proceed secondly to  
point out the proper  
state of our temper.

Frequently interest impels  
us strongly to comply.

Sometimes false shame prevents our opposing vicious customs.

I shall make some obser-

vations first on the internal and next on the external condition of man.

## SEMICOLON.

The path of truth is a plain and a safe path that of falsehood is a perplexing maze.

As there is a worldly happiness which God perceives to be no other than disguised misery so there is a worldly

wisdom which in his sight is foolishness.

Levity is frequently the forced production of folly or vice cheerfulness is the natural offspring of wisdom and virtue only.

## COLON.

There is no mortal truly wise and restless at the same time wisdom is the repose of minds.

All our conduct towards men should be influenced by this important precept 'Do unto others as you would that others should do unto you.'

He who from the benignity of his nature created the world for the abodes of men he who furnish-

ed it so richly for our accommodation and stored it with so much beauty for our entertainment this amiable and beneficent Being surely can have no pleasure in our disappointment and distress.

When we look forward to the year which is beginning what do we behold there all is a blank to our view a dark unknown presents itself.

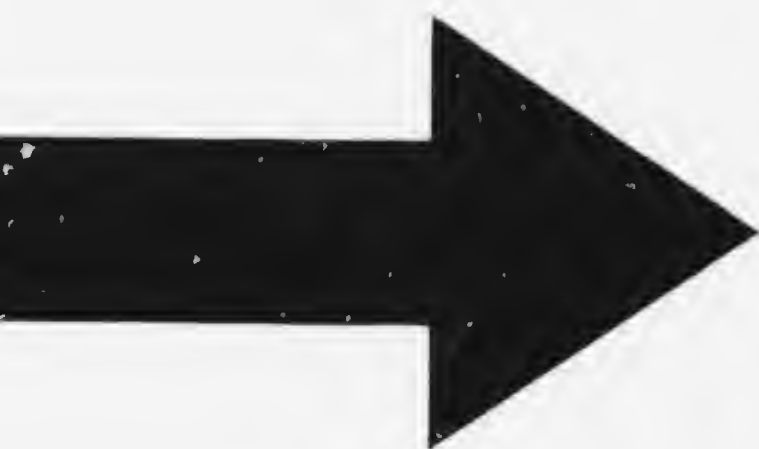
## PERIOD.

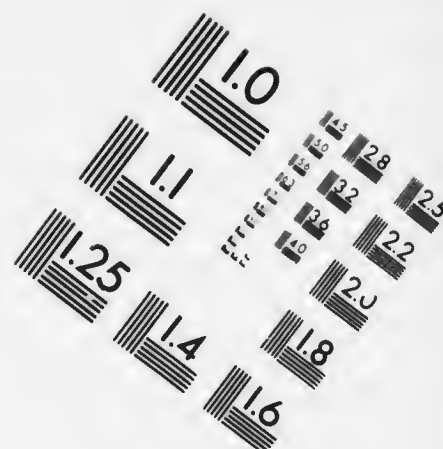
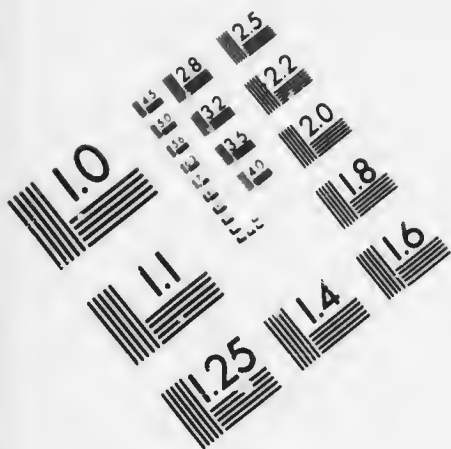
Prosperity debilitates instead of strengthening the mind Its most common effects is to create

an extreme sensibility to the slightest wound It foment impatience desires and raises expect-

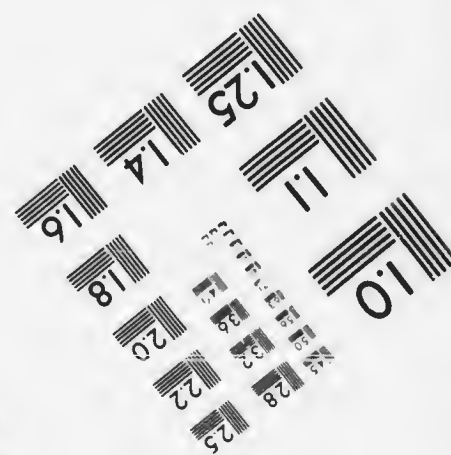
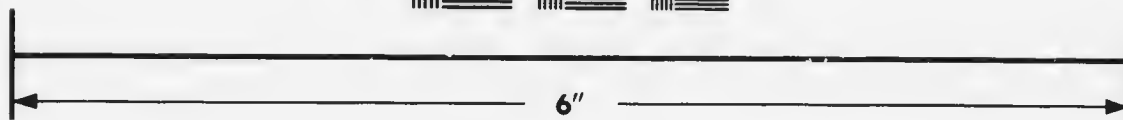
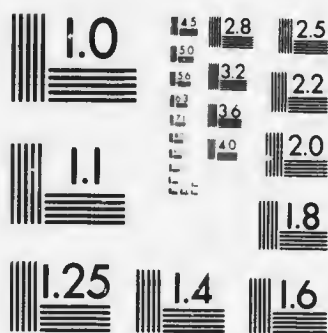








# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

25  
22

<p>tations which nothing can satisfy Between fame and true honour a distinction is to be made The form- er is a loud and noisy applause the latter is a more silent and inter- nal homage Fame</p>	<p>floats on the breath of the multitude honour rests on the judgment of the thinking Fame may give praise while it withholds esteem true honour implies esteem mingled with respect.</p>
--	---

### INTERROGATION, EXCLAMATION, DASH, &c.

We wait 'till to-morrow to be happy alas why  
not to day shall we be younger Are we sure we  
shall be healthier will our passions become feebler  
and our love of the world less

Oh the dark days of vanity while here  
How tasteless and how terrible when gone

Father of light and life thou good supreme  
O teach me what is good teach me thyself

All this dread order break for whom for thee  
Vile worm O madness pride impiety

Shall we continue in sin that grace may abound  
God forbid

How I have dreamt of things impossible could  
sleep do more than form such fancies wild

The Student to perfect himself in Punctuation, should ex-  
ercise his ingenuity in placing the points properly in the above  
examples, which for this reason are left unpunctuated.

## APPENDIX,

### ON ACCURACY AND DEFECTS OF COMPOSITION.

TO BE STUDIED BY PUPILS, AFTER THEY HAVE AC-  
QUIRED A COMPETENT KNOWLEDGE OF GRAMMAR.



### OF STYLE.

Style is the peculiar manner in which a person expresses his ideas. It is not to be regulated wholly by rules of construction ; for the words employed by a writer may be so constructed as to violate no rule of Syntax, and yet the style may have many faults.

Style has been characterized by various epithets: as, “ Negligent—nervous—concise—obscure—feeble—affected—stiff—easy—elegant—florid—grave or solemn—familiar—burlesque, &c.” There are also the, “ Historic—narrative—poetic—romantic styles.”

A diversity of style may be found in compositions, all equally excellent in their kind. Different subjects indeed require this diversity. A learner in forming his style, should bear in mind, that a negligent, affected, stiff and obscure style, is always full of faults ; and that ease, perspicuity, neatness and strength, are qualities, that should if possible be attained.

In order to form a good style, the Pupil should compose frequently, as well as read the best authors, and use their phrases in his composition. When he has acquired a sufficient knowledge of Grammar, he

ought to devote a considerable part of his time to this important object ; which will both exercise and strengthen the powers of his mind, and will make him acquainted with language, taste and sentiment.

The requisites of a good style may be summed up in Purity, Propriety, Precision, Perspicuity, Unity, Strength, and a judicious use of figures of speech.

#### OF PURITY.

Purity consists in using the best words and phrases of a language. To attain this, avoid foreign words or idioms, as, *hauteur, politesse, delicatesse*, it serves to a good purpose, &c. Avoid uncommon words, these without proper authority, or form disagreeable compounds : as, Incumberment, connexity, judgematical, martyrised, questionless, lowlily, summarily, unsuccessfulness, tenderheartedness.— Avoid words that are obsolete: as, Albeit, moreover, aforetime, I wist not, quoth he, &c.

A multitude of *Latinized* as well as *Frenchified* words, have of late been introduced into our language, by which its powers of strength and precision have been much impaired.

#### OF PROPRIETY.

A style may be pure without foreign idioms, and may yet be deficient in propriety ; for the words may not be adapted to the subject, nor express properly the author's meaning. To preserve propriety of diction, 1st. *Avoid low expressions* : such as, “ Topsy turvy ; to get into a scrape ; all was in a hubbub ; the gift of the gab, &c.” “ Meantime the Britons *left to shift for themselves*, were forced to call in the Saxons for their defence.” The phrase *left to shift for themselves*, is low and too much in the familiar style, to be proper in a grave treatise.

2nd. *Supply words that are wanting.* In these passages : " He has not treated the subject liberally, by the views of others, as well as his own." " By *adverting* to the views of others," would have been better. " This generous action greatly increased his former services ;" should be " increased *the merit* of his former services."

Articles, Prepositions, Relatives, &c. are sometimes improperly omitted, of which we have already given examples.

3rd. *In the same sentence, do not use the same word too frequently, nor in different senses.* " One may have an air, *which* proceeds from a just sufficiency and knowledge of the matter before him, *which* may naturally produce some motions of the head and body, *which* might become the bench better than the bar." The Pronoun *which* is here used so as to throw obscurity over the passage. " Gregory *favoured* the undertaking, for no other reason, than that the manager in countenance *favoured* his friend," better " resembled his friend." " Charity expands our hearts in love to God and man ; it is by the virtue of charity that the rich are blessed and the poor supplied." In this sentence the word charity is improperly used in two different senses ; for the highest benevolence and almsgiving.

4th. *Avoid the injudicious use of technical terms.* To inform those who do not understand sea phrases, that, " *Wetacked to the larboard, and stood off to sea ;*" would be expressing our ideas very obscurely. Technical phrases not being in current use, but only the peculiar dialect of a particular class, should never be used, but when they will be understood.

5th. *Avoid unintelligible and inconsistent words or phrases.* " I have observed," says Steele, " that the superiority among these coffee-house politicians, proceeds from an opinion of gallantry and fashion."



This sentence conveys no proper meaning. It is not said whose opinion, or of what sort, true or false, &c. but "an opinion of gallantry and fashion ;" which contains no definite idea. With the assistance of conjecture, we may conclude, that the author intended to say, "That the rank among these politicians was determined by the opinion entertained of the rank in point of gallantry and fashion, that each of them had attained." An author speaking of Humility, says, "This temper of mind keeps our understanding tight about us." Whether the author had any meaning in this expression, or what it was, is not easy to determine.

Some writers run on in a specious verbosity, with synonymous terms, high sounding words and well turned periods, but using those words so indefinitely—that the reader either can affix no meaning to them, or any meaning almost he pleases.

6th. *Avoid ambiguity, and equivocal words and phrases.* (See Ambiguity.)

7th. *Avoid in Prose, Poetical words ; as, Oft, plaints, morn, ere while, methinks, what time the storm arose, &c.*

8th. *Avoid these words which are less significant than others of the ideas meant to be communicated.—* "He feels every sorrow that can arrive at man ;" better, "happen to man." "The conscience of approving one's self a benefactor is the best recompence for being so ;" it should be *consciousness*. "It is but opening the eye, and the scene enters." A scene cannot be said to enter : an actor enters, but a scene appears or presents itself. "A General remarks all the motions of his enemy ;" better "A General observes." "He applied a medicine before the poison had time to work ;" better, "applied an antidote." "I will go except I should be ill ;" "I saw them unless two or three ;" corrected thus, "unless I should be ill ;" "except two or three." "We see that we are encumbered with difficulties, which we cannot avoid ;" better "we perceive our-

selves involved in difficulties that cannot be avoided."

9th. *When things are compared and contrasted, where a resemblance or an opposition is intended, some resemblance in the language should be preserved.*—

The following passage from Pope's *Homer*, exemplifies this rule: "Homer was the greater genius; Virgil the better artist; in the one we most admire the man; in the other the work. Homer hurries us with a commanding impetuosity; Virgil leads us with an attractive majesty, &c."

The following sentences are faulty in this respect, "The wise man is happy when he gains his own approbation. The fool when he recommends himself to the applause of those about him." The opposition would appear more regular, if expressed thus, "The wise man is happy when he gains his own approbation; the fool when he gains that of others." "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues, an enemy inflames his crimes;" better "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues, an enemy his crimes."

10th. The tenth and last rule for preserving propriety in words and phrases is, *to attend to the use of Copulatives, Relatives, and all particles employed for transition and connexion.* The little words *but, and, or, which, when, then, therefore, because,* are frequently the most important. They are the joints or hinges upon which all sentences turn. The varieties in using them are indeed so many that no particular system of Rules respecting them can be given. We have already on Ellipsis and other rules, shewn that they are sometimes to be omitted and sometimes not.

Some writers needlessly multiply particles, such as, *there is, therefore, &c.* as, "There is nothing that disgusts sooner than empty pomp of language." "He was bequeathed £1000, and therefore is gone to receive it." These particles should be omitted, "Nothing disgusts us sooner," "And is gone to receive it," being much better."

The Copulative *and* may often be omitted with propriety : Caesar's words, "I came, I saw, I conquered," express with more force, the rapidity of conquest, than if connected by copulatives. In some cases however when we wish to prevent a quick transition from one object to another, so that the mind may have time to rest on each, Copulatives may be multiplied with advantage : as, "This man may fall a victim to power, but truth *and* reason *and* liberty, would fall with him." That passage of the Apostle Paul is another instance, "*Neither* Death, *nor* life, *nor* Angels, &c."

The words designed to mark the transition from one sentence to another, and the connexion between sentences are sometimes incorrect, and perform their office imperfectly, as in the following example, "By greatness I do not mean the bulk of any single object, but the largeness of a whole view. *Such* are the prospects of an open campaign country, a vast uncultivated desert." The word *such* signifies of that nature or quality, which necessarily presupposes some word, descriptive of a quality going before, to which it refers. But in the foregoing sentence there is no such word. The author had spoken of *greatness* in the abstract only, and therefore *such* has no distinct antecedent to which we can refer it. The sentence would be introduced with more propriety by saying, "To this class belong," or "under this head are ranged the prospects, &c."

As connective particles are the hinges, tacks, and pins, by which words in clauses, members, and even sentences are united, and their relation suggested ; they should be used appropriately ; those of Polysyllables should not be employed when shorter words would as well convey the meaning : *Notwithstanding that, insomuch that, for so much as, furthermore, &c.* are inelegant, tedious words, which tend to perplex a sentence.

#### OF PRECISION.

Precision consists in rejecting all superfluous words, so as to convey no other meaning than the one intended. To effect this, 1st. avoid Tautology, and be sparing in the use of *expletives* and *epithets*. The following passage from Addison is very faulty :

"But there is nothing that makes its way more directly to the soul than beauty, which immediately diffuses a secret satisfaction and complacency through the imagination, and gives a finishing to any thing great or uncommon. The very first discovery of it strikes the mind with inward joy, and spreads a cheerfulness and delight through all its faculties."—Phrases are repeated in this sentence, which seem little more than the echo of one another: such as, "diffusing satisfaction and complacency through the imagination;" "striking the mind with inward joy;" but which do not convey accurate determinate ideas. In the sentence, "This Lawyer was the ablest attorney, the most learned in the law, and the best counsel in the city." The epithets here employed are too diffuse in meaning to be precise.

A want of precision often arises from the repetition of Pronouns; we have already noticed this with regard to the Neuter *it*. (See Rule xiv.) But *who, they, their, &c.* when improperly repeated have no very determined reference, as in the following sentence of Tillotson: "Men look with an evil eye upon the good that is in others, and think that *their* reputation obscures *them*, and *their* commendable qualities stand in *their* light; and therefore *they* do what *they* can to cast a cloud over *them*, that the bright shining of *their* virtues may not obscure *them*." This is careless writing. When Pronouns begin to *crowd* upon us, we ought to throw the sentence into another form, to avoid too frequent references to persons or things.

2nd. Observe the exact meaning of words accounted *Synonymous*. These words though they agree in expressing one principal idea, yet for the most part express it with some diversity; and a great source of want of precision, consists in the injudicious use of these words.

We have only room for a few examples, but we recommend to those persons who wish to be fully acquainted with this subject, to study Crabbe's Dictionary of Synonymes.

*Pride, vanity.*—Pride makes us esteem ourselves; vanity makes us desire the esteem of others. It is just to say, that a man is too proud to be vain.

*Haughtiness, disdain.*—Haughtiness is founded on the high opinion we entertain of ourselves ; disdain on the low opinion we have of others.

*Wisdom, prudence.*—Wisdom leads us to speak and act what is proper. Prudence prevents our speaking or acting improperly.

*Surprised, astonished, amazed, confounded.* I am surprised at what is new or unexpected ; I am astonished at what is vast or great ; I am amazed at what is incomprehensible ; I am confounded by what is shocking or terrible.

*Tranquillity, peace, calm.*—Tranquillity respects a state free from trouble ; peace the same state, but has respect to causes that might disturb it. A good man enjoys tranquillity in himself ; peace with others ; and calm after a storm.

But while we attend to precision we ought to be on our guard, lest in pruning too closely, we retrench all copiousness. To unite copiousness and precision, to be full and easy, and at the same time correct and exact, in the choice of words, is one of the highest and most difficult attainments in writing.

#### OF PERSPICUITY.

Perspicuity consists in being free from obscurity or ambiguity. Without these essential qualities the richest ornaments of style will not avail, and will perplex, rather than please. We are usually delighted with a style that frees us from embarrassment or suspense, with regard to meaning.

A proper position of words and circumstances is very essential to perspicuity, which we have treated of in Transposition. Also in Ambiguity, we have shown how a distinct meaning is to be attained.

#### OF UNITY.

Unity consists in keeping one object always in view. Every sentence, whether its parts be few or many, demands strict unity. We should not be hur-

ried from person to person, nor from subject to subject. The following sentence varies from this rule : " After we came too an anchor, they put me on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, who received me with the greatest kindness." Though the objects contained here, have a sufficient connexion, yet by shifting so often the person and place, *we* and *they*, *I* and *who*, they exhibit disunited views of the subject. The proper unity is restored thus, " Having come to an anchor, I was put on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, and received with the greatest kindness."

To preserve a proper unity, it is necessary to treat every subject separately, and every distinct topic should have a disunited sentence ; and the principal subject should never be deserted for minor ones. The violation of this rule tends so much to perplex and obscure, that it is safer to err by too many short sentences, than by one that is overloaded and embarrassed. Examples abound in authors : says one, " Archbishop Tillotson died this year. He was exceedingly beloved by King William and Queen Mary, who nominated Dr. Tennison, bishop of Lincoln, to succeed him." Who would expect the latter part of this sentence to follow in consequence of the former ? " He was exceedingly beloved by King and Queen," is the proposition in the sentence, we look for something relating to this, when we are on a sudden carried off to a new proposition.

All Parentheses, except where necessary, should be avoided. of the nature of which, we have treated, under the heads of Grammatical Figures.

#### OF STRENGTH.

When sentences are completely lopped of all excrescences and have proper words chosen, so as to make the greatest impression, and properly arranged, and a judicious use made of the figures of Grammar and Rhetoric, that may be employed ; they are then said to possess strength or energy.

As under the heads of Propriety, Perspecuity, Ambiguity, Tautology, Grammatical and Rhetorical Figures, &c. we have shown how faults are to be avoided and accuracy attained, and of course strength improved, we will not say more under this head, as it would be redundant and superfluous.

## OF AMBIGUITY.

Ambiguity is a sentence capable of two meanings, and ought therefore to be avoided, that no mistake may occur. The following sentences are instances of ambiguity : " I long since learned to take nothing but what you *do* ;" may mean either I like nothing but what you like, or what you act. " He thinks you more afraid than I ;" may be understood to mean, " He thinks you more afraid than I think you, or more afraid than I am." " The rising tomb a lofty column bore." " And thus the son the fervent sire address." Did the tomb bear the column, or the column the tomb ? Did the son address the sire, or the sire the son ? " He aimed at nothing *less* than the crown ;" may denote either nothing less was aimed at by him than the crown, or nothing inferior to the crown would satisfy him. " Such animals as are *mortal* or noxious, we have a right to destroy." " They were both more ancient than Zoroaster or Zerdusht." The *or* in these sentences is equivocal ; it serves either as a copulative to synonymous words, or a disjunctive of different things. Here it copulates, and shews *mortal* and *noxious* to have one meaning, and Zoroaster or Zerdusht as one person. A student who did not know this, might however easily mistake the sense.

Ambiguity is often prevented by Transposition, (See Transposition.)

## OF TAUTOLOGY.

Tautology is the repeating of a word or idea, and is generally improper : as, " Verdant green, odorous fragrance, umbrageous shade, liquid streams, return again ;" or " return back again." " He has my grateful thanks." The idea is sometimes repeated with some addition or variation yet equally improper : as, " Never did Atticus succeed better in gaining the *universal* love and esteem of *all* men."



"The western sun now shot a feeble ray,  
And faintly scattered the remains of day."—*Addison*.

"Now all was sea, a sea too wanting a shore."—*Ovid*.

"There in the realms of night, thy sire I'll shew,  
And point him out among the ghosts below."—*Philips*.

There are few improprieties in composition young persons are more apt to fall into than Tautology ; they ought therefore to be on their guard with respect to it. There are however a number of Tautological phrases in English, which cannot be altered, without introducing something less proper than they are. Such are the phrases, "*Raise up* a horn of salvation ;" "*He lifteth up* the meek ;" "*Ascended up* to heaven ;" "*The latter end* of that man is peace." These are venerable, for being Scripture phrases, and some of them cannot be altered without conveying a different meaning : as, "*Remember your latter end*," which signifies, "*remember death*;" to say, "*remember your end*;" would not convey the precise idea of "*remember death*."

## OF FIGURES OF SPEECH.

A figure of speech, is a deviation from the ordinary form, or common application of words — There are Grammatical figures, comprehending those of Etymology and Syntax ; and there are also figures of Rhetoric. When figures are properly employed they give elegance and energy to expression. Those of Etymology and Syntax, are sometimes, merely the license of Poets.

### FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

The principal figures of Etymology are Aphæresis, Prosthesis, Syncope, Apocopé, Paragoge, Diæresis, Synæresis, and Temesis.

APHÆRESIS is the elision of some *initial* letters of a word to shorten a verse. The initial syllables often elided in English are *a* and *be* from the words, *against*, *began*, *beneath*, as '*gainst*, '*gan*, &c. The following words have also often the initial letter el-



ded : *Am*, *are*, *it*, *is*, *have*, *will*, *had*, and *would* ; as, *I'm* for *I am*, *we're* for *we are*, *'twas* for *it was*, *that's he* for *that is he*, *I've* for *I have*, *we'll* for *we will*, *I'd* for *I had* or *I would*.

These and other contractions, should be used sparingly, in the grave or solemn style.

PROSTHESIS is the reverse of Aphæresis, being the prefixing of an expletive syllable to the beginning of a word. *A*, *ad*, *be*, *de*, *e*, *per*, &c., seem to be the principal letters prefixed to words in English : as, *adown* for *down*, *a preparing* for *preparing* ; “ *While the ark was a preparing* ;” 1 Peter iii. 20. *Adjoin* for *join*, *bestrew* for *strew*, *bedaub* for *daub*, *devoid* for *void*, *evanish* for *vanish*, *perambulation* for *ambulation*, *procreate* for *create*. *Y* is often used before words in old Poetry, to lengthen a verse : as, “ *Which on fell rancour ever was ybent.*” — *Lloyd*.

SYNCOPE is the elision of some of the middle letters of a word : as, *o'er* for *over*, *ne'er* for *never*, *don't* for *do not*, *can't* for *cannot*, *vict'ry* for *victory*, *judg'd* for *judged*.

The taking out the *e* by elision, in words ending in *ed*, is however, now disused by the best writers.

AROCOPÉ' is the elision of some of the final letters of a word : as, *tho'* for *though*. The chief words in English whose final letters are elided, are *although*, *though*, *do*, *in*, *the*, *shall*, *will* ; as, *d'y'see* for *do you see* ; “ *like a worm i'th'bud,*” for *in the bud* ; *I sha'n't*, for *shall not* ; *won't*, for *will not*.

PARAGOGÉ' is the annexing of a syllable to the end of a word to lengthen it. *En* was formerly often used for this purpose ; as after the words, *bound*, *hold*, and *without*, in the following sentences, “ *He shall be holden to his word* ;” “ *It is his bounden duty to obey.*”

“ *Withouten that would come a heavier hale.*” — *Thomson*.

The best modern writers however, do not use this ending of *en*.

**DIERESIS** is the separating of two vowels, that form a diphthong : as, *æ* in *Phæton*, in this verse :

“ Remember the sad fate of Pha-c-ton  
Who madly drove the chariot of the sun.”

The termination *tion* is commonly pronounced as one syllable, yet some verses require *io* to be separated : as,

“ No comet need foretell his change come on,  
His corpse did seem a constella-tion — *Dryden*.

**SYNERESIS** is the shrinking of two syllables into one : as, *learned*, when an Adjective is two, but when a Verb only one. *Æ* in *aerial*, is commonly two syllables, yet in Poetry is often but one.

Formerly every Verb when *ed* was added, sometimes was pronounced with *ed*, as an additional syllable, and sometimes not. But Murray and other late Grammarians have given it as a rule, that *ed* should never be pronounced as an additional syllable, except when preceded by *d* or *t*, or when an Adjective. This rule however proper it may be in prose, will not do in reading some of our best Poets : as, *Spencer*, *Shakespeare*, *Butler*, and *Milton*, where it is often necessary to pronounce *ed* as an additional syllable, to make the verse have its proper number of feet, and not sound harsh.

**TEMESIS** is the inserting of a word between the parts of another word. *Soever* seems to be the chief word in English that is separated from another with which it is compounded : as, “ *What* method *soever* he tries he fails in it.”

Murray and some others, have given it as a rule, that *soever* should always be separated from *who*, *what*, *how*, *which*, *when*, *then*, *whence*, *thence*, and *whither* ; yet many of the best modern writers, use *soever* joined to the most of these words. *Which* indeed appears to be always best disjoined, — but *what* seems often disagreeable when separated ; as in this line, “ *What* prayer and supplication *soever* be made.”

*To* was used formerly disjoined from *ward* : as, “ He is kind to us *ward*,” for towards us, but is at present out of use.

The separation of the *to* of the Infinitive from the Verb, has been used by some late writers : as, " He mostly frightened them, but he tried *to* also sometimes *encourage* them. But this displacing of *to* is improper, and should not be imitated.

*Ever* when subjoined to *who*, *what*, and *how*, has not the same meaning as when separated. *Whoever* and *what-ever* are relatives, and *ever* may be used after them : as, " *Whoever* comes here, will *ever* be welcome." *How* and *ever* are different Adverbs when separated, from what they are joined : as, " *How* shall he *ever* be able to pay us." " *However* he may act, his intention is *ever* to do good."

### FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A figure in Syntax is a deviation from the common construction of words. The principal figures are. Ellipsis, Pleonasm, Parenthesis, Syllepsis, Enallagé, and Hyperbaton or Transposition.

ELLIPSIS is the omission of words necessary to the complete formation of a sentence, of which we have treated in Rule LI.

SYLLEPSIS is an agreement or concord, formed on the *figurative* meaning of words ; which is often very different from the *literal*. By this sort of concord, the exact congruity of gender, number, and person is violated. The Scriptures abound with instances of it : as, " The *word* was made flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld *his* glory." " I will break the bow of *Elam*, the chief of *their* strength." " I lay in Zion a *rock* of offence, and whoso believeth on *him* shall not be ashamed." This figure is used by the best writers, ancient and modern, as well as in Scripture : as,

*Israel* oft forsook,  
*Their* living strength and unfrequented left  
*His* righteous altar, bowing to bestial gods.—  
*Milton.*

Whispering *angels* say,—*Sister* spirit come away.  
*Pope.*

*Evening draws her crimson curtain round.—*

*Thomson.*

*Lo ! steel clad war his gorgeous standard rears.—*

*Rogers.*

*Wisdom is humble, that he knows no more —*

*Cowper.*

*Heaven—who sees with equal eye as God of all,  
A hero perish, or a sparrow fall —Pope.*

This figure though often allied to *personification*, is sometimes however without it : as, “ Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached Christ unto *them*.”

ENALLAGE' is the use of one part of speech, or of one mood or tense for another, and often borders on solecism. It is sometimes used in Poetry, but scarcely ever in Prose. Many Poets use the Adjective for the Adverb, as also an Adjective as a Noun : as,

The rapid radiance *instantaneous* strikes. (for instantaneously.)  
*Thomson.*

They fall *successive* and *successive* rise. (for successively.)

He spread his airy flight over the *vast abrupt*.—  
*Milton.*

The Noun is used for the Adjective in this verse :

The *victor* army march in triumph now. (for *victorious* army.)

Cowley has used *now* as a Noun. (See Page 181.)

Cowper uses the Preposition *between* as a Noun governed by *from*.

— Famine the meagre fiend,  
Blows mildew from *between* his shrivelled lips.

Poets sometimes use a Verb improperly : as,  
Nor want nor cold his course *delay*. (for *delays*.)  
*Dr. Johnson.*

So furious was that onset's shock,  
Destruction's gates at once *unlock*. (for *unlocks*.)

*Hogg.*

Many learned men, have thought this figure entirely improper : as, Messrs. De Port Royale, who have rejected it, as unworthy of a place in Grammar ; but since so many great Poets have employed it, it deserves at least an explanation.

PLEONASM is the introduction of superfluous words in a sentence and borders upon Tautology. It is generally improper, though it may sometimes be necessary to give energy to a discourse. Such expressions as, " I saw it with both my eyes ;" " I heard it with my own ears ;" appear an impropriety, yet in some cases such like phrases may be necessary : as, " Did you really see this ?" " Indeed I did, with both my eyes." In animated discourse when an idea is intended to make a strong impression, it is often proper : as, " He that hath ears to hear, let him hear." " There shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down." Job says, " Though worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh, shall I see God, whom I shall see for myself, and my eyes shall behold him, and not another." These expressions seem full of Pleonasms, yet when the subject, (the Resurrection,) is considered, they are proper.

Some persons have censured such passages of Scripture : as, " He opened his mouth and said ;" " He lifted up his voice and wept ;" but such expressions of ancient books, are far from being ungraceful, as being the venerable mark of antique simplicity.

Pleonasm is often improperly employed : as, " On receiving this information he arose, went out, saddled his horse, mounted him, and rode to town." All is implied in saying, " On receiving this information he rode to town." " To mangle, or wound, his outward form and constitution, his natural limbs or body ;" such circumlocution is improper, in simply inflicting a wound. " He spoke two hours, *standing* upon his *legs* ;" such modes of speaking are not only Pleonasms, but burlesque.

PARENTHESIS is a clause of a sentence, coming in obliquely, and which may be omitted, without injuring the meaning of the rest of the passage : as,

“ Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,) Virtue alone is happiness below.”

If the clause is short, and coincides with the rest of the sentence, it is improper then to use the Parenthetical characters. In the following instances therefore, the Parenthesis is improper : “ Speak you, (who sail on the seas,) of his wonders in the deep ;” “ He found them a sleep again ; (for their eyes were heavy,) neither knew they what to answer him.” In many instances therefore a Comma without the characters is sufficient : as, “ Every planet, as the Creator has made nothing in vain, is most probably inhabited.”

The Parenthesis marks a moderate depression of the voice, and may be accompanied with every point, which the sense would require, if the Parenthetical characters were omitted. It ought to stop with the same kind of stop, which the member has that precede it, and to contain that stop within the characters. Cases of Interrogation and Exclamation must however be excepted : as, “ While they wish to please, (and why should they not wish it ?) they disdain dishonorable means.”

Parentheses should in general be avoided, as they are sentences in the midst of sentences, the perplexed method often, of disposing of a thought, which a writer wants judgement to introduce in its proper place. But while we caution learners with respect to the improper use of a Parenthesis, we must also guard them against the opinion of some Grammarians, as Levizac, who denies that it should ever be used at all ; contrary to the ideas of many of the best writers ancient and modern.

The Parenthesis may often be avoided by Transposition. (See Transposition.)

HYPERBATON or TRANSPOSITION is the transferring of words from one part of a sentence to another. The judicious use of it confers perspicuity, harmony, variety, spirit and strength on language.

We shall consider it First—*As preventing ambiguity.* In these sentences there is great ambiguity :

“ Belisarius was general of all the forces under the Emperor Justinian, a man of rare valour.” Here Justinian would be understood to be the man of rare valour, though it was not he, but Belisarius that was so. When transposed thus, all ambiguity is prevented : “ Belisarius a man of rare valour was general of all the forces under the Emperor Justinian.” “ Aurelian defeated the Marcomanni, a fierce and terrible nation of Germany, that had invaded Italy, in three several engagements ”—(*Goldsmith’s Roman History.*) This sentence is rendered less ambiguous, and more elegant, transposed thus : “ Aurelian defeated the Marcomanni in three several engagements, a fierce and terrible nation of Germany, that had invaded Italy.”

Secondly—*As precluding the use of a Parenthesis.* In the following passage, “ If your hearts secretly reproach you for the wrong choice you have made, (as there is time for repentance and retreat, and a return to wisdom is always honorable,) bethink yourselves that the evil is not irreparable.” It is much better to transpose this Parenthesis to a separate sentence thus, “ If your hearts secretly reproach you, for the wrong choice you have made, bethink yourselves that the evil is not irreparable ; there is time for repentance and retreat : and a return to wisdom is always honorable.”

Thirdly—*As promoting Perspicuity.* The chief rule in the arrangement of sentences is, “ that the words most clearly related should be placed as near to each other as possible.” We shall consider the importance of this rule, first with respect to the position of Adverbs, Relatives and other particles that express connexion ; and secondly in the position of circumstances.

The following are instances of wrong position of Adverbs, &c. “ The Romans understood liberty, at least as well as we.” These words may be understood differently, according as the emphasis is laid



upon *liberty*, or upon *at least*. They should be arranged thus : " The Romans understood liberty as well at least, as we." " By the pleasures of the imagination I mean only such pleasures as arise originally from sight." When it is said, " I mean *only* such pleasures," the Adverb only is not properly placed. It is not intended here to qualify the word *mean*, but *such pleasures* ; and therefore should have the word which it qualifies. The style is more clear and neat, when the words are arranged thus : " By the pleasures of the imagination I mean such pleasures only, as arise from sight." In the following sentence, the word *more* is not in its proper place : " There is not perhaps any real beauty or deformity *more* in one piece of matter than in another." The phrase ought to stand thus : " Beauty or deformity in one piece of matter, *more* than in another." " It is folly to pretend to arm ourselves against the accidents of life, by heaping up treasures *which* nothing can protect us against but the good Providence of our Creator." *Which* refers grammatically to the Substantive immediately preceding, and that here is " treasures." The sentence ought to stand thus : " It is folly to pretend, by heaping up treasures, to arm ourselves against the accidents of life, *which* nothing, &c."

The Preposition *of* is frequently placed improperly in a Possessive case : as, " To this Era the history has been traced *of* Italy." This ought to be, " To this Era the history of Italy has been traced."

*In the position of circumstances.*—An author thus expresses himself, " Are these designs which any man who is born a Briton, in any circumstances, in any situation ought to be ashamed or afraid to avow ?" Here we are at a loss whether the words " in any circumstances, in any situation," are connected with, " a man born in Britain, in any circumstances or situation," or with that man's " avowing his designs in any circumstance or situation in—



to which he may be brought " As it is probable that the latter was intended, the arrangement ought to have been, "Are these designs which any man who is born a Briton ought to be ashamed or afraid, in any situation, in any circumstances to avow?" The following is an instance of a wrong arrangement of circumstances : " A great stone that I happened to find after a long search, by the sea shore, served me for an anchor." One would think that the *search* was confined to the sea shore ; but as the meaning is, that the great stone was *found* by the sea shore, the period ought to have run thus : " A great stone, that after a long search, I happened to find by the sea shore, served me for an anchor." Too many circumstances should never be crowded together, but interspersed in different parts of a sentence. For instance : " What I had the opportunity of mentioning to my friend, sometime ago in conversation, was not a new thought." These two circumstances, " some time ago," and " in conversation," would have had a better effect disjoined thus : " What I had the opportunity, sometime ago, of mentioning to my friend in conversation, was not a new thought."

Words expressing things connected in idea, ought to be placed as near together as possible. The following passage from Addison differs from this rule : " For the English are naturally fanciful, and very often disposed, by that gloominess and melancholy of temper, which are so frequent in our nation, to many wild notions and extravagancies, to which others are not liable." Here the Verb or assertion is, by a pretty long circumstance separated from the subject to which it refers. This might have been easily prevented by placing the circumstance before the Verb, thus : " For the English are naturally fanciful, and by that gloominess and melancholy of temper which are so frequent in our nation, are often disposed to many wild notions, &c."

An *incidental* circumstance should not be placed between two *capital* members of a period, but in

such a manner as to confine it to its proper member, that the more important words may possess the last place. The following sentence is faulty in this respect : " The Emperor was so intent on the establishment of his absolute power in Hungary, that he exposed the empire doubly to desolation and ruin for the sake of it." Better, " That for the sake of it, he exposed the empire doubly to desolation and ruin."

When different things have a *relation* to each other, in the *order* of nature or time, that order should be regarded in assigning them their place in a sentence. The conclusion of the following passage is inaccurate in this respect : " But still there will be such a mixture of delight, as is proportioned to the degree in which any one of these qualifications is most conspicuous and prevailing." The order in which the two last words are placed, should be reversed and made to stand, *prevailing* and *conspicuous*. They are conspicuous because they prevail.

A weaker Proposition should not come after a stronger one, and a sentence should generally be so arranged as to grow in importance to the very last word. The following passage is an example of such arrangement : " If we rise yet higher, and consider the fixed stars as so many oceans of flame, that are each of them attended with a different set of planets, and still discovers new firmaments and new lights, that are sunk farther in those unfathomable depths of ether ; we are lost in such a labyrinth of suns and worlds, and confounded with the magnificence and immensity of nature."—*Addison*. The construction is here so well managed, as to grow in importance to the last, but had the passage began with, " We are lost in such a labyrinth of suns and worlds, and confounded with the magnificence and immensity of nature ;" instead of, " If we rise, &c." the proper arrangement for exciting wonder in the mind would have been violated.

Fourthly—We shall now consider Transposition, as it conduces to the *elegance, harmony and strength*, of a sentence.

We should avoid concluding a sentence with an *Adverb, Preposition, or any inconsiderable word*. Agreeably to this rule we should not write : “ *Avarice is a crime which wise men are often guilty of.* ” “ *Whom is he angry with ?* ” “ *It is him I am obliged to.* ” Which sentences should be, “ *Avarice is a crime of which wise men are often guilty.* ” “ *With whom is he angry ?* ” “ *It is to him I am obliged.* ” Prepositions that form a compound Verb, such as *bring about, lay hold of, come over to, clear up, &c.* are also not proper conclusions of a period ; a simple Verb, if it can be employed, terminates a sentence better.

An author expresses himself thus of the Trinity : “ *It is a mystery which we firmly believe the truth of, and humbly adore the depth of.* ” How much better would it have been with this transposition, “ *It is a mystery, the truth of which we firmly believe, and the depth of which we humbly adore.* ”

Even the Pronoun *it* should be avoided in the conclusion especially when joined with a Preposition : as, *with it, in it, to it.* “ *It is a triumphant consideration in Religion, that the soul is making perpetual progress in perfection, without ever arriving at a period in it* ” How much more agreeable this sentence if it concluded with the word *period*.

A sentence should not conclude with an insignificant phrase, such as, “ *to say no worse,* ” any more than with a small particle. Though Adverbs are often improper to close a period, yet when the stress of a sentence rests chiefly on them, they ought to be used in the conclusion : as, “ *In their prosperity, my friends shall never hear of me, in their adversity always.* ” Here *never* and *always*, being emphatic words, are to be so placed as to make a strong impression.

The harmony and strength that results from a proper arrangement of words, is often a point of great nicety. Let the words be ever so well chosen, yet if they be ill disposed, the melody and elegance of the sentence is lost. The following are examples : " Pleasures simple and moderate always are the best ;" it would be better to say, " Simple and moderate pleasures are always the best." " A great recommendation of the guidance offered by integrity to us, is, that it is by all men easily understood ;" better in this form, " It is a great recommendation of the guidance offered by integrity to us, that it is easily understood by all men." " As luxury increased, the virtue in proportion declined of the Roman Republic ;" better, " The virtue of the Roman Republic declined, in proportion as luxury increased." " The ancient laws of Rome were so far from suffering to be put to death a Roman citizen, that they would not allow him even to be bound or whipt ;" better, " Were so far from suffering a Roman citizen to be put to death, that they would not even allow him, &c."

For the purpose of placing emphatic words in the most conspicuous place, the natural order of our language must be sometimes inverted.

According to the Natural order, the Nominative has the first place, the Verb the second, and the Objective, if an Active Verb is employed, the third. Circumstances follow the Nominative, the Verb, or the Objective, as they happen to belong to any of them. In this sentence, " Diana of the Ephesians is great ;" is the natural order, but it is more forcible and emphatic, thus transposed, though inverted: " Great is Diana of the Ephesians."

Emphatic words are mostly placed at the beginning of a sentence : as, " Silver and gold have I none, but such as I have, give I unto thee." " Your Fathers, where are they ? and the Prophets do they live for ever ?" Sometimes however it is of

advantage to suspend the meaning for a little, and then bring it out full at the close : as, " On whatever side we contemplate Homer, what principally strikes us, is, his wonderful invention."

That the pupil may understand the nature of *inverted* sentences, he ought frequently to transpose various pieces of verse, (which are often composed of inverted phrases,) into their natural order in prose, as in these lines :

" Not half so dreadful rises to the sight,  
Orion's dog, the year when autumn weighs,  
And o'er the feebler stars exerts his rays."—*Iliad*.

Transposed — When autumn weighs the year, the dog of Orion rises not half so dreadful to the sight, and exerts his rays over the feebler stars.

When the pupil understands *inversion* properly, he may then make pieces of *prose* into verse, by which he will be better acquainted with the structure, harmony and elegance of language.

## FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Figures of Rhetoric are commonly called tropes. They are a departure from pure simplicity of speech, and are found in almost every species of composition. They are chiefly constructed on some similitude, which by the powers of imagination, is rendered grand, noble, or illustrative. The principal figures of Rhetoric are, Similé, Metaphor, Allegory, Metonymy, Synechdoché, Hyperbolé, Prosopopæia, Erotesis, Apostrophe, Antithesis, Climax, Paralepsis, Vision and Irony.

A *SIMILE* or *COMPARISON*, expresses the resemblance between objects. It is generally used with *like*, *as*, or *so*. " As bold as a lion, or as meek as a lamb," are common Similes. " As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so is the Lord round about his people."

Man like the generous vine supported lives,  
The strength he gains is from th' embrace he gives.

A METAPHOR is a Similé, (without like or as.) When I say of a great statesman, "He upholds the state like a pillar," I make a comparison; but when I say, "He is the pillar of the state," it becomes a Metaphor. The following are Metaphors from Scripture, "I will be unto her a wall of fire, and the glory in the midst of her." "Thou art my rock and my fortress." "Thy word is a lamp to my feet, and a light to my path." Poetry is full of them.

Speechless and fixed in all the death of woe.—

Thomson.

His eye was morning's brightest ray.—Hogg.

In the following verses is an instance of an improper Metaphor:

*I bridle in my struggling muse with pain,  
That longs to launch into a bolder strain.*—Addison.

The muse here is first figured as a horse bridled, next it is made a ship launching.

An ALLEGORY may be regarded as a Metaphor, continued so as to form a kind of Parable. There is a fine one in the 80th Psalm, where the people of Israel are represented under the image of a vine: "Thou has brought a vine out of Egypt; thou hast cast out the heathen and planted it, &c."

The better sort of Parables and Fables, may be esteemed Allegories. The celebrated Fable of the Body and Members, had such an effect, as to prevent a Revolution at Rome.

METONYMY is a figure by which the cause is put for the effect, or the effect for the cause, the sign for the thing signified, &c. When we say, "He reads Milton," the cause is put for the effect, meaning "Milton's works." But when it is said, "Grey hairs should be respected," meaning "old age;" the effect is put for the cause. "To assume the sceptre," is an expression for entering on Royal authority; the sign being put for the thing signified. "God is our salvation," i. e. our Saviour. "They

smote the *city*," i. e. the *citizens*. "Give me thy *heart*," i. e. *affection*.

SYNECHDOCHE' is putting a part for the whole or the whole for part, a certain number, for an uncertain, &c. Thus the *wave* or the *deep* may be put for the *sea*. "Now the *year* is beautiful;" i. e. *summer*. "Both nations had recourse to the *sword*," i. e. to war. An attribute may be put for a subject as, "Youth," for the young. "I have told you a thousand times, to avoid such excesses." A certain number is here put for an uncertain.

HYPERBOLE' or EXAGGERATION, consists in magnifying an object beyond its natural bounds. Such expressions as, "Swift as the wind;" "white as snow," are Hyperbolical. The language of the Orientals, is generally more so than Europeans, whose judgment is more correct.

This figure is sometimes found in Scripture. David says of Saul and Jonathan, "They were *swifter* than eagles, *stronger* than lions." The fear of an enemy augments the conception of the size of their leader: "I saw their chief," says the scout in Ossian, "tall as a rock of ice; his spear the blasted fir; his shield the rising moon; he sat on the shore like a cloud of mist on the rill."

The errors in the use of Hyperboles, arise chiefly from overstraining them. Dryden in his Poem on the Restoration of Charles II, compliments that Monarch at the expense of the sun:

"That star, at your birth shone out so bright,  
It stained the duller sun's meridian light."

This appears as great bombast, as the following description of a great warrior:

"He looked so fierce, so terrible and grim,  
His very shadow, durst not follow him."

PROSOPOPÆIA or PERSONIFICATION is a figure by which life and action is attributed to unintelligent or inanimate objects. The use of this figure is natural



when we say, "The earth *smiles* with plenty," or "a disease is *deceitful*;" such expressions shew the facility with which the mind can assimilate the properties of living creatures to things inanimate. There are many examples of it in Scripture: as, "The sea saw it and fled." "Tremble thou earth at the presence of the Lord." "The desert shall rejoice and blossom as the rose." The descriptions of *Discord* in Homer, *Fame* in Virgil, and of *Death* and *Sin* in Milton, are fine instances of this figure. A certain Poets in general abound with it: as,

The worm aware of his intent harangued him.—

*Cowper.*

Hark, *truth* proclaims thy triumphs cease.—

*Rogers.*

*Affliction's* self deplures thy youthful doom.—

*Byron.*

Mean objects should generally not be personified, as they are disagreeable when they assume living forms. Thomson in personifying the low appetites of *Hunger* and *Thirst*, seems to have used this figure improperly:

"Then sated Hunger, bids his brother Thirst,  
Produce the mighty bowl."

EROTESIS or INTERROGATION, is a figure, which by adopting the form of questions, gives spirit and vigor to language. It is often used in Scripture: as, "Hast thou an arm like God, or canst thou thunder with a voice like him?" "Hath the Lord said it, and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it, and shall he not make it good?" It is used by many other writers: as,

"How could you promise love to me, and not that promise keep?"

How could you swear mine were bright, yet leave these eyes to weep?"—*Mallet.*

Cicero in a speech against Catiline, says, "How long will you Catiline abuse our patience? Do you not perceive your designs are discovered?"



He might have said, "You abuse our patience long. You must be sensible that your designs are discovered." But this latter mode of expression, falls short of the force and vehemence of the former.

**APOSTROPHE** or **EXCLAMATION**, is the effect of strong emotion, when an animated address is made to, or about something : as, "O that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night, for the slain of the daughters of my people."—*Jerem.* "O liberty ! O sound once delightful to every Roman ear ! O revered privilege of a Roman citizen ! now trampled upon."—*Cicero.*

When Exclamations are judiciously employed they agitate the hearer with similar passions to the speaker ; but young persons frequently fail in this figure, by calling on spectators to enter into their transports, when nothing is said or done to excite emotion.

**ANTITHESIS** exhibits a contrast or opposition of objects. It is often found in Scripture, in such expressions as, "As in Adam all die, so in Christ shall all be made alive." "As by one man's disobedience, many were made sinners ; so by the obedience of one, shall many be made Righteous." The following is a fine instance of it :

Tho' poor, *luxurious* ; tho' submissive, *vain*,  
Tho' grave, yet *trifling* ; zealous, yet *untrue* ;  
And e'en in *penance* planning *sins* anew.—

*Goldsmith.*

**CLIMAX** or **AMPLIFICATION**, is the augmenting or heightening of any object or action as if by successive steps : as, "Add to your faith virtue ; and to virtue knowledge, and to knowledge temperance ; and to temperance patience, and to patience Godliness, &c."—2 Peter i. 5. "It is a crime to put a Roman citizen in bonds. It is the height of guilt to scourge him ; little less than parricide to put him to death : what name then shall I give to the act of crucifying him."—*Cicero.*

**PARALEPSIS** or **OMISSION**, is a figure in which the speaker pretends to hide, what he strongly declares: as, "He was once a noble youth, but in process of time he has become a gambler, *not to mention his drunkenness and debaucheries*, by which he has exhausted his estate, and ruined his health."

**VISION** or **IMAGERY**, is a figure by which the speaker describes the scenes of his imagination, as really acted before his eyes. Thus Cicero in an oration against Catiline: "I seem to behold this city the ornament of the earth, the capital of all nations, suddenly involved in one conflagration. I see before me the slaughtered heaps of citizens, lying unburied. The furious countenance of Cethegus rises to my view, while, with a savage joy, he is triumphing in your miseries."

**IRONY**, is a figure by which quite the reverse of what we say is meant. It is common to say of a negligent person, "you are very careful indeed." We have a remarkable instance of this figure in Scripture, when Elijah mocked the Priests of Baal, saying, "Cry aloud for he is a God; he is on a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked." Cicero in his oration for Balbus, derides his accuser saying, "O excellent interpreter of the law! master of antiquity! corrector and amender of our constitution."

***Ironical exhortation***, is an agreeable figure, which after having set the troubles or inconveniencies of a thing, in the clearest light, concludes with a feigned encouragement to pursue it: as, Horace after describing the great noise and tumults of Rome, adds Ironically, "Go now, and study tuneful verse at Rome."

## A KEY,

## TO THE EXERCISES OF FALSE SYNTAX.



RULE I.—*An* idle boy. *A* house. *An* old horse. *A* ewer. *An* elegy. *A* eulogy. *A* unison. *An* unnatural union. *An* uncle. *An* aunt. *An* infidel. *An* owl. *A* howling dog. *An* humble man. *An* hospital. *An* herbalist. *Such a* one. *A* one eyed person. *A* once famed general. *A* historical relation. *A* hysteric fit.

RULE II.—*The* love of money is *a* root. *Hope* is *the* anchor. *The* virtues and *the* vices—form *a* great contrast. *He* had *the* consolations. *Miracles*, nature and fate—under *the* Deity. *The* influence of *the* stars, is *an* obsolete science. Under *the* appearance. *The* Juno and Minerva. *The* loss, or *the* disappointment—occasioned *a* total derangement.—*London* has *the* Thames, and *Paris* *the* Seine. *Italy* and *the* Sicilies—to earthquakes. *The* title of Duke. *That* of Governor. *That* of Lord Protector. *Fire*, water, air, and earth—are *the* four elements of Philosophers. Either *the* end or *the* means. *An* orange than *an* apple. Species of animal called *a* unicorn. With constancy, though *a* reward be distant. *Virtues* like his. Called for *a* little severity. *Few* persons pitied him. *Man* is *the* noblest. *The* heathens placed us under *a* trial. *More* than ordinary. Not *a* meteor, but *a* luminary, dispenses *a* benign influence. *The* carriages formerly used. But poor at *the* best. At *the* day of Judgement.

RULE III.—*I* love science. *You* know nothing. *Thou* dost always. *Contain* forty pounds. *Pains*

have been taken. *Thou shouldst love.* Exceeds sixteen millions. A mixture *was* in his conduct. *Have* the goods been sold. *Thou seest* clothed in purple is happy. There *were* more equivocators than one. Mechanism of watches *was* unknown. Variety of objects *charms* the eye. *Hope gives* consolation. He *needs* not proceed. Fields *increase* our store. Abundance *makes* us wish. Ability and merit *are* seldom found. The sincere *are* esteemed. The brave *deserve* the fair. The generous *never recount.*—Support of relations *was* a heavy tax. Nothing but foolish pursuits *delights.* Conditions *as were* consistent. He *dares* not act. *He* being killed. *He* descending.

RULE IV.—Wages of John *is* one guinea.—Pavilion *were* dark waters. Controversy *was* his chief enjoyment. Fidelity *centers* the happiness.—Whole sum *was* seventy five. Principal and interest *were* not one pound. In unity *consist* the welfare and peace. In which *were* concentrated.

RULE V.—Often *requires* great exertion. *Is* required of all. *Constitutes* the great principle. *Is* required of every person. *Are* reasonable to believe. *Are* the means of becoming happy.

RULE VI.—Nobility *were* killed. Time and tide *wait* for no man. In harmony and unity *consist.* Politeness and good dispositions *charm.* Diligence and activity *are* the road. What *signify* the counsel and care of preceptors. High pleasures *beget* languor. One and nineteen *make* twenty. Horror *fill* his mind. Accompany it *were* written. Patriot *lives* in that house. *Was* burnt up. Virtue and happiness *dwell* with mediocrity. *Proceed* blessing and cursing. He and I *are* to do this.

RULE VII.—Charles nor Peter *knows.* Happiness or misery *is* in a great measure. Perhaps *it is* to be your own lot. But revenge *was* the cause.—

Reverse of fortune *affects* us. *He* nor you *was* there. As I and Charles *is* hated. *Is* capable of embittering.

RULE VIII.—Joseph *is* mistaken. I *am* now sure. Thou *understandest* this business. He *understands* this science. I or thou *art* the person. Thou and we *are* blamed. He or I *am* blamed. They or we *are* named. Thou who *told* the lies.

RULE IX.—Captain nor sailors *were* saved.—The scholars *were* present. His servants *deserre* our thanks. These men *were* engaged in this conspiracy. Riches often *ruins* virtuous principles.—Poverty nor riches *were* injurious. He nor they *have* complied.

RULE X.—The meeting *was* large. The court *has* just ended. The crowd *was* so great. The church *has* no power. The council *were* not unanimous. Of an army *were* marching. Half of this detachment *were* slain. The committee *was* very full. The committee *were* divided. The fleet *was* seen sailing. The fleet *are* arrived, except three. The flock *is* or ought to be. Shoal of herrings *was* immense. The majority *was* disposed. Corporation *consist* of mayor, alderman and council. The regiment *consists* of. People *rejoice* in that should give them sorrow. Parliament *is* composed. When the nation *complains*. Why *does* this generation wish. As the Jewish nation *was*. *Was* the senate consulted. Blessed *are* the people that know. Remnant of the people *was* persecuted.

RULE XI.—Raiment which *was* in the house. Sixth *has* lost his life. She *overset* and lost most of her men. In the colour of his species. Tender of his reputation. Sun shines in his splendour. Activity of its thoughts. Have their own part assigned them to act. Let Moses sprinkle them, and they shall become dust. Anguish and discontent manifested themselves in his face. Snow or ice when they melt.

**RULE XII.**—You should give some of *your* substance. Not to give, is not *yours*. Of what is not *thine*. You wept and I for *you*. More convenient I will see *you*. I mourn *your* absence. Keep *yourself* pure.

**RULE XIII.**—Aristides was a very just man. Though man has great variety of thoughts. This accident did really happen. Whoever has such an idea is wrong. The show bread which is not lawful to eat. Afflictions, though hard to be borne, often improve us. These accusations he seemed not disposed to retract. The wicked men, the Lord hath destroyed from among you. Gad, a troop shall overcome. When they had washed they laid in an upper chamber. South and North thou hast created.—Lofty city he layeth low.

**RULE XIV.**—Whether it was he or another. These thieves stole it away. It rained whenever we were walking thither. It *was* the Romans. *Was* as follows. He did not think it worth while to enquire after. It is better to plant now, than delay a week longer. Until the contagion reduces the blood to a putrid fermentation.

**RULE XV.**—*Who* shall be sent to admonish. *Who* can subsist by themselves. He to *whom* much is given. *Whom* conscience and virtue support.—They *who* have laboured—are the persons *whom* we ought to love, and to *whom* we ought to be grateful. The student to *whom* I gave the book—and *who* deserves it. *Whosoever* entertains such an opinion.—We *whom* he knows, and with *whom* he associates. Of *whom* were the articles bought? Of *him* who resides near the quay. To *whom* was the money paid? Who counted it? The clerk and *he*.

**RULE XVI.**—The man *whom* I esteem. Person is blessed *who* walketh. The vice *which* I hate. The lion *which* sometimes destroys man. They *who*

seek wisdom. The misery *to which* we are reduced. The census of the people *which* they took. *What* man or beast could live. *Which* of those men — Members of the Senate *who* were proscribed. Cyrus asked him *who* that God was of *whom* he begged. Millions of people *who* cannot read. As the beasts *which* they hunt. Thou *who* *hast* been a witness. *Whose* name was but another word for cruelty.

RULE XVII.—Moses was the meekest man *that* we read of. Best Governor *that* Ireland had. Excellent writer *that* took a pen. The man and horse *that* we saw. Amiable virtues *that* we possess. — Men and things *that* he has studied. Same persons *that* assisted us. Hampden *that* with dauntless breast. Ran the same risk *that* Italy had done. — *Who* is the man *that* dares say. All *that* beauty, all *that* wealth e'er gave. Those children *that* we have seen. Child *that* was put to nurse. Beast of prey *that* destroys.

RULE XVIII.—*Who* *adopts* that sentiment. *Has* often relieved me, and *has* not deserted me. — *Who* *told* me the truth. *Who* *hast* cultivated them. A man *who* *recommends* to others — or *who* *objects* to mild treatment. *Who* *coverest* it. *Who* *teacheth* thee — *who* *leadeth* thee. *Who* *didst* choose.

RULE XIX.—Each of them in *his* turn. Contented with *his* condition. Particulars in *its* order. *Is* either of these books. An idea *that* *his* opinion. Of water *teams* with life. Positive in *his* opinion. Kings of *their* own. People have *their* own laws. — Should obey *his* master. Have *their* own Ruler. — On *each* side of the river. On *each* hand. Suits *equally* Jew, Christian, or Mahometan.

RULE XX.—*Such* *that* many will vilify. And flattery *that* he affected. *That* it cost him his life. *Such* a son *that* all men. Battle like *as* he did — *That* he cannot ensure. Persons *as* act the hypo-



critic. A part as Caligula did. Sharp replies as cost. Such persons as slander.

**RULE XXI.**—*This* down to a speck of earth, *that* opens a prospect. *These* barefeet, hurt by *those* sharp stones. *This* causes misery, *that* creates happiness—love the *former* and hate the *latter*. *Those* houses on the opposite—larger than *these* on this—The *latter* an act, the *former* a habit. Nor *this* a good, nor *that* a bad. In *this* 'tis God directs, in *that* man. My *peace* with these my *lore* with those.

**RULE XXII.**—Been here *these* ten days—*This* pair of bracelets. Virtues are *those* of honor and integrity. *That* sort of favours. *This* kind of indulgences. Industrious to make *it*. A pair of new shoes, a pair of new gloves :—of a rich old man.—Twenty *feet* broad—one hundred *fathoms* in depth. Borrowed *five millions* of pounds. Eight hundred men. The first two are cherry trees, the other two pear trees. Saw one person or more than one enter.

**RULE XXIII.**—By *this* means he rendered.—By *these* means became rich. By *this* means was esteemed. Industry is the *means*. For satire, and by *these* means. Frugal and sober, and by *these* means. A *means* I will not adopt. The mean between the measures. Ungenerous *means* obtained. By *these* news the city. Ample *amends* for his loss. By *these* alms obtained.

**RULE XXIV.**—Euelio was *more polished*—yet his conversation *more puerile* and *rapid*, and he was the *most foolish*. Or the strictest sect. Appeared *more feeling* than Clio,—was the *most vicious*, and often *more angry* at trifles,—his countenance—the *most frightful* appearance. Virtue confers *supreme* dignity—should be *chief* desire. His assertion was *better founded* than that—words of the latter *not true*. His work well executed, his brother's better, his father's the *best* of all. It is easier to build two.



The *less* weight. Pleasures of understanding, are preferable to that. Hers is the sweetest voice.—The most *High* hath created us.

RULE XXV.—Prove the likeliest of any.—I understood him the best of all. Eve was *farer* than all. The *stronger* of the two, but not the *wiser*. No other element *than* war. It was the *smallest* of these. Of the scholar *than* the name. No more *than* what he deserves. No sooner risen *than* they went. Nothing farther *than* to be praised.

RULE XXVI.—A man's manners influence.—*Ladies* formed—called the *Ladies'* society. *Box's* lid is broken. Both *boxes'* lids are broken. King William and Queen Mary's accession. Joseph and Robert's property. The *Judge's* and *Jury's* sentiments. Not only the *Counsel's* and *Attorney's*, but the *Judge's* opinion. The Captain, Mate and Seamen's exertions—the means of the ship and cargo's being saved. *John's* as well as *Maria's* books.—Gained the *King's* as well as people's approbation. For *conscience'* sake. Alexander the *Great's* history. King *James* the first's history. *Augustus'* Senate durst not. Covered with *asses'* skins. For *Herodias'* sake. At *Jone's* the printer and boodbinder—Lord Belville's, my friend, patron and benefactor.—The grand *Vizir* Selim's. At the *Governor's* the *King's* representative. They are *Cicero's*, the most eloquent of *men*. The government of the world is not left. She married the son of the brother of my son's wife. House of the partner of my wife's brother. Estate of the *corporation* is incumbered. The advice both of the Physician and Surgeon. Extent of the King of England's prerogative. Picture of the *King* does not resemble. Pictures of the *King's* were sent. Time of *William's* making the experiment. Of *Youth's* associating with vicious. And *its* bursting caused the ship. Obeyed the mandates of the Protector as they called him.

**RULE XXVII.**—It is *I* and not *he*. It is *he* indeed. It was *he* and not *they*. If I were *he*. I took it to be *her*. It was not *we* who did it. Is it possible to be *them* who did that. Imagine it to have been *thee*. If it was not *he*, *whom* do you imagine. *Whom* do you think him. *Who* do people say *we* are. It is to be *thee* who is to build. The man *whom* it was said. The man *whom* I understood. The Scriptures, they are *they* which testify.

**RULE XXVIII.**—Debase both *him* and *her* — Both *him* and *them* to be slain. You who were dead. The man *whom* he raised. Destroy both *thee* and *her*. *Him* who was so good. *Him* and *them* we know. *Him* who committed—correct—not *me*. Invited brother and *me* to see. Publius is to kill *her*. *Whom* can we love, as *them* who have endeavoured. *Them* *whom* he had most injured. *Whom* I love I will choose. *Thee* only have I chosen. *Whom* did they entertain. The friend *whom* you must receive, and *whom* you do not too highly esteem. *Whom* should I meet. *Whomsoever* he meets. *Whom* shall we send. *Whomsoever* the King favours. To aggrandize *themselves*. I must premise this circumstance. He will one day repent of such. Endeavour to make the parties agree. Weary he sat down.

**RULE XXIX.**—What *is* become of virtue.— Bad example *had* ceased. Rivals *have* at length agreed. I *am* come according to time, but I *am* fallen upon an evil hour. He *had* entered into the connexion.

**RULE XXX.**—Not *to* walk too hastily. Wish him not *to* wrestle. We ought *to* forgive. Not wish *to* obtrude. Need not solicit him. I dare not proceed. Young persons conduct themselves. Observe him turn pale. Bade him go away. Better *to* live on a little. Makes us approve the one and reject the other. He made one believe this. Darest thou leap, and swim to yonder point. You beheld

us retreat. I heard him tell it. Known him kill two foxes. Felt numbness creep over. Perceive it move. Please forbid this marriage. Let me now go home.

RULE XXXI.—Be good that you may be happy. I *would* rather stay. Be that as it may. If he *would* gratify me. I shall *have been* at school. He *was* formerly disorderly, but as yet he *has been* regular. He that *had been* dead. Because they *have continued* with me. Not think that he would *do this*. Feared she would *die*. The work *was* finished. In this Cathedral *has been* preserved. Mankind *have arisen* from one head. He *was* at London, and *saw* the King. John will *have earned* his wages. After we *had visited* London. *Might* it not *have been expected*. Pleased to *have seen* you successful. Fever always *produces* thirst.

RULE XXXII.—I hoped to *see* my friend.—I desired to *write* sooner. Expected to *find* an opportunity to *betray* him. Intended to *reward* my son. Ordered me to *do* this work. Our duty to *do*. A pleasure to *receive* his approbation. Greater pleasure to *have received* his approbation earlier, but to *have received* it at all. He appeared to *have studied* Virgil. To *have been* censured. Of William seem to *have been* the most iniquitous. I thought I should *lose* it. Permitted to *enter* this mansion. Commanded him to *write* you. Taken care to *avoid* exposing. Appeared to *be* a man.

RULE XXXIII.—Esteeming *themselves* wise. Knowing *him* to be my superior. Having exposed *himself*. Suspecting not only *you* but *them* also.—Surprised at seeing *us*. Considering *them* as enemies and *him* as a suspicious.

RULE XXXIV.—By *the* exercising of our reason. Not following this advice. Without the acquiring of knowledge. The changing of times, the

removing and setting up of Kings. In fact a converting of the deposit. From marrying a man. Upon the supplying of our wants ; — upon the enjoying of our superfluities. Scrupulous in the keeping of your word. Censor's disapproving of the orators. Not attending to this rule. Our misunderstanding of the directions. By his reading books.

**RULE XXXV.**—Wished to have written.— Have chosen the path. Events had not fallen out so. That he had stolen. Vices have broken his health. He had mistaken his interests, found himself forsaken. That has been eaten. Was woven throughout. Not yet worn off. I was shewn St. Peter's. I had never known him. Has borne a part. Have undergone distress. Language is spoken in Europe. Land has risen in value. Was twice frozen. Lord was trodden to death. Business not well executed. Have taken improper liberties. And drank with avidity. Learning o'er ran. The Goths began. Industry is wanted. Has sworn solemnly. And so he did it. I have seen him. He talked and stamped.

**RULE XXXVI.**—William acted nobly. We may live happily. Seldom or ever. Cannot therefore be impertinent and ridiculous. A boy educated so well. Impossible—at work continually. He will always be discontented. To invite the King back and call his friends together. We should always prefer. Are perpetually in motion. On a rather cursory. Engrossed and totally overcome.

**RULE XXXVII.**—He was not often pleasing. Which not being admitted. Should never be separated. No Sovereign was ever so. Children not only in health. He never comes at a proper time. Not having known or not having considered. I never run any. Not knowing of. I tell you nay. My hands ever so clean.

**RULE XXXVIII.**—I cannot do more work. You will never be wiser. Love neither riches,

honors, nor *any* such. Nor take *any* shape. Be admitted under *any* circumstances. *Either* at present or at any time. *Can* be nothing more insignificant. Get nothing *any* more. Nor let *any* comforter. Nothing *ever* affected her. Nor let *any* one disturb. We cannot by *any* means. Never bites *any* body. Threatenings nor *any* promise. Precept or discipline is not. On the subject *either* from him or his friend. They were *ever* so eloquent.

RULE XXXIX.—Expected to come *hither*. *Whither* are you running. James rode *thither*. I shall go *thither*. Come *thither* to day. Bring those books *hither*. *Where* have they been. *Whither* have they gone. Will he lodge there. He is expected *here*.

RULE XL.—She reads *properly*, writes *neatly* and composes *accurately*. Was *extremely* prodigal, —now *nearly* exhausted. Lived *conformably* to the rules. Was *exceedingly* beloved. Speaks very *fluently*, reads *excellently*, —not think *coherently*. Was *exceedingly* careful. More *easily* discovered. He is *likely* to be a useful. None could fight *more boldly*, or behave *more nobly*. Affirm *more strongly*. Speak *more nobly*. For *thy frequent* infirmities. *Conformable* to their vehemence. *Likely* to take *quickest* and deepest root. For a *speedy* and prosperous end. Says *expressly* he saw.

RULE XLI.—Not at me he is displeased.—Each for *himself*. Willingly and of *themselves*. I know not *whom* in the company. To poor us. After *him* or *whom* else. Under Peter or *whom*. Not thro' James but *thee*. Between him and me, not between *her* and me. Will walk with *you*. Shot beyond me and *him* also. For *whom* is he so warmly. Boy know to *whom* he speaks. Not with *him* they were so angry. Commit crime, and *them* who abhor. From *whom* did he receive. Angry with *whomsoever* asks. Refused entrance into the house, and forcibly

driven from *it*. I wrote to the General and warned *him* of his danger.

RULE XLIII.—Dependent *on* the. Accused *by* Cesar. Abhorrence *of*. Differ *from*. Different *from* what. Complied *with*. Discouragement *to*. Consonant *to*—in conformity *to*. Eager *in* commanding. Eager *for* the fight. Regard *for*. Need *of* it. Engaged *in* writing. Not profit *by* lessons. Expert *at* the sword. Insist *on* compliance. A taste *for* painting. Confide *in* no person. Adapted *to* that purpose. Acquitted *from* blame. Difficulty *in* allowing. Conversant *in* botany. Observer *of* charms. Exception *to* the rule. One exception *from* the former. Call *on* Charles. Wait *on* me. Take no exception *at* my freedom. Were martyrs *for* the. Formed *into* a Phalanx. Preserved *from* temptations. Change *for* the worse. Change *into* what shape. Changed *into* a fly. Difficulty *in* doing. Boasts much *of* friends. Brag *of* wealth. Averse *to* using means. Meet *in* an evening. Doctors differ *from* each other. Long is it *since* he died. Not long *after* that time. Seen *through* *by* those. Sell this *at*. Honor lies *at* stake. Began *at* Cyrus. No danger *from* me. Went *by* the name. Descended *from* the Royal. Acted *through* revenge. Fell *under* his inspection. A treatise *on* Grammar. Shot *beside* the mark. Provided *with* an answer. Bridge *over* this river. Deliberates *on* going. Freed *from* the evils. Divided *among* three. Divided *between* James and Peter. Convicted *of* perjury. Connived *at* treachery. Dominion *over* Spain. Governed *by* a Mayor. Independent *of* China. Descended *into* the cellar. Built *of* marble. No encouragement *for* industry. Adorned *with* grace. Reduced *beneath* notice. Famous *for* his conspiracy. Astonished *at* this news. Compared *to* Cesar. Glad *at* my calamities. Glad *of* your company. Unison *with* our nature. Prevail *upon* him. Aspire *at* something. Adverse *to* his actions. Vary *from* your word. Overrun *with* thistles. Rejoiced *at* my success.—

Annexed *to* France. Exclaimed *against* these conditions. Distinguished *for* his bravery. Infringe *on* rules. Prejudice *against* Religion. Reduced Carthage *under* her yoke. Reduce *a* vulgar fraction *to* a decimal. Bestow bounty *upon* another. Comply *with* this command. No disparagement *to* them. No derogation *from* their station. Governed *by* the Verb. Celia died *for* love. He died *of* grief. Died *of* a fever. Died *by* a stroke. Dissent *from* you. Adapted *to* this purpose. Navigable *for* boats. No exception *to* this proposal. Revenue is *above* one million.

RULE XLIII.—Gave me no meat. Give me what is mine. Tell me the truth. Fetch me the inkstand. Hand me that book. Lend me five pounds. Sent me the present. Sell me your horse. Bring me a light. Get him a book. Taught thee to write. Write him on this subject. Give the horse his oats. Lend me your sword. Buy him a copy book. Pay me what you owe. Teach them to read. Shew me the Church. Looks not like Andrew.

RULE XLIV.—Lives *in* France—to go *to* London. Arrived *at* Plymouth *in* England. Born *in* London, now lives *at* Gretna Green. Been *at* Paris,—to call *at* Geneva *in* my way *to* Italy.—Touched *at* Lisbon—arrived *at* Elba—arrived *in* Sicily. Was *at* the appointed place. Sometime *in* America. Been *at* London, after a year *in* France. and now lives *at* Islington. Lived *in* Grosvenor square, now resides *in* Duke street, *at* No. 10.

RULE XLV.—Spoke Latin and wrote Greek. His fault, and entreat thee. To profess regard and to act. Understands the subject. Between him and me—between him and her. And to proceed temperately. My brother and he are tolerable. You and we enjoy. She and he are unhappily. Life continue we shall meet. But it will not produce. But he is defective. Riches, but they do not command. Hasty yet he is not ungenerous.



**RULE XLVI.**—Whether he *confess* or not.—  
 If he *acquire* riches. Though he *urge* me—not com-  
 ply ; unless he *advance* stronger. Unless it *rain*.  
 If it *be* fair. Because it *was* improper. Though he  
 is high. Whether he *improves* or not. Heart *were*  
 tender. If he *promise*. Lest it *happen*. Lest he  
*fall*. If he is but in health. If I *were* you If thou  
*dost* believe. Though he *does* praise her. He *dares*  
 not reply. If thou *do* not forgive. The affair *termi-*  
*nate*. Repentance *compose* her mind. Though vir-  
 tue *appears* severe. If thou *knewest*,—why *didst*  
 thou not tell. If thou *wouldst* improve. If thou  
*hadst* succeeded. Thou *canst* not deny—though thou  
*wilt* not acknowledge. If thou *hast* promised.—  
 Though thou *couldst* have foreseen—thou *couldst* not  
 avoided. That he *endeavor* to succeed.

**RULE XLVII.**—Neither cold *nor* fervid.—  
 Should *either* be true—or relinquish. Was *as* red *as*  
 blood. Is *as* deserving *as* the other. Must be *so*  
 exact *as* to keep. Nobody is *so* sanguine *as* hope.  
 Not *so* much esteemed. *That* affected me at once.  
 Be *so* candid *as* to own. Conduct *as* far *as* it res-  
 pects. Trivial *that* they do not deserve. Receive  
*as* much credit *as* intended. Is *so* plain *that* I need  
 not. *Either* carry this or send a person. He will  
*neither* do it, not let me do it. Behaved well *so that*  
 his conduct.

**RULE XLVIII.**—As learned *as* he. Speak  
 better than *I*. Better executed by them than *us*.  
 Better Grammarians than *they*. Not *so* learned *as*  
*she*. Who betrayed her companion ? Not *I*. Who  
 revealed secrets—? Not *he*. Who related false-  
 hoods—? Not *I*, it was *she*. Than *whom*, a more  
 courageous man. A more learned man than *he*.  
 But one, and that is *I*. To be slain, but *him* and  
*her*.

**RULE XLIX.**—He is more bold and active  
 than his companion, but not *so* wise and studious.



Lively *than* her brothers—not so well informed, nor cheerful. Raised from a state as low, as abject poverty, if not lower, to affluence. Sincerity is as valuable *as* knowledge, and even more valuable *than* it. Many more fascinating qualities *than* the art of flattery, but none so agreeable. And had more authority *than* Junius, yet not so much respected nor popular.

RULE L.—Ah ! unhappy *thou*. O ! wretched *we*. Ah ! hapless *me*. O ! wicked *thou*. Alas ! poor *me*. O ! unhappy *we*. Woes *me*. Woes *them*. Hurra ! happy *thou*. What fortunate men *these* are.

RULE LI.—A crow and *an* owl. Such a cruel amusement. Like him *the* better. With *an* unimproved or *a* corrupted mind. Essay on *the* interests of *the* body and *the* mind. None but the intelligent and attentive. Dictates of virtue and of honor. May gain an estate, but cannot gain friends. *Nothing* that is difficult can be accomplished. The negligent *man* of pleasure. By the *success* or failure of an enterprize. Affectionate brother and sister. Into extreme distress and perplexity. Too great severity, or *too great* facility. In the circumstances *in which* I was. Produce great gain or *great* loss. His reputation and estate. Excited not only our hopes, but *excited* our fears also. But *he* is religious too. *Whoever* would learn this science. By vanity we provoke enmity, and *by it*, we incur contempt. Saluted every man and woman there. Several men *who* died of the scurvy. All those *who were* possessed. Some profit and *some* amusement. Will reward our toils, and produce unexpected good. Recompensed *even* in this life. They who sow and *they* who reap will rejoice. Still more, *he was* a true christian. They are serious and very studious. But they did not *arrive*. Will be often ruffled and disturbed. Commend as well as censure imprudently. And *how* mind acts upon body. Never be engaged in it *again*. What they *only* blushed at before. Could not for-

merly be prompted to. Is a ~~tax~~ which a man pays the public. Bring your mind down to your estate. Society of men, as they are mixed with good and evil. Human life is mixed with good and evil. Relations take place of masters and servants, husbands and wives, parents and children. Regarded neither his family, his friends, nor his reputation. Nor life, nor death, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers. As romantic, visionary, ignorant of the world, or unfit to live in it. O! my father, O! my friend. No rank, station, nor possessions. Rendered the the progress of the work slow. But a mixture of good and evil, with various crosses and troubles. True sense of the importance of his functions.

## KEY TO THE PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

1. Joseph more than all his other children. 2. Less noble than Cesar's. 3. Another such chance. 4. Welcome to these two. 5. By shaking thy head. 6. Are Abraham, Isaac and Jacob's offspring. 7. Was admitted by the company. 8. Our sect differs from them. 9. Appears amiable,—behaves mildly. 10. For not executing the law. 11. Exceedingly joyful. 12. Take thou this pledge. 13. I being but a child. 14. Let you and me not be. 15. This magazine's blowing up. 16. By Livy than him. 17. Since her so loved. 18. Are decreasing and coming to an end. 19. In the least to offend me. 20. Often swim across this river. 21. Had now ceased. 22. In honored old age. 23. Forced into true Religion or out of it. 24. Same person that we saw. 25. Never has had, nor never shall be allowed. 26. Prince acted so weakly. 27. So small that you need not. 28. Led astray than I. 29. Have their peculiar customs. 30. Will be that we shall become unhappy. 31. In which are now centered. 32. What spirit was that which the witch raised. 33. Constantly attending to this business. 34. Was very great. 35. All regard to decency. 36. Supreme

Being *who* governs the world. 37. Women, jewels and money, *that* were in. 38. She shewed little emotion. 39. Year after year *passes* away. 40. *That happens*, *seems* the effect. 41. It is not *me* *whom* he wishes to wed. 42. Not only his friends *leave him*, but his wife too leaves him. 43. Many years in London *has* died *at* Rome. 44. The poor *ye* have always with *you*. 45. From a state as bad as bankruptcy, if not worse. 46. Intended to *send* a message. 47. Lappeth as a dog, shalt thou set by himself. 48. Whether it could be *he* or not. 49. Admired the dress and noble air of the *officer*, as we thought him. 50. Senate *were* divided in opinion. 51. Free *from* this crime. 52. *Were* you present. 53. If he *is* honest. 54. Saw no man but *him*. 55. When shall I ever see him again. 56. Not the uttering or hearing *of* pious words, *that constitutes*. 57. If the heart *accompanies* not—offer *the* sacrifice of fools. 58. If *they* be allowed to proceed. 59. *That* it does not contain. 60. *Any* of these three extremes *will* be pernicious. 61. They *wil* or not. 62. On the *one* side are the army, on the *other* numbers of wild beasts. 63. Once fixed *a* line to our moral conduct—not to transgress *that* line. 64. *Would have been* my duty to *relieve* him. 65. Please the eye by *its* fine colours as *a* beautiful flower. 66. Equally as unjust as dishonorable. 67. *Is* necessary to form a good man. 68. His words *were* faithless professions. 69. May be equally improved, both the *one* and the *other* proceed. 70. If he sincerely *acknowledge*. 71. Happiness or misery *that exists*. 72. *Are* the soul of friendship. 73. *Is* the master honored—scholars *are* encouraged. 74. That her friends *represented*. 75. The enemies *which* we have most to fear. 76. And *has* been so long promised. 77. Yet not inferior *to* the one before described. 78. This officer *laid* hold of him. 79. If you *would* please—you *might* easily conceive. 80. That *requires* peculiar attention. 81. There *was* in the metropolis much to amuse, as well as *there were* many things. 82. Riches *may* give us respect—but *will*

not recommend. 83. *Happen* to all 84. First  
*springs* of action. 85. Though this affair is mysteri-  
 ous. 86. Little *better* than a fool. 87. Is the *lofti-*  
*est* ? 88. Of their *last* designs. 89. Do not know  
*whom* to trust, *these* who seem true, or *those* who  
 seem false. 90. Prison *wherein* we were confined.  
 91. These prisoners are *about to be* taken to jail.  
 92. Art thou he that *came* from Rome. 93. Several  
 alterations had been made *in* the work, and additions  
*to it*. 94. By *this* means became rich. 95. O !  
 pity, O ! virtue. 96. *Who* raiseth the dead. 97.  
 I must *summon* the others. 98. As *that* of France,  
 Spain, or Italy. 99. John's ball is *more of a round*  
*shape*. 100. Not going to school—cause of this  
 boy's being flogged 101. Wishes the salvation of  
 the whole human race. 102. They *had* proposed to  
 visit the city, but *have* not yet arrived. 103. Celia  
 is a vain woman, whom if we do not flatter will be  
*disgusted*; or, Celia is a vain woman, if we do not  
 flatter *her*, she will be *disgusted*.

